

D. VAN NOSTRAND  
PUBLISHER & IMPORTER  
OF  
SCIENTIFIC BOOKS  
NEW YORK.



MARINE CORPS HISTORICAL LIBRARY *A. J.*

PLEASE RETURN TO THE NAVY DEPARTMENT.  
LIBRARY

ALCOVE .....  
SECTION .....  
SHELF .....  
*Q Q*

*nj 2*  
*u 71*

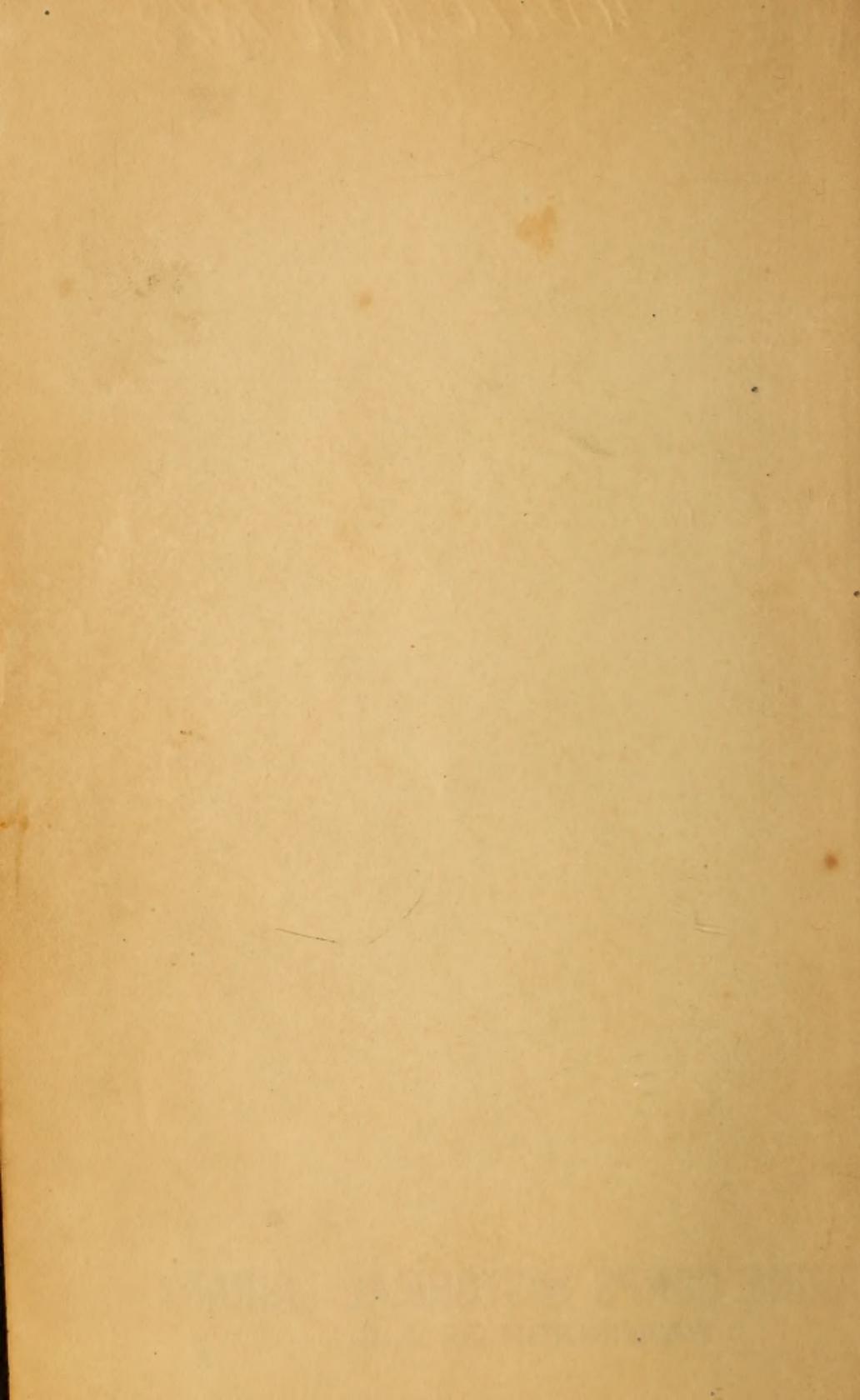
*1113: 12*

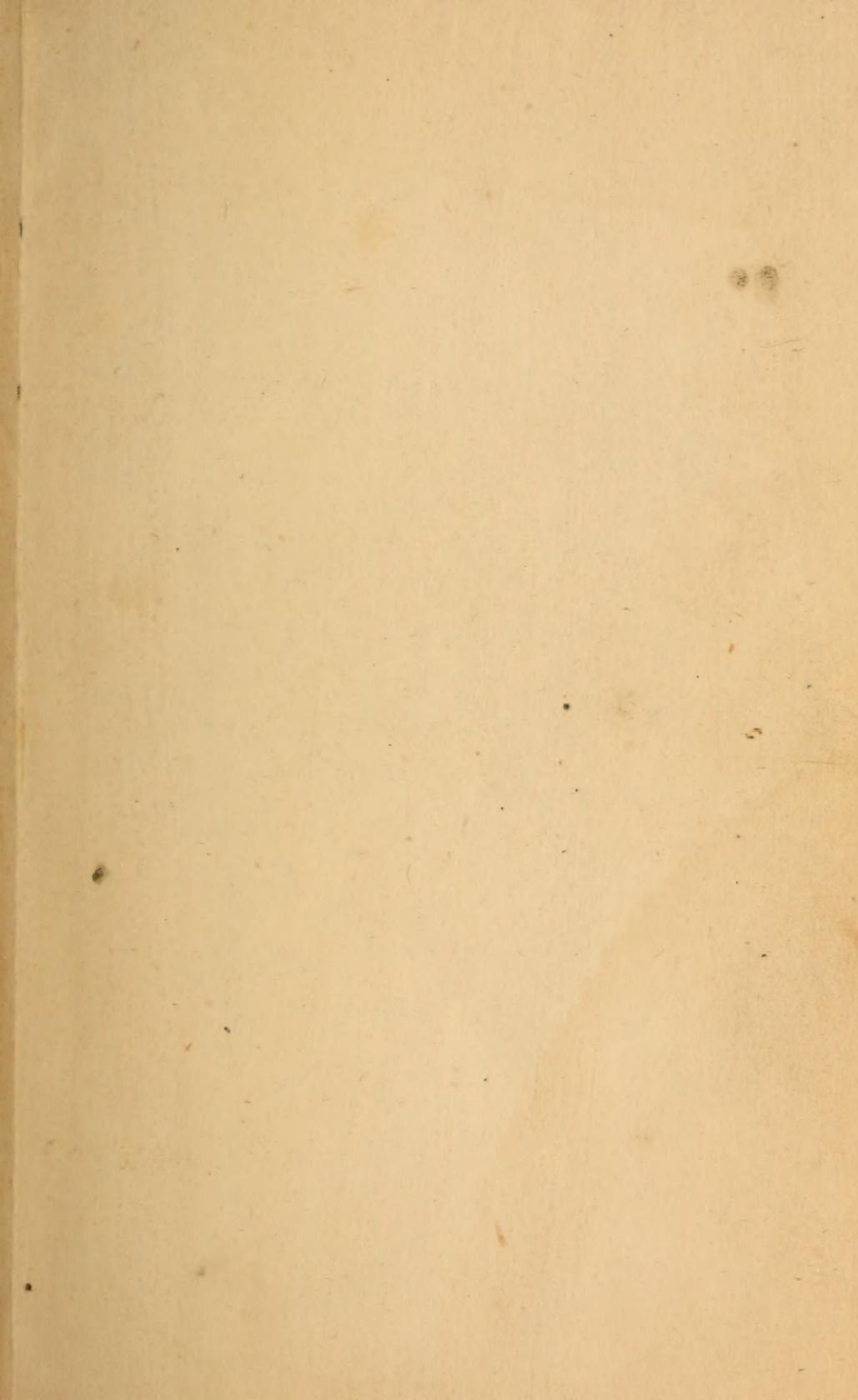


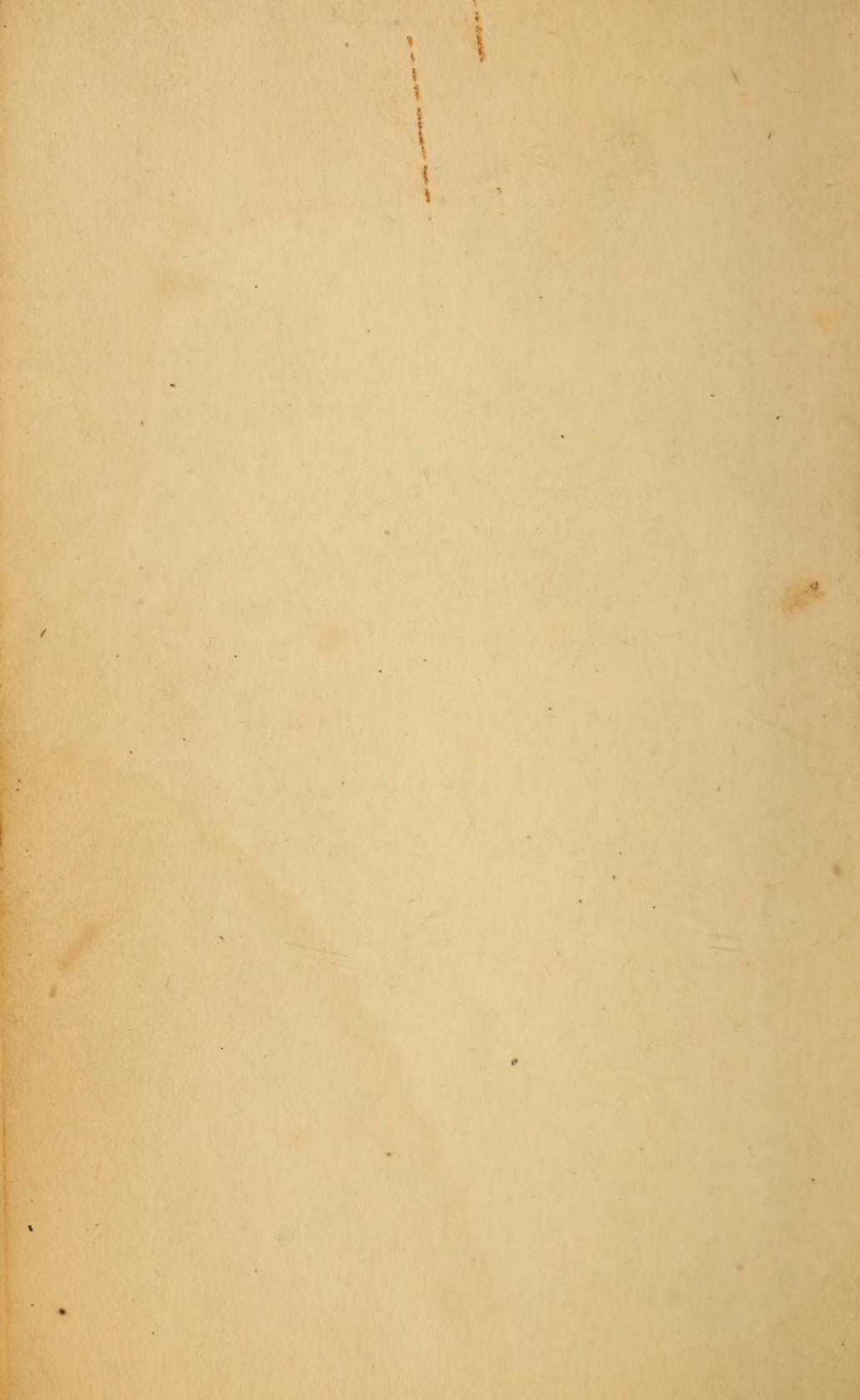
Archives\*

4D160.1101 1868

**MARINE CORPS HISTORICAL LIBRARY**  
WASHINGTON 25, D. C.







[BY AUTHORITY.]

A NEW SYSTEM

OF

INFANTRY TACTICS

DOUBLE AND SINGLE RANK.

ADAPTED TO

AMERICAN TOPOGRAPHY AND IMPROVED  
FIRE-ARMS.

BY

BVT. MAJOR-GENERAL EMORY UPTON,

U. S. ARMY.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & CO., 443 & 445 BROADWAY.

1868.

HEADQUARTERS OF THE ARMY  
ADJUTANT-GENERAL'S OFFICE,  
WASHINGTON, August 1, 1867.

GENERAL ORDERS, No. 73.

The following order received from the War Department is published for the information and guidance of the Army:—

WAR DEPARTMENT,  
WASHINGTON CITY, August 1, 1867.

*Order in relation to Upton's Infantry Tactics.*

The new system of Infantry Tactics, prepared by Brevet Major-General EMORY UPTON, U. S. Army, recommended for adoption in the place of all others, by a Board of Officers, of which General GRANT is President, having been approved, is adopted for the instruction of the Infantry of the Army of the United States, and for the observance of the Militia of the United States.

To insure uniformity throughout the Army, all Infantry exercises and manœuvres not embraced in that system are prohibited, and those therein prescribed will be strictly observed.

EDWIN M. STANTON,  
Secretary of War.

By command of General Grant:

E. D. TOWNSEND,  
Assistant Adjutant-General.

*Extract from the proceedings of a Board of Officers which convened at West Point, New York, by virtue of the following orders, viz. :*

WAR DEPARTMENT, ADJUTANT-GENERAL'S OFFICE,  
WASHINGTON, June 11, 1867.

SPECIAL ORDERS, No. 300.

A Board will assemble at West Point, New York, on Tuesday, the 9th day of July, 1867, to take into consideration the system of Infantry Tactics prepared by Brevet Major-General E. Upton, U. S. Army, and will report its opinion whether the said tactics should be adopted as the system for the armies of the United States, in lieu of all others. The Board will be composed as follows:—Gen. U. S. Grant, U. S. A.; Major-Gen. G. G. Meade, U. S. A.; Brevet Major-Gen. E. R. S. Canby, U. S. A.; Brevet Major-Gen. W. F. Barry, Col. 2d U. S. Art.; Brevet Brigadier-Gen. W. N. Grier, Col. 3d U. S. Cav.; Brevet Col. H. M. Black, Major 7th U. S. Infantry.

By order of the Secretary of War.

(Signed)

E. D. TOWNSEND,

Assistant Adjutant-General.

\* \* \* \* \*

The general advantages of the new system are:—

1. Its easy application to all the arms of the service, leaving nothing additional to any special branch, except the manual of the arm with which it fights, the adaptation of the words of command, the training of animals, and the management and care of the material with which it is equipped.

2. The readiness with which the principles may be acquired by new troops, abbreviating materially the time required to fit them for the field, and practically extending the effective term of service of the soldier. This is of great importance in its relation to the volunteer force, of which in all great wars our armies must be largely composed.

The special advantages are :—

That it dispenses with the manœuvring by the rear rank, by inversion, and the counter-march, and substitutes therefor rapid and simple conversions of front, and changes from column into line.

That it increases the number of modes of passing from the order in column to the order in line, facing in any direction; diminishes the time required for these changes, and preserves always the front rank in front—advantages of vital importance in the presence and under the fire of the enemy.

That it provides for all column movements required in an open country and by the column of fours, for the movements necessary in narrow roads, wooded or obstructed countries, without the extension incident to ordinary movements by the flank.

That it provides for a single-rank formation, specially adapted to the use of breech-loaders.

That it provides for a system of skirmishing, from double or single rank, superior for offence or defence to any existing system.

The Board, therefore, recommend that the system of Infantry Tactics prepared by Brevet Major-General E. Upton, U. S. Army, be adopted as the system for the armies of the United States, in the place of all others.

(Signed)	U. S. GRANT, General.
(Signed)	GEO. G. MEADE, Major-General U. S. A.
(Signed)	ED. R. S. CANBY, Brig. and Brevet Major-Gen.
(Signed)	WILLIAM F. BARRY, Col. 2d Art., Brev. Maj.-Gen. U. S. A.
(Signed)	WM. N. GRIER, Col. 3d U. S. Cav., Brev. Brig.-Gen. U. S. A.
(Signed)	H. M. BLACK, Major 7th U. S. In., Brev. Col. U. S. A.

Approved and referred to the Adjutant-General.

*August 1, 1867.*

(Signed)

E. M. STANTON,  
Secretary of War.

A true extract from official report:

HORACE PORTER,  
Brev. Brig.-Gen. & A. D. C.



Fig. 1

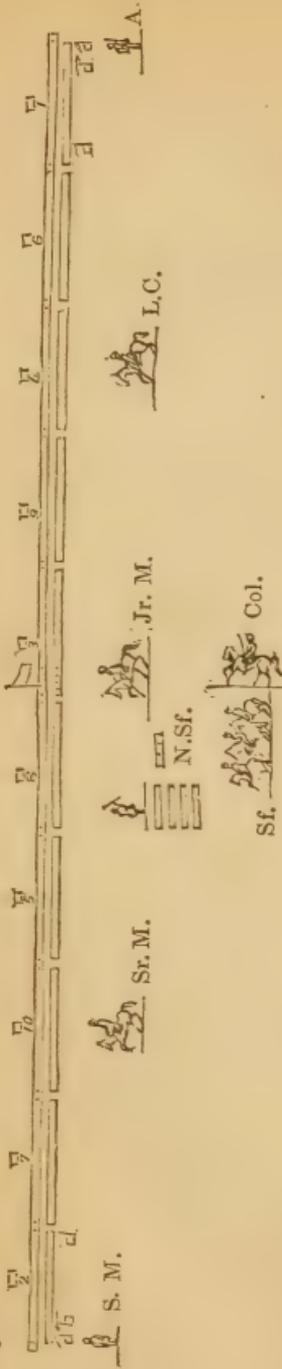
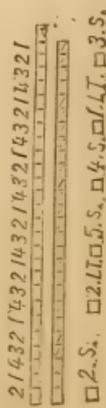


Fig. 2



Company in line of battle.  
No. 11.

Battalion in the order of battle. No. 1.

- Col. Colonel.
- L. C. Lieut.-Colonel.
- Sr. M. Senior Major.
- Jr. M. Junior Major.
- Sf. Staff.
- N. Sf. Non-commissioned Staff.
- A. Adjutant.
- S. M. Sergeant Major.
- Cp. Captain.
- Lt. Lieutenant.
- S. Sergeant.
- General Guide.
- Marker.
- Guide.
- Rear-rank men.

# INFANTRY TACTICS.

---

THE following System of Infantry Tactics, Double and Single Rank, is based upon a *front of four men* as a UNIT.

---

## TITLE FIRST.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

*Formation of Regiment in order of battle, or in line.*

1. (*Pl. I., fig. 1.*) A Regiment is composed of ten companies, which will habitually be posted from right to left in the following order : first, sixth, fourth, ninth, third, eighth, fifth, tenth, seventh, second, according to the rank of captains.

2. With a less number of companies, the first captain will command the right company, the second captain the left company, the third captain the right-centre company, and so on.

3. Two companies will form a division, which will be designated from the right when in line, and from the head when in column, first division, second division, and so on. The numbers of divisions will interchange when, by facing in the opposite direction, the left becomes the right of the line, and the rear the head of the column.

4. In each battalion there will be a color-guard, composed of a color-sergeant and seven corporals,

which will be posted as the left complete four of the right-centre company.

5. The front rank will be composed of the color-sergeant and the three ranking corporals, two posted on his right and one on his left; the rear rank will be composed of the four remaining corporals.

6. The color-sergeant and color-corporals should be selected from those most distinguished for regularity and precision under arms and in marching.

7. The companies to the right of the centre of the battalion will constitute the right wing; those to the left, the left wing. These designations change whenever the battalion faces in the opposite direction.

8. Each company is formed in two ranks, according to height, with the corporals in the front rank, and on the right and left; the tallest corporal and tallest man will form the first file, the shortest corporal and shortest man forming the last file. In these tactics a file will embrace as many men as there are ranks.

9. The distance between ranks, except in column of fours, is sixteen inches, measured from the back or knapsack of the front-rank man to the breast of the rear-rank man. On rough ground, the distance may be increased to thirty-two inches.

10. For manœuvring, the battalion will be divided into an even number of companies, and the companies will be equalized by transferring men from the strongest to the weakest.

#### *Posts of Company Officers and Sergeants.*

11. (*Pl. I., fig. 2.*) The company officers and sergeants will be posted in the following manner:

12. The *captain* two paces in front of the centre of his company; the *first lieutenant* two paces in rear of the centre of the right half; the *second lieutenant* two paces in rear of the centre of the left half.

13. The *first sergeant* on the right of the front

rank; the other sergeants are in the line of file closers: the *second* opposite the left file of the company, the *third* opposite the second file from the right, the *fourth* on the left of the first lieutenant, and the *fifth* on the right of the second lieutenant: the file closers will be as equally distributed along the line as possible. The battalion being in line of battle, the second sergeant of either the left or right company will place himself in the front rank whenever his flank of the company is the flank of the battalion.

14. In the absence of the second lieutenant, he will be replaced by the first sergeant, who will be replaced by the second sergeant, and so on.

#### *Posts of Field Officers and Regimental Staff.*

15. The colonel will be posted thirty paces in rear of the file closers, opposite the centre of the battalion. This distance will be reduced as the front of the battalion is diminished.

16. The lieutenant-colonel, senior and junior majors, will be on a line twelve paces in rear of the file closers; the lieutenant-colonel opposite the centre of the right wing, the senior major opposite the centre of the left wing, the junior major opposite the centre of the battalion.

17. The adjutant and sergeant-major will be opposite the right and left of the battalion, eight paces in rear of the file closers. They will aid the lieutenant-colonel and senior major respectively in their duties.

18. The field officers are supposed to be mounted during all manœuvres, the adjutant will be on foot. The senior officer present will command the battalion.

19. The surgeon, quartermaster, and other staff officers, in the order of rank, will be on the left of the colonel, and three paces in his rear.

20. The quartermaster-sergeant, commissary-sergeant, and hospital steward in one rank, three paces

on the right, and in line with the front rank of the field music or band.

21. The staff and non-commissioned staff, excepting the adjutant and sergeant-major, may be excused from battalion manœuvres, except when preparing for forms of ceremony.

#### *Posts of Field Music and Band.*

22. The field music will be drawn up in two or four ranks, fifers in front, and posted twelve paces in rear of the file closers, the left opposite the left of the left-centre company.

23. The regimental band when present will be similarly drawn up and posted as provided for the field music. The field music will be drawn up in its rear and will form a part of it.

24. In manœuvres the field music or band will regulate its movements by those of the battalion, keeping fourteen paces in rear of the battalion when advancing in line, and the same distance from the flank and opposite the centre when marching in column. At the discretion of the colonel, it may take any position on the drill-ground.

#### *General Guides.*

25. There will be two general guides selected by the colonel from the sergeants most distinguished for carriage under arms and accuracy in marching.

26. The general guides will be posted in the line of file closers, opposite the right and left flanks of the battalion: the one on the right of the battalion will be denominated right general guide; the other, left general guide.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*Instruction of the Battalion.*

27. Every commanding officer is responsible for the instruction of his command. He will assemble the officers for theoretical and practical instruction as often as he may judge necessary, and when unable to attend to this duty in person, it will be discharged by the officer next in rank.

28. Captains will be held responsible for the theoretical and practical instruction of their non-commissioned officers, and the adjutant for the instruction of the non-commissioned staff. To this end, they will require these tactics to be studied and recited lesson by lesson; and when instruction is given upon the ground, each non-commissioned officer, as he explains a movement, should be required to put it into practical operation.

29. The non-commissioned officers should also be practised in giving commands. Each command should first be given by the instructor, and then repeated in succession by the non-commissioned officers, so that, while they become habituated to the commands, uniformity may be established in the manner of giving them.

30. In the school of the soldier, the company officers and sergeants will instruct the squads. Two or three squads under sergeant instructors will be superintended by commissioned officers.

31. In the school of the company, the captain, under the colonel, will be the instructor, substituting frequently one of the lieutenants.

32. In the school of the battalion, the colonel will be the instructor, substituting frequently the lieutenant-colonel, majors, and senior captains.

33. Individual instruction being the basis of the instruction of companies, on which that of the regiment

depends, and the first principles having the greatest influence upon this individual instruction, classes of recruits should be watched with the greatest care.

34. Instructors will explain in a few clear and precise words the movement to be executed, and, not to overburden the memory of the men, they will always use the same terms to explain the same principles.

35. They should often join example to precept; should keep up the attention of the men by an animated tone, and pass rapidly from one movement to another, as soon as that which they command has been executed in a satisfactory manner.

#### *Instruction of Officers.*

36. The instruction of officers can only be perfected by joining theory to practice. The colonel will often practise them in marching and estimating distances, and he will carefully endeavor to cause them to take steps equal in length and swiftness. To this latter end, every regiment should be provided with pacesstick and plummet.

37. The instruction of officers will include all the Titles in this system of drill, and such regulations as prescribe their duties in peace and war. They should also become perfectly familiar with the bugle-signals, and, if necessary, be able to sound them.

#### *Instruction of Sergeants.*

38. As the discipline and efficiency of a company materially depend upon the conduct and character of its sergeants, they should be selected with the greatest care, and properly instructed in all the duties appertaining to their rank.

39. Their theoretical instruction should include the School of the Soldier, the School of the Company, and the Drill for Skirmishers. They should likewise know all the details of service, and the regulations prescribing their duties in garrison and on campaign.

*Instruction of Corporals.*

40. Their theoretical instruction should include the School of the Soldier, and such regulations as prescribe their duties in garrison and campaign.

41. The captain may select the most intelligent corporals and privates of his company, and admit them to the instruction of the sergeants and corporals.

42. As the instruction of sergeants and corporals is intended to qualify them for the instruction of the privates, they should be taught not only to execute, but to explain intelligibly every thing they may be required to teach.

*Commands.*

There are three kinds :

43. The command of *caution*, which is *attention*.

44. The *preparatory command*, which indicates the movement that is to be executed.

45. The command of *execution*, such as MARCH or HALT, or, in the manual of arms, the part of the command which causes the execution.

46. The tone of command should be animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men under instruction.

47. The command *attention* is pronounced in a clear, firm voice, dwelling on the last syllable.

48. The command of *execution* will be pronounced in a tone firm and brief.

49. The commands of caution, and the preparatory commands, are herein distinguished by *italics*, those of execution by SMALL CAPITALS.

50. Those preparatory commands which, from their length, are difficult to be pronounced at once, must be divided into two or three parts, with an ascending progression in the tone of command, but always in such a manner that the tone of execution may be more energetic and elevated; the divisions are indicated by a dash (—). The parts of commands which are placed in a parenthesis are not to be pronounced.

## TITLE SECOND.

### SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

#### *General Rules and Division of the School of the Soldier.*

51. The object of this school being the individual and progressive instruction of the recruits, the instructor will never require a movement to be executed until he has given an exact explanation of it, and executed it himself, thereby joining example to precept. He accustoms the recruit to take, by himself, the position which is explained—teaches him to rectify it only when required by his want of intelligence, and sees that all movements are performed without precipitation.

52. Each movement should be understood before passing to another. After they have been properly executed, in the order laid down in each lesson, the instructor will no longer confine himself to that order; on the contrary, he should change it, that he may judge of the intelligence of the men.

53. The instructor will allow the men to rest at the end of each part of the lessons, and oftener, if he thinks proper, especially at the commencement. For this purpose he commands REST.

54. At the command REST, the soldier is no longer required to preserve immobility, silence, or to remain in his place. If the instructor wishes merely to relieve the attention of the recruit, he commands, *In place*, REST; the soldier is then not required to preserve his immobility, but he always keeps one of his feet in its place.

55. When he wishes to resume the instruction, he commands ATTENTION, and, at this command, the recruit takes his position, remains motionless, and fixes his attention.

56. The School of the Soldier will be divided into three parts: the first, comprehending what ought to be taught to the recruit without arms; the second, the manual of arms, the loadings and firings; the third, the principles of alignment, the march by the front, the different steps, the principles of wheeling, wheeling by fours, marching by the flank, change of direction, and long marches in double time and the run.

57. Each part will be divided into lessons, as follows:

#### PART FIRST.

*Lesson 1.* Position of the soldier without arms: setting up, eyes right, left, and front.

*Lesson 2.* Salutes and facings.

*Lesson 3.* Principles of the direct step in common and quick time, mark time, change step, side step, and backward step.

*Lesson 4.* Principles of the direct step in double time and the run.

#### PART SECOND.

*Lesson 1.* Principles of carry arms.

*Lesson 2.* Manual of arms.

*Lesson 3.* To load in four times and at will.

*Lesson 4.* Firings, direct, oblique, by file, and by rank.

*Lesson 5.* To fire and load kneeling and lying down.

#### PART THIRD.

*Lesson 1.* Union of eight and twelve men for instruction in the principles of alignment.

*Lesson 2.* The direct march, the oblique march, and the different steps.

*Lesson 3.* Wheelings and change of direction.

*Lesson 4.* Wheeling by fours.

*Lesson 5.* Movements by fours.

*Lesson 6.* Long marches in double time and the run, with arms and knapsacks.

## PART FIRST.

58. This will be taught, if practicable, to four recruits at a time, who will be placed in single rank, at one pace from each other. In this part the recruits will be without arms.

### LESSON I.

#### *Position of the Soldier.*

59. Heels on the same line, and as near each other as the conformation of the man will permit;

The feet turned out equally, and forming with each other an angle of about sixty degrees;

The knees straight without stiffness;

The body erect on the hips, inclining a little forward;

The shoulders square, and falling equally;

The arms hanging naturally;

The elbows near the body;

The palm of the hand turned a little to the front, the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons;

The head erect, and square to the front without constraint;

The chin near the stock without covering it;

The eyes fixed straight to the front, and striking the ground about the distance of fifteen paces.

#### *Remarks on the Position of the Soldier.*

##### *Heels on the same line;*

60. Because if one were in the rear of the other, the shoulder on that side would be thrown back, and the position of the soldier would be constrained.

*Heels more or less closed ;*

Because men who are knock-kneed, or who have legs with large calves, cannot, without constraint, make their heels touch while standing.

*The feet turned out equally, and not forming too large an angle ;*

Because if one foot were turned out more than the other, the shoulder would be deranged ; and if both feet be too much turned out, it would be impossible to incline the upper part of the body forward without rendering the whole position unsteady.

*Knees straight without stiffness ;*

Because, if stiffened, constraint and fatigue would be unavoidable.

*The body erect on the hips ;*

Because it gives equilibrium to the position. The instructors will observe that many recruits have the bad habit of dropping a shoulder, of drawing in a side, or of advancing a hip, particularly the right, when under arms. These are defects he will labor to correct.

*The upper part of the body inclining forward ;*

Because, commonly, recruits are disposed to the reverse, to project the belly, and throw back the shoulders, from which results great inconvenience in marching. The habit of inclining forward the upper part of the body is so important to contract, that the instructor must enforce it from the beginning, particularly with recruits who have naturally the opposite habit.

*Shoulders square ;*

Because if the shoulders should be advanced beyond the line of the breast, and the back arched (the defect called *round-shouldered*, not uncommon among recruits), the man cannot align himself nor use his piece with address. It is important, then, to correct this defect, and necessary to that end that the coat

should sit easy about the shoulders and armpits; but in correcting this defect, the instructor will take care that the shoulders be not thrown too much to the rear, which would cause the belly to project and the small of the back to be curved.

*The arms hanging naturally; elbows near the body; the palm of the hand a little turned to the front; the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons;*

Because these positions are equally important to the *carry arms*, and to prevent the man from occupying more space in the ranks than is necessary to a free use of the piece; they have, moreover, the advantage of keeping in the shoulders.

*The face straight to the front, and without constraint;*

Because, if there be stiffness in the latter position, it would communicate itself to the whole of the upper part of the body, embarrass its movements, and give pain and fatigue.

*Eyes direct to the front;*

Because this is the surest way of maintaining the shoulders in a line—an essential object to be insisted upon and attained.

61. The instructor, having given the recruits the position of the soldier without arms, will next cause them to take an interval of two or more paces, and then teach them the principles of *setting up*, which will be executed in times and motions as follows:

*First time.*

62. (*First motion.*) At the command ONE, bring the hands and arms to the front till the little fingers meet, nails downward.

63. (*Second motion.*) At the command Two, raise the hands in a circular direction over the head, the ends of the fingers still touching and pointing downward so as to touch the forage-cap, thumbs pointing

to the rear; at the same time press the elbows well to the rear, the shoulders kept down.

64. (*Third motion.*) At the command THREE, extend the arms upward to their full length, the palms of the hands touching; then force them obliquely back, and gradually let them fall to the position of the soldier.

*Second time.*

65. (*First motion.*) At the command ONE, raise the arms laterally and extended to their full length till the hands meet above the head, palms to the front, fingers pointing upward, thumbs locked, left thumb in front, the shoulders pressed back.

66. (*Second motion.*) At the command Two, bend over till the hands touch the feet, keeping the arms and knees straight.

67. (*Third motion.*) At the command THREE, raise the body and resume the position of the soldier.

*Third time.*

68. (*First motion.*) At the command ONE, extend the arms horizontally to the front, the palms of the hands touching.

69. (*Second motion.*) At the command Two, throw the arms extended well to the rear, inclining downward; at the same time raise the body upon the toes.

70. (*Third motion.*) At the command THREE, drop the arms and resume the position of the soldier.

71. The first and second motions of this time should be continued by the commands *one, two, one, two*, till the recruits, if possible, are able to touch the hands behind the back.

*Fourth time.*

72. (*First motion.*) At the command ONE, raise the arms horizontally from the sides, the palms of the hands upward.

73. (*Second motion.*) At the command Two, swing the arms circularly from front to rear.

74. (*Third motion.*) At the command THREE, resume the position of the soldier.

75. As soon as the recruits understand the motions of the various times, they may be continued without dwelling upon the numbers, the instructor prefacing the time by the command *continue the motion*, and giving the command *one* for the commencement, and *three* for the conclusion of the time.

76. The recruits will next be taught the turning of the head and eyes. The instructor will command

1. *Eyes*—RIGHT. 2. FRONT.

77. At the word *right*, the recruit will turn the head gently, so as to bring the inner corner of the left eye in a line with the buttons of the coat, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank.

78. At the second command, the head will resume the habitual position.

79. The movement of *Eyes*—LEFT will be executed by inverse means.

80. The instructor will take particular care that the movement of the head does not derange the squareness of the shoulders, which will happen if the movement of the former be too sudden.

81. When the instructor shall wish to pass the recruit from a state of attention to that of ease, he will command:

REST.

82. To resume the habitual position, he will command:

1. *Attention.* 2. SQUAD.

83. At the first command, the recruit will fix his attention, at the second he will resume the prescribed position and steadiness.

## LESSON II.

*Salutes.*

84. Recruits will first be taught the salutes by the numbers as follows:

1. *Right hand.* 2. SALUTE.

*One time and four motions.*

85. (*First motion.*) Raise the right hand smartly as high as the mouth, pointing in the same direction as the right foot, the palm of the hand down, the thumb close to the forefinger, the arm extended.

86. (*Second motion.*) Bring the hand slowly around till the point of the thumb and side of the forefinger touch the lower edge of the cap or visor, wrist and fingers slightly bent; at the same time turn the head a little to the left and look toward the person to be saluted.

87. (*Third motion.*) Bring back the hand and arm to the position of the first motion.

88. (*Fourth motion.*) Drop the arm quickly by the side.

89. Left-hand salute will be similarly executed. The command *salute* will decide the execution of the first motion, and the commands *two*, *three*, and *four* the execution of second, third, and fourth motions.

90. Soldiers, whether standing or sitting, will, when an officer approaches, take the position of the soldier, face toward him, and salute. If walking, they will salute an officer as they pass him, commencing the salute, when approaching from opposite directions, at six paces from the officer, and taking care to use the hand farthest from him.

91. Soldiers will invariably salute anybody they know to be an officer, whether he be in uniform or not.

*Facings.*

92. Facings to the right and left will be executed in one time or pause. The instructor will command :

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right (or left)—FACE.*

93. At the second command, raise the right foot slightly, turn on the left heel, raising the toe a little, and then replace the right heel by the side of the left and on the same line.

94. The full face to the rear will be executed in two times or pauses. The instructor will command :

1. *Squad—ABOUT.* 2. *FACE.*

95. (*First time.*) At the command *about*, the recruit will turn on the left heel, bring the left toe to the front, carry the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to, and full three inches from the left heel, the feet square to each other.

96. (*Second time.*) At the command *face*, the recruit will turn on both heels, raise the toes a little, extend the hams, face to the rear, bringing at the same time the right foot by the side of the left.

**LESSON III.***Principles of the Direct Step.*

97. The length of the direct step or pace, in common time, will be twenty-eight inches, reckoning from heel to heel, and, in swiftness, at the rate of ninety steps per minute.

98. The instructor, seeing the recruit confirmed in his position, will explain the principle and mechanism of the step. Placing himself six or seven paces in front, and facing the recruit, he will execute slowly the step in the way of illustration, and then command :

1. *Squad forward.* 2. *Common time.* 3. *MARCH.*

99. At the first command, the recruit will throw the

weight of the body upon the right leg, bending slightly the left knee.

100. At the third command, he will smartly, but without jerk, carry straight forward the left foot twenty-eight inches from the right, the sole near the ground, the ham extended, the toe a little depressed, the knee straight and slightly turned out; he will at the same time throw the weight of the body forward, and plant the left foot, without shock, precisely at the distance where it finds itself from the right when the weight of the body is brought forward, the whole weight of which will now rest on the advanced foot. The recruit will next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above, the heel twenty-eight inches from the heel of the left, and thus continue the march, without crossing the legs or striking the one against the other, and preserving always the face direct to the front.

101. When the instructor shall wish to arrest the march, he will command:

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

102. At the second command, which will be given the instant either foot is brought to the ground, the foot in rear will be brought up and planted by the side of the other, without shock.

103. The instructor will indicate, from time to time, to the recruit the cadence of the step, by counting *one, two, three, four*, the instant the left and right foot, respectively, should be planted.

104. Common time will be employed only in the first and second parts of the School of the Soldier. As soon as the recruit has acquired steadiness, has become established in the principles of the carry arms, and in the mechanism, length, and swiftness of the step in common time, he will be practised only in quick time, double time, and the run.

105. The principles of the step in quick time are the

same as for common time, but the swiftness is at the rate of one hundred and ten steps per minute.

106. The instructor wishing the squad to march in quick time, will command :

1. *Squad forward.* 2. MARCH.

107. Recruits may be confirmed in the principles of the direct march by frequently practising the balance step, which is executed as follows :

The instructor will command :

1. *Balance step.* 2. *Left foot*—FORWARD. 3. REAR.  
4. HALT.

108. At the command *forward*, the recruits will bend slightly the left knee, and carry the left foot, without jerk, about twenty inches to the front, the knee straightening as the foot is brought forward, the toe turned out and slightly depressed, the sole of the foot about three inches from the ground.

109. At the command *rear*, the left foot will be carried without jerk about eight inches to the rear of the right heel, the knee slightly bent, the toe inclining downward.

110. At the command *halt*, which will always be given after the command *rear*, the foot will be planted by the side of the other.

111. The balance step with the right foot will be similarly executed, and the steps may be continued by alternating the commands *forward* and *rear*.

112. The instructor during the execution of the balance step will see that the recruits keep the body, the shoulders, the arms, and the hands in the position of the soldier.

*To mark time.*

113. The recruit marching in the direct step, the instructor will command :

1. *Mark time.* 2. MARCH.

114. At the second command, which will be given

the instant one foot is coming to the ground, the recruit will make a semblance of marching by bringing the heels by the side of each other, and observing the cadence of the step by raising the feet alternately without advancing.

115. The instructor, wishing the direct step to be resumed, will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

116. At the second command, which will be given as prescribed above, the recruits will resume the step of twenty-eight inches.

*To change step.*

117. The squad being in march, the instructor will command:

1. *Change step.* 2. MARCH.

118. At the second command, which will be given at the instant either foot is coming to the ground, bring the hollow of the foot which is in rear against the heel of the one in front, and step off again with the one in front.

*Side step.*

119. The instructor, wishing to execute the side step, will command:

1. *Side step to the right.* 2. MARCH.

120. At the command *march*, the recruits will carry the right foot ten inches to the right, keeping the knees straight, and the shoulders square to the front; as soon as the right foot is planted the left foot will be brought to the side of it, and the movement will be continued with the right foot, the recruits observing the cadence of quick time unless common time be specified.

121. Side step to the left will be similarly executed.

*To march backward.*

122. The instructor, wishing the recruits to march backward, will command :

1. *Squad backward.* 2. MARCH.

123. At the second command, the recruits will step off smartly with the left foot fourteen inches to the rear, reckoning from heel to heel, and so on with the feet in succession till the command :

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

124. At the second command, the recruits will halt and bring back the foot in front to the side of the one in rear.

125. This step will always be executed in quick time. The instructor will see that the recruits march straight to the rear, and that the body is kept erect.

**LESSON IV.***Principles of the Double Step.*

126. The length of the double step is thirty-three inches, and its swiftness at the rate of from one hundred and sixty-five to one hundred and eighty steps per minute.

127. The instructor, wishing to teach the recruits the principles of the double step, will command :

1. *Double step.* 2. MARCH.

128. At the first command, the recruit will raise his hands to a level with his hips, the fingers closed, the nails toward the body, the elbows to the rear.

129. At the second command, he will raise to the front his left leg bent, giving the knee its greatest elevation, the part of the leg between the knee and instep vertical, the toe depressed ; he will then replace his foot in its former position, and execute the same movement with the right leg, and continue to alternate till the command :

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

130. At the second command, the recruit will bring the foot which is raised by the side of the other, at the same time drop his hands and assume the position of the soldier.

131. The instructor, placing himself seven or eight paces in front of the recruit and facing him, will indicate the cadence by the command *one, two*, given alternately as the left and right foot should touch the ground, beginning at common time and increasing gradually to double time.

132. The recruit being established in the principles of the step, the instructor will command :

1. *Squad forward.* 2. *Double time.* 3. MARCH.

133. At the first command, the recruit will throw the weight of the body on the right leg.

134. At the second command, he will raise his hands to the level of his hips.

135. At the third command, he will carry forward the left foot, the leg slightly bent, the knee somewhat raised, and will plant the foot, the toe first, thirty-three inches from the right—he will then execute with the right foot the same movement; this alternate movement of the legs will take place by throwing the weight of the body upon the foot that is planted, and by allowing a natural oscillatory motion to the arms.

136. The double step may be executed with different degrees of swiftness, and under urgent circumstances increased to one hundred and eighty steps per minute. At this rate a distance of four thousand yards can be traversed in about twenty-five minutes. The recruits will also be exercised in running, the principles being the same as for the double time.

137. In marching in double time and the run the men will breathe as much as possible through the nose, keeping the mouth closed; experience has

proved that by conforming to this principle a man can pass over a much longer distance and with less fatigue.

## PART SECOND.

### GENERAL RULES.

138. The recruits will not be passed to the second part until well established in the position of the body, and in the manner of marching at the different gaits.

### LESSON I.

#### *Principles of Carry Arms.*

139. The recruit having taken the position of the soldier, the instructor will cause him to bend the right arm slightly and place the piece in it, in the following manner:

140. (*Pl. II.*) The piece in the right hand—the barrel nearly vertical, and resting in the hollow of the shoulder—the guard to the front; the arm hanging nearly at its full length, near the body, the thumb and forefinger embracing the guard, the remaining fingers closed together and grasping the swell of the stock just under the cock, which rests on the little finger.

141. Recruits are frequently seen with natural defects in the conformation of the shoulders, breast, and hips. These the instructor will labor to correct in the lessons without arms, and afterward by steady endeavors, so that the appearance of the pieces in the same line may be uniform, and this without constraint to the men in their positions.

142. The instructor will observe that recruits, on first bearing arms, are liable to derange their position by lowering the right shoulder and the right hand, or by sinking the hip and spreading the elbows.

143. He will be careful to correct all these faults by continually rectifying the position; he will sometimes

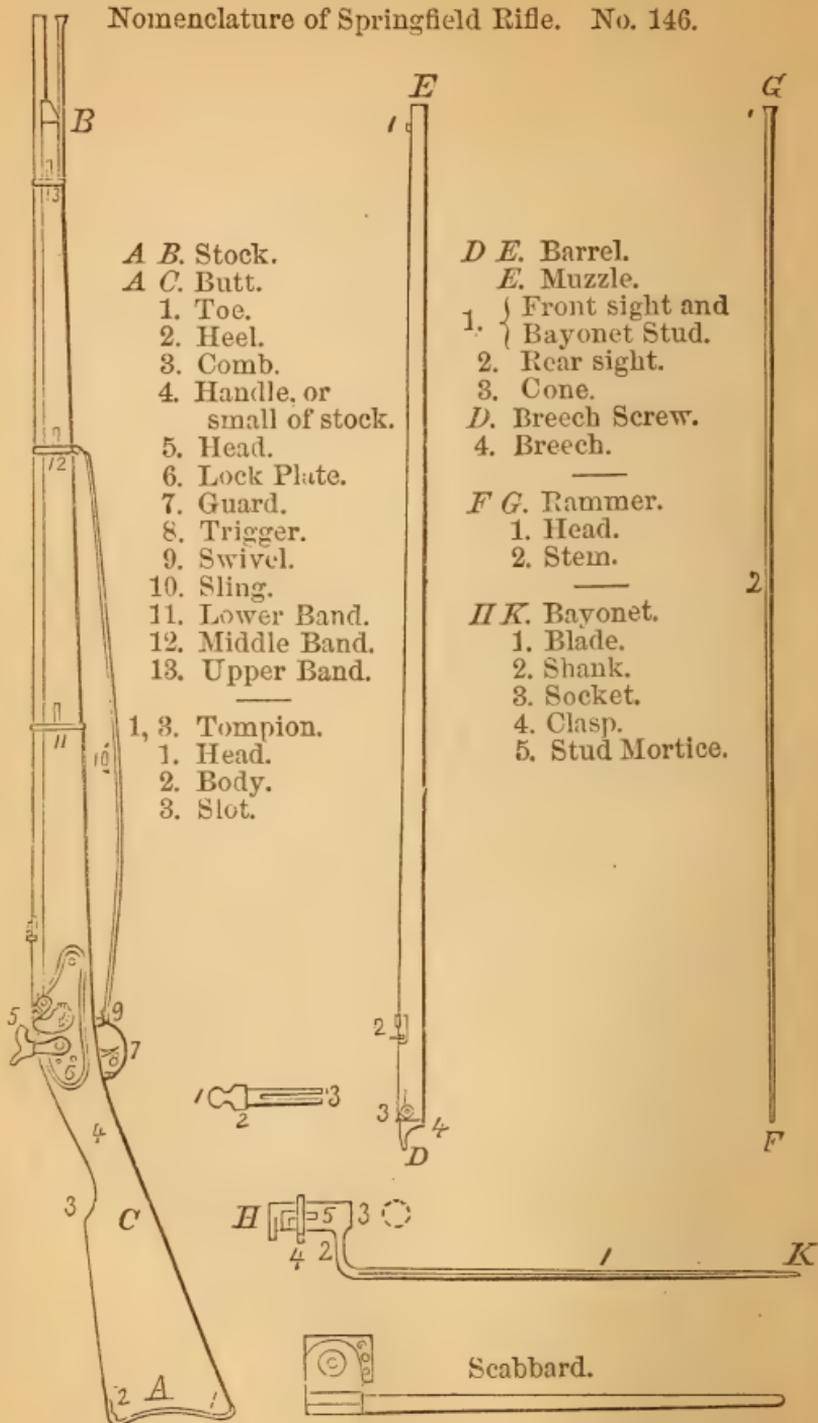


Carry Arms. No. 140.





Nomenclature of Springfield Rifle. No. 146.



- A B.* Stock.  
*A C.* Butt.  
 1. Toe.  
 2. Heel.  
 3. Comb.  
 4. Handle, or  
 small of stock.  
 5. Head.  
 6. Lock Plate.  
 7. Guard.  
 8. Trigger.  
 9. Swivel.  
 10. Sling.  
 11. Lower Band.  
 12. Middle Band.  
 13. Upper Band.

- I.* 3. Tompion.  
 1. Head.  
 2. Body.  
 3. Slot.

- D E.* Barrel.  
*E.* Muzzle.  
 1. { Front sight and  
 Bayonet Stud.  
 2. Rear sight.  
 3. Cone.  
*D.* Breech Screw.  
 4. Breech.

- F G.* Rammer.  
 1. Head.  
 2. Stem.

- II K.* Bayonet.  
 1. Blade.  
 2. Shank.  
 3. Socket.  
 4. Clasp.  
 5. Stud Mortice.

Scabbard.

take away the piece to replace it the better; he will avoid fatiguing the recruits too much in the beginning, and labor by degrees to render this position so natural and easy that they may remain in it a long time without fatigue.

144. Finally, the instructor will take great care that the piece at a carry be not carried too high nor too low; if too high, the right elbow would be spread out, the soldier would occupy too much space in his rank and the piece be made to waver; if too low, the files would be too much closed, the soldier would not have sufficient space to handle his piece with facility, the right arm would become too much fatigued, and would draw down the shoulder.

145. The instructor, before passing to the second lesson, will cause to be repeated the movements of *eyes right, left, and front*, and the *facings*.

## LESSON II.

### *Manual of Arms.*

146. (*Pl. III.*) The manual of arms will be taught to four men, placed at first in one rank, elbow to elbow, and afterward in two ranks.

147. Each command will be executed in one time or pause, but this time will be divided into motions, the better to make known the mechanism.

148. The rate or swiftness of each motion in the manual of arms, with the exceptions herein indicated, is fixed at the ninetieth part of a minute; but in order not to fatigue the attention, the instructor at first will look more particularly to the execution of the motions without requiring a nice observance of the cadence, to which he will bring the recruits progressively, after becoming familiar with the handling of the piece.

149. As the motions relative to the cartridge, the rammer, the fixing and unfixing of the bayonet, cannot

be executed at the rate prescribed, nor even with a uniform swiftness, they will not be subjected to that cadence. The instructor will, however, labor to cause these motions to be executed with promptness, and above all with regularity.

150. The last syllable of the command will decide the brisk execution of the first motion of each time. The commands *two*, *three*, and *four* will decide the brisk executions of the other motions. As soon as the recruits shall well comprehend the position of the several motions of a time, they will be taught to execute the time without resting on its different motions; the mechanism of the time will nevertheless be observed, so as to give a perfect use of the piece, and to avoid slurring over either of the motions.

151. The manual of arms will be taught in the following progression :

The instructor will command :

*Support—ARMS.*

*One time and three motions.*

152. (*First motion, Pl. IV.*) Bring the piece with the right hand perpendicularly to the front and between the eyes, the barrel to the rear; seize the piece with the left hand midway between the rear sight and the lower band, raise this hand as high as the chin, and seize the piece at the same time with the right hand four inches below the cock.

153. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with the right hand, barrel to the front; carry the piece to the left shoulder, and pass the forearm extended between the right hand and the cock; support the cock against the left forearm, the left forearm on the left breast.

154. (*Third motion.*) Drop the right hand by the side.

155. When the instructor may wish to give repose in this position, he will command :



Support Arms. No. 152.







Present Arms. No. 162.

## REST.

156. At this command, the recruits will bring up smartly the right hand to the small of the stock, when they will not be required to preserve silence or steadiness of position.

157. To resume the attention, the instructor will command :

1. *Attention.* 2. SQUAD.

158. At the second command, the recruits will resume the position of the third motion of *support arms.*

*Carry—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

159. (*First motion.*) Grasp the piece with the right hand under and against the left forearm ; bring it vertically in front of the centre of the body, barrel to the rear ; at the same time seize it with the left hand midway between the rear sight and lower band, thumb extended along the barrel, the left forearm horizontal.

160. (*Second motion.*) Carry the piece to the right shoulder ; at the same time change the position of the right hand so as to embrace the guard with the thumb and forefinger ; slip the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined, the right arm nearly straight.

161. (*Third motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

*Present—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

162. (*First motion, Pl. V.*) With the right hand bring the piece vertically before the centre of the body, barrel to the rear ; at the same time seize the piece with the left hand midway between the rear sight and lower band, the thumb extended along the

barrel, the forearm horizontal and resting against the body.

163. (*Second motion.*) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand, below and against the guard.

*Carry—ARMS.*

*One time and two motions.*

164. (*First motion.*) Same as *second motion* from *support*.

165. (*Second motion.*) Same as *third motion* from *support*.

*Order—ARMS.*

*One time and two motions.*

166. (*First motion.*) Seize the piece briskly with the left hand near the shoulder, and detach it slightly from the same; loosen the grasp of the right hand, lower the piece with the left, and reseize it with the right above the lower band, the little finger in rear of the barrel, the hand near the hip, the butt about three inches from the ground.

167. (*Second motion.*) Let the piece slip through the right hand to the ground, at the same time drop the left hand by the side, and take the position to be described:

*Position of Order Arms.*

168. (*Pl. VI.*) The hand low, the barrel between the thumb and forefinger extended along the stock; the other fingers extended and joined; the muzzle about two inches from the shoulder; the barrel to the rear; the toe (or beak) of the butt against and in a line with the toe of the right foot, the piece perpendicular.

169. When the instructor wishes to give repose in this position, he will command:

REST.

170. At this command, the recruits will not be required to preserve silence or steadiness.



Position of Order Arms. No. 163.







Parade Rest. No. 174.

171. To resume attention, the instructor will command :

172. 1. *Attention*. 2. SQUAD. When the recruits will resume the position of *order arms*.

173. Being at an order arms, if it be wished to give the men rest, imposing both silence and steadiness of position, the command will be :

*Parade—REST.*

*One time and one motion.*

174. (*Pl. VII.*) At the command *rest*, bring the muzzle in front of the centre of the body, the barrel to the left; grasp the piece with the left hand just above, and with the right hand at the upper band; carry the right foot three inches to the rear, the left knee slightly bent.

175. Order arms will be resumed by the same commands as before.

*Carry—ARMS.*

*One time and two motions.*

176. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece vertically, with the right hand to the height of the right breast and opposite the shoulder, the elbow close to the body; seize the piece with the left hand below the right, and drop quickly the right hand to grasp the piece with the thumb and forefinger embracing the guard; press the piece against the shoulder with the left hand, the right arm nearly straight.

177. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

*Load in nine times.*

1. LOAD.

*One time and one motion.*

178. (*Pl. VIII.*) Make a half face to the left, bringing the right foot to the front, the heel opposite to and against the hollow of the left; carry the piece

diagonally across the body ; seize it with the left near the middle band and lower it till the butt strikes the ground about eight inches in rear of the left toe, the barrel to the front ; slip the left hand to the muzzle, the forearm resting against the body ; carry the right hand to the cartridge-box.

### 2. *Handle*—CARTRIDGE.

*One time and one motion.*

179. Seize the cartridge with the thumb and first two fingers, and place it between the teeth.

### 3. *Tear*—CARTRIDGE.

*One time and one motion.*

180. Tear the paper to the powder, hold the cartridge upright between the thumb and first two fingers near the top ; in this position place it in front of and near the muzzle, the back of the hand to the front.

### 4. *Charge*—CARTRIDGE.

*One time and one motion.*

181. Empty the powder into the barrel ; disengage the ball from the paper with the right hand and the thumb and first two fingers of the left ; insert it into the bore, the pointed end uppermost, and press it down with the right thumb ; seize the head of the rammer with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, the other fingers closed, the elbow near the body.

### 5. *Draw*—RAMMER.

*One time and three motions.*

182. (*First motion.*) Half draw the rammer by extending the right arm ; steady it in this position with the left thumb ; seize the rammer near the muzzle between the thumb and first two fingers of the right



Load. No. 178.



hand, the palm of the hand to the front, the thumb extended along the rammer.

183. (*Second motion.*) Clear the rammer from the pipes by extending the arm, the rammer in the prolongation of the pipes.

184. (*Third motion.*) Reverse the rammer by closing the fingers, the little end passing near the left shoulder, the back of the hand to the front, the forefinger extended along the rammer; place the head of the rammer on the ball.

#### 6. *Ram*—CARTRIDGE.

*One time and one motion.*

185. Insert the rammer as far as the right, and steady it in this position with the thumb of the left hand; seize the rammer at the small end with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, the back of the hand to the front; press the ball home, the elbow near the body.

#### 7. *Return*—RAMMER.

*One time and three motions.*

186. (*First motion.*) Draw the rammer half way out and steady it in this position with the left thumb; seize it near the muzzle between the thumb and first two fingers of the right hand, the palm of the hand to the front, the thumb along the rammer; clear the rammer from the bore by extending the arm, the rammer in prolongation of the bore.

187. (*Second motion.*) Reverse the rammer by closing the fingers, the head passing near the left shoulder, and insert it in the pipes till the right hand reaches the muzzle, the back of the hand to the rear.

188. (*Third motion.*) Force the rammer home by placing the little finger on the head; pass the left hand down the barrel to the extent of the arm, without dropping the shoulder.

## 8. PRIME.

*One time and three motions.*

189. (*First motion, Pl. IX.*) Raise the piece smartly with the left hand till the lower band is as high as the chin; slip the hand down to the lower band, the forearm resting against the stock; at the same time seize the small of the stock with the right hand.

190. (*Second motion.*) Make a full face to the right, carrying the hollow of the right foot three inches to the rear of the heel of the left, the feet at right angles; bring the piece with both hands to the right shoulder; drop the muzzle to the height of the eye, the small of the stock resting against the body, and two inches below the right breast.

191. (*Third motion.*) Half cock the piece with the thumb of the right hand, the fingers supported against the guard and the small of the stock; remove the old cap with one of the fingers of the right hand, and with the thumb and forefinger of the same hand take a cap from the pouch, place it on the nipple, and press it down with the thumb; seize the small of the stock with the right hand.

## 9. Carry—ARMS.

*One time and two motions.*

192. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece to the right shoulder, and support it there with the left hand; face to the front; bring the right heel to the side of, and on a line with the left; grasp the piece with the right hand, as in *carry arms*.

193. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

## READY.

*One time and three motions.*

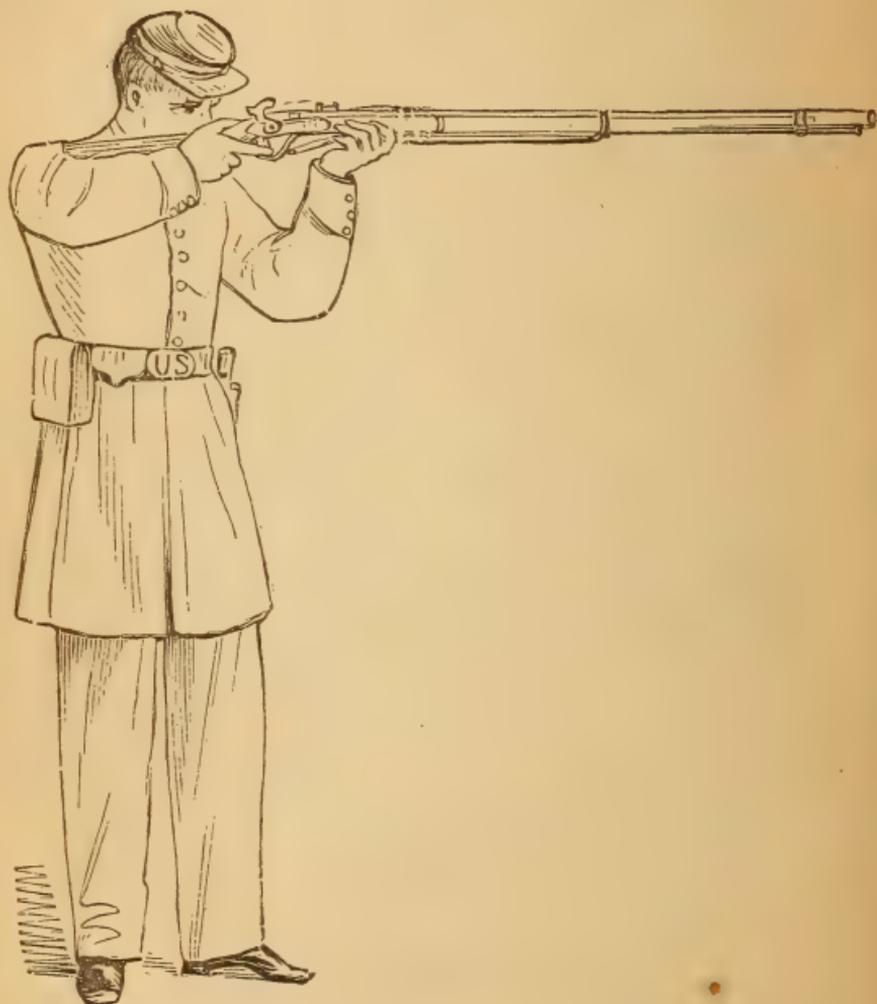
194. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece slightly with the right hand, making a half face to the right on the



Prime. No. 189.







Aim. No. 197.

left heel; carry the hollow of the right foot three inches to the rear of the heel of the left, the feet at right angles; grasp the piece with the left hand at the lower band and detach it slightly from the shoulder.

195. (*Second motion.*) Bring down the piece with both hands, the muzzle at the height of the eye, the left thumb extending along the stock, the elbow against the body, the small of the stock two inches below the right breast, the butt below the right elbow; place at the same time the right thumb on the head of the cock, the other fingers supported against the guard and the small of the stock.

196. (*Third motion.*) Cock and then seize the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock, without deranging the position of the butt.

#### AIM.

##### *One time and one motion.*

197. (*Pl. X.*) Raise the piece with both hands, and support the butt against the right shoulder, the left elbow down, the right as high as the shoulder; incline the head upon the stock so that the right eye may quickly perceive the notch of the rear sight, the front sight, and the object aimed at; the left eye closed, the right thumb extended along the stock, the forefinger on the trigger.

198. When recruits are formed in two ranks the front-rank man will raise a little less the right elbow, in order to facilitate the aim of the rear-rank man.

199. The rear-rank men in aiming will each carry the right foot about eight inches to the right, toward the left heel of the man next on the right, inclining the upper part of the body forward.

#### FIRE.

##### *One time and one motion.*

200. Press the forefinger against the trigger; fire

without deranging the aim, or lowering or turning the head, and remain in this position.

201. Instructors will be careful to observe when the men fire that they aim at a distinct object, and that the barrel be so directed that the line of fire and line of sight be in the same vertical plane. They will often cause the firings to be executed on grounds of different inclinations, in order to accustom the men to fire at objects either above or below them.

### LOAD.

#### *One time and one motion.*

202. Bring down the piece with both hands; face to the left and take the position of *load* previously explained. From this position the loading will be continued as already prescribed.

203. If, after firing, the instructor should not wish the recruits to reload, he will command:

### *Carry*—ARMS.

#### *One time and one motion.*

204. Throw up the piece briskly with the left hand, the right grasping it as in *carry arms*; at the same time face to the front and bring the right heel on a line with the left; drop the left hand by the side.

205. To accustom the recruits to wait for the command fire, when in the position of aim, the instructor will command:

### *Recover*—ARMS.

#### *One time and one motion.*

206. At the command *recover*, withdraw the finger from the trigger; at the command *arms*, retake the position of *ready*.

207. The recruits being at a *ready*, to bring them to a *carry*, the instructor will command:





Load (Springfield Breech-Loader). No. 210.

*Carry—ARMS.**One time and one motion.*

208. At the command *carry*, place the thumb on the cock, the forefinger on the trigger; half cock the piece, and seize the small of the stock with the right hand. At the command *arms*, bring up the piece to the right shoulder and retake the position of *carry arms*.

209. Manual for loading Springfield breech-loader, the piece being at half cock.

*Load in four times.*

## 1. LOAD.

*One time and one motion.*

210. (*Pl. XI.*) Make a half face to the right on the left heel; carry the hollow of the right foot three inches to the rear of the heel of the left, the feet at right angles; drop the piece into the left hand at the lower band, the thumb extended along the stock, the barrel sloping downward, the comb of the stock under the right arm; carry the right hand to the cartridge-box.

2. *Handle—CARTRIDGE.**One time and one motion.*

211. Take a cartridge from the cartridge-box with the thumb and first two fingers of the hand; place the thumb under the thumb-piece, holding the cartridge in the two forefingers closed.

3. *Charge—CARTRIDGE.**One time and one motion.*

212. Raise the breech-block by pressing the thumb forward; place the cartridge in the bore with the thumb and two forefingers, pressing it home with the

thumb; seize the thumb-piece with the thumb and forefinger, the other fingers in front of the breech-block; close the breech-block and press down the thumb-piece; carry the right hand to the small of the stock.

#### 4. *Carry*—ARMS.

*One time and two motions.*

213. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece to the right shoulder and support it there with the left hand; face to the front; bring the right heel to the side of, and on a line with, the left; grasp the piece with the right hand as in *carry arms*.

214. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand by the side.

215. The piece being in the position of load, will be brought to a *ready* by simply cocking it—in *recovering arms* the piece will be brought back to the position of load.

216. The recruit being at a *carry arms*, when the instructor shall wish to fix bayonets, he will command:

#### *Fix*—BAYONET.

*One time and two motions.*

217. (*First motion, Pl. XII.*) Seize the piece with the left hand below the middle band; carry it to the left side, the butt striking the ground about eight inches to the rear of the left toe, the piece inclining to the front, the left hand resting against the hip; carry the right hand to the shank of the bayonet.

218. (*Second motion.*) Draw the bayonet from the scabbard, and fix it on the end of the barrel; drop the right hand to the side.

#### *Carry*—ARMS.

*One time and two motions.*

219. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece with the left hand, and place it against the right shoulder; grasp



Fix Bayonet. No. 217.







Charge Bayonet. No. 221.

the piece with the right hand, the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard, the fingers of the left hand extended and joined.

220. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand by the side.

*Charge*—BAYONET.

*One time and two motions.*

221. (*First motion, Pl. XIII.*) Raise the piece slightly with the right hand, and make a half face to the right, carrying the hollow of the right foot three inches in rear of the heel of the left, the feet at right angles.

222. (*Second motion.*) Bring down the piece briskly into the left hand, grasping it at or near the lower band, the thumb over the barrel, the elbow against the body, the point of the bayonet the height of the eye; at the same time grasp the small of the stock with the right hand, which will be supported against the hip.

*Carry*—ARMS.

*One time and two motions.*

223. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece briskly to the right shoulder with the left hand, at the same time facing to the front; embrace the guard with the right hand, and slip the left hand to the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined.

224. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

*Trail*—ARMS.

*One time and two motions.*

225. (*First motion.*) Same as the first motion of *order arms*.

226. (*Second motion.*) Incline the muzzle slightly to the front, the butt to the rear, and about three inches from the ground, at the same time dropping the left hand. The right hand, supported at the hip, will so

- hold the piece that the rear-rank men may not touch with their bayonets the men in the front rank.

*Carry*—ARMS.

227. At the command *carry*, bring the piece to a vertical position with the right hand, the little finger in rear of the barrel; at the command *arms*, execute what has been prescribed for the *carry*, from the position of *order arms*.

*Unfix*—BAYONET.

*One time and two motions.*

228. (*First motion, Pl. XIV.*) Carry the piece to the left side as in *fix bayonet*, and place the forefinger of the right hand against the clasp of the bayonet.

229. (*Second motion.*) Unclasp the bayonet; seize it by the shank, wrest it from the barrel, and place it in the scabbard, the right hand falling to the side.

230. The *carry arms* is executed the same as from *fix bayonet*.

*Secure*—ARMS.

*One time and three motions.*

231. (*First motion, Pl. XV.*) Same as the first motion of *support arms*, except with the right hand seize the piece at the small of the stock.

232. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with both hands, the barrel to the front; bring it opposite the left shoulder, the butt against the hip, the left hand at the lower band, the thumb as high as the chin and extended on the rammer, the piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the left forearm against the piece.

233. (*Third motion.*) Reverse the piece; pass it under the left arm, the left hand remaining at the lower band, the thumb on the rammer to prevent it from sliding out, the little finger resting against the hip, the right hand falling at the same time to the side.



Unfix Bayonet. No. 228.





Secure Arms. No. 231.







Right Shoulder Shift Arms. No. 236.

*Carry—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

234. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece to a vertical position with the left hand; seize it with the right at the small of the stock, and bring it in front of the body to the position of present arms.

235. (*Second and third motions.*) Same as from *present arms* to *carry arms*.

*Right shoulder shift—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

236. (*First motion, Pl. XVI.*) Raise the piece vertically with the right hand; seize it with the left below the lower band, and raise it with this hand till the lower band is at the height of the chin; at the same time embrace the butt with the right hand, the beak between the first two fingers, the other fingers under the butt-plate.

237. (*Second motion.*) Raise and place the piece on the right shoulder, the lock-plate up, the muzzle inclining to the left; slip the left hand down to the lock-plate.

238. (*Third motion.*) Drop the left hand by the side.

*Carry—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

239. (*First motion.*) Lower the piece with the right hand; seize it with the left below the lower band, at the height of the chin, the barrel to the rear.

240. (*Second motion.*) Lower the piece with the left hand to the right shoulder; embrace the guard with the right hand; slip the left to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined.

241. (*Third motion.*) Drop the left hand by the side.

242. Being at a *support*, to come to a *right shoulder shift*, the instructor will command:

*Right shoulder shift—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

243. (*First motion.*) Grasp the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock, and bring it in front of the centre of the body, barrel to the rear; seize it at the same time with the left hand at the lower band, at the height of the chin.

244. (*Second motion.*) Carry and place the piece on the right shoulder, the lock-plate up, the right hand embracing the butt; slip the left hand to the lock-plate.

245. (*Third motion.*) Drop the left hand by the side.

*Support—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

246. (*First motion.*) Lower the piece with the right hand in front of the centre of the body, barrel to the rear; seize it with the left hand at the lower band, at the height of the chin; change the right hand to the small of the stock, four inches below the cock.

247. (*Second motion.*) Carry the piece to the left shoulder, barrel to the front, the cock resting against the left forearm.

248. (*Third motion.*) Drop the right hand by the side.

*Arms—PORT.**One time and one motion.*

249. (*Pl. XVII.*) Throw the piece diagonally across the body, the lock to the front; seize it smartly at the same instant with both hands, the right at the small of the stock, the left at the lower band, the two thumbs clasping the piece, the barrel sloping upward and crossing opposite the point of the left shoulder, the butt proportionally lowered. The palm of the right hand will be above, and that of the left under



Arms port. No. 249.



the piece, the nails of both hands next to the body, to which the elbows will be closed.

*Carry—ARMS.*

*One time and two motions.*

250. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece smartly to the right shoulder, the right hand embracing the guard; slip the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined.

251. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

*Arms at—WILL.*

*One time and one motion.*

252. At the command *arms*, carry the piece at pleasure on either shoulder, the muzzle always elevated.

*Carry—ARMS.*

*One time and one motion.*

253. At this command, retake quickly the position of *carry arms*.

254. Being at an *order arms*, the piece will be loaded the same as from the *carry*, except that at the command *load*, the recruits, while making the half face to the left, will shift the piece from the right to the left side.

255. Bayonets will be *fixed* and *unfixed* from the *order arms* by the same command as from the *carry*, the piece being shifted from the right to the left side in the first motion. The *order arms* will be resumed without command as soon as the bayonet is fixed.

*Inspection of Arms.*

256. The recruits being at ordered arms, bayonets unfixed, if the instructor wishes to cause an inspection of arms, he will command:

*Inspection—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

257. (*First motion.*) Shift the piece to the left side, and fix the bayonet: then seize the rammer with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand.

258. (*Second motion.*) Draw the rammer and insert it in the bore as explained in loading, letting it glide gently to the bottom; return the piece to the right side, taking the position of *order arms*.

259. (*Pl. XVIII.*) The instructor will then inspect in succession the piece of each recruit, in passing along the front rank. Each, as the instructor approaches him, will raise the piece smartly with the right hand, opposite the left eye, catching it there with the left hand at the lower band, the lock-plate to the front, the hand at the height of the chin; the instructor will take it with the right hand, at the small of the stock, and, after inspecting it, will return it to the recruit, who will receive it back with the right hand and replace it in the position of *order arms*.

260. Each recruit, as the one next on his left comes to the order after inspection, will shift his piece to the left side, return the rammer, and resume the position of *order arms*.

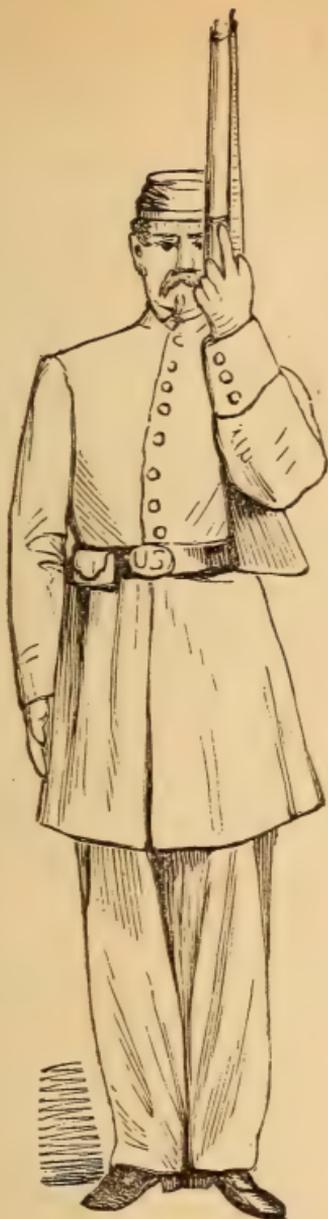
261. If the instructor wishes to ascertain, after firing, whether all the pieces have been discharged, he will command:

*Spring—RAMMERS.*

262. Put the rammer in the barrel as for inspection, returning to the *order arms*.

263. The instructor, for the purpose stated, can take the rammer by the small end and spring it in the barrel.

264. The recruits will return rammers as at inspection.



Inspection. No. 259.



*Inspection for Springfield Breech-Loader.**Inspection—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

265. (*First motion.*) Shift the piece to the left side and fix the bayonet.

266. (*Second motion.*) Return the piece to the right side, taking the position of *order arms*.

267. The instructor will then inspect, as in paragraph 259, except that after taking the piece he will throw open the breech-block, drop the butt nearly to the ground, barrel downward, so as to keep the breech-block open in order that he may look through the bore. Having finished the inspection, the instructor will close the breech-block, and return the piece to the recruit, who will replace it in the position of *order arms*.

*Inspection of Boxes.*

268. The instructor, wishing to inspect boxes, will command:

*Open—BOXES.*

269. At this command, the recruits will open the cap-pouch with the left hand, holding the flap against the body, the back of the hand to the front; commencing on the right, the instructor will inspect the cap-pouches successively; each recruit will close his pouch as soon as the instructor has passed, and then will steady the piece at the right shoulder with the left hand, and with the right will open the cartridge-box, holding the flap against the body, palm of the hand to the rear. Returning, the instructor will inspect the boxes from left to right, each recruit closing his box and resuming the *order arms* as soon as the instructor has passed.

**LESSON III.***To load in four times.*

270. The object of this lesson is to prepare the recruits to load at will and to cause them to distinguish the times which require the greatest regularity and attention, such as *charge cartridge*, *ram cartridge*, and *prime*. It will be divided as follows:

271. The first time will be executed at the command *load*, the three others at the commands *two*, *three*, and *four*.

*Load in four times—LOAD.*

272. Execute the times to include charge cartridge.

TWO.

273. Execute the times to include ram cartridge.

THREE.

274. Execute the times to include prime.

FOUR.

275. Execute the time of *carry arms*.

276. The instructor will next teach loading at will, which will be executed as loading in four times, but continued and without resting on either of the times. He will command:

*Load at will—LOAD.*

277. The instructor will habituate the recruits by degrees to load with the greatest possible promptitude, each without regulating himself by his neighbor, and above all without waiting for him.

*Remarks on the Manual of Arms.*

278. The manual of arms frequently distorts the persons of recruits before they acquire ease and confidence in the several positions. The instructor will,

therefore, frequently recur to elementary principles in the course of the lessons.

279. Recruits are extremely liable to curve the sides and back, and to derange the shoulders, particularly in loading; consequently the instructor will not cause them to dwell too long at a time in one position.

280. As soon as the recruits become familiar with the handling of the piece, the instructor will terminate each lesson by marching the men for some time, in one rank, at one pace apart, both in common and quick time; in order to confirm them more and more in the mechanism of the step.

#### LESSON IV.

##### *Firings.*

281. The firings are *direct* or *oblique*, and will be executed as follows:

##### *The direct fire.*

282. The instructor will command:

1. *Fire by squad.* 2. *Squad.* 3. READY. 4. AIM.
5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.

283. The commands *ready*, *aim*, *fire*, and *load* will be given with sufficient interval to allow them to be executed as prescribed in the manual of arms. The rear-rank men will incline the upper part of the body forward, so that their pieces may reach as far as possible beyond the front rank.

284. Upon the completion of the sixth command, the pieces being at a *ready*, the instructor will continue the firing by the commands:

1. *Squad.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

285. The instructor wishing the firing to cease, will command:

*Cease—FIRING.*

286. At this command, the men will cease firing, but will load their pieces if unloaded, and afterward bring them to a *carry*.

*Oblique firings.*

287. The oblique firings will be executed to the right and left by the same commands as the direct fire, with this difference: the command *aim* will be preceded by the caution *right* or *left oblique*.

288. The command *ready* will be executed as in the direct fire. At the command *right oblique*, both ranks will cast their eyes to the right, and look steadily at the object to be hit. At the command *aim*, the front-rank men will aim to the right, without deranging the feet; each rear-rank man will advance the left foot about eight inches toward the right foot of the man next on the right of his file-leader, and aim to the right, inclining the upper part of the body forward, and bending a little the left knee.

289. Should the command be *left oblique*, both ranks will cast their eyes to the left; the rear-rank men will at the same time raise their pieces to a vertical position. At the command *aim*, the front rank will aim to the left, without deranging the feet; each rear-rank man will advance the left foot about eight inches toward the right foot of the man next on the left of his file-leader, at the same time bringing down his piece, and aiming to the left of his file-leader, the upper part of the body inclining forward, the left knee slightly bent.

290. In *recovering arms* from the *left oblique*, each rear-rank man, at the command *arms*, will carry the muzzle of his piece over the head of his file-leader and take the position of *ready*.

291. In both cases, at the command *load*, the men of each rank will come to the position of *load* as prescribed in the direct fire; the rear-rank men bringing

back the foot in advance to the proper position in loading.

*To fire by file.*

292. The fire by file will be executed by the two ranks, the files of which will fire successively and without regulating on each other, except for the first fire.

293. The instructor will command :

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Squad.* 3. READY. 4. COMMENCE FIRING.

294. At the fourth command, the file on the right will aim and fire, reload, fire again, and so on. The second file will aim at the instant the first lowers his piece to the ground from the position of aim, fire, and conform to what has been prescribed for the first file. After the first fire, the front- and rear-rank men will not be required to fire at the same time.

295. At the command *cease firing*, the pieces at the *ready* or *aim* will be half-cocked and brought to the carry; those fired will be loaded and then brought to the carry.

*To fire by rank.*

296. The fire by rank will be executed by each entire rank, alternately, at the command :

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Squad.* 3. READY. 4. *Rear rank.* 5. AIM. 6. FIRE. 7. LOAD.

297. Both ranks will come to the *ready*, the rear rank will execute the commands *aim*, *fire*, and *load* as already explained; the pieces being at the *ready* upon the completion of the command *load*.

298. As soon as the instructor sees several pieces of the rear rank in the position of *ready*, he will command

1. *Front rank.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

299. Which command will be executed as explained

for the rear rank, the men not deranging the feet while aiming.

300. The instructor will alternate the ranks in firing, until wishing to cease, he will command *cease firing*, which is executed as in the other firings.

### LESSON V.

#### *To fire and load kneeling.*

301. In this exercise the squad will be supposed loaded, and drawn up in one rank. The instruction will be given to each man individually, without times or motions, and in the following manner:

#### FIRE AND LOAD KNEELING.

302. (*Pl. XIX.*) At this command, the man on the right of the squad will move forward three paces and halt; then bring the left toe square to the front, and plant the right foot so that the toe shall be about twelve inches to the rear and twelve inches to the left of the left heel, the feet at right angles; kneel on the right knee, bending the left; drop the muzzle to the front, support the piece with the left hand near the lower band, the forearm resting on the left thigh, the right hand grasping the small of the stock; cock the piece and raise it to the right shoulder, the left elbow sustained by the left knee; aim and fire.

303. Lower the piece and carry it to the rear, the barrel downward, the butt resting on the ground; support the piece with the left hand near the upper band, the elbow resting on the left thigh; draw the cartridge with the right hand, load the piece, ramming the ball with both hands if necessary.

304. Bring the piece again to the front, the barrel up, the left hand at the lower band, the forearm resting on the left thigh, the right hand at the small of the stock; half cock and prime the piece; rise and return to the ranks.



Fire and load kneeling. No. 302.



305. The second man will then be taught what has been prescribed for the first, and so on through the squad.

306. To fire and load lying, the squad being in one rank and loaded, the instructor will command:

#### FIRE AND LOAD LYING.

307. At this command, the man on the right will move forward three paces and halt; he will then bring his piece to an order, drop on both knees, and place himself on the ground, flat on his belly; drop the piece to the front, the barrel up, the beak and muzzle resting on the ground, the left hand at the lower band, the elbow on the ground; cock the piece with the right hand, and carry this hand to the small of the stock; raise the piece with both hands, press the butt against the shoulder, and resting on both elbows, *aim* and *fire*.

308. After firing, turn upon the left side; carry the piece to the rear, the barrel downward, the butt on the ground, the muzzle opposite the neck, the piece supported with the left hand at the upper band, the elbow on the ground; in this position draw the cartridge and complete the loading.

309. Carry the piece again to the front, turning at the same time upon the belly; half cock and prime, then raise the piece vertically, rise, and return to the ranks.

310. The other recruits will be similarly taught.

311. Firing with Springfield breech-loader, either kneeling or lying, will be executed as already explained, except that in loading, the piece will not be carried to the rear.

## PART THIRD.

312. When the recruits are well established in the *principles and mechanism of the step*, the *position of the body*, and the *manual of arms*, the instructor will take eight men at least, and twelve at most, in order to teach them the principles of alignment, the touch of the elbow in marching, change of direction to the side of the guide, and marching by the flank. The squad will at first be placed in one rank, elbow to elbow.

## LESSON I.

*Alignments.*

313. The instructor will first teach the recruits to align themselves man by man, the better to comprehend the principles of alignment; to this end he will advance the two men on the right three or more paces, and, having aligned them, will command:

1. *By file.* 2. *Right—DRESS.*

314. At the command *dress*, the recruits will move up successively, in quick time, each shortening the last step so as to find himself about six inches behind the alignment, which should never be passed; he will next move on to the line by steps of two or three inches, turning the head and eyes to the right, the shoulders square to the front, and, without opening his arms, touch with his elbow that of the man on his right.

315. The instructor seeing the rank well aligned, will command:

FRONT.

316. At this command the recruits will cast their eyes to the front, and remain firm.

317. Alignments to the left will be executed on the same principles.

318. The recruits having learned to align themselves man by man without jostling, the instructor will next align the entire rank by the commands :

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right (or left)*—DRESS.

319. At this command the entire rank, except the last two men established as a basis, will move forward and dress up to the line as explained for the individual alignment. The instructor will verify the alignment by placing himself outside the directing flank, and will order such files as may be in rear or in advance of the line forward or back, designating each by name.

320. The rank being aligned, the instructor will command :

FRONT.

321. Alignments to the rear will be executed on the same principles, the recruits stepping back a little beyond the line, and then dressing up by short steps of two or three inches. The commands will be—

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right (or left) backward*—DRESS.

322. After each alignment the instructor will examine the position of the men, and cause them to come to *order arms* to prevent too much fatigue, and also the danger of negligence at *carry arms*.

## LESSON II.

323. The men having learned in the first and second parts to march with steadiness in common time, and to take steps equal in length and swiftness, will be exercised in the third part, only, in the *quick time*, *double time*, and the *run*. The instructor will cause them to execute successively at these gaits, the march to the front, the march by the flank, the wheels at the halt and in marching, and change of direction to the side of the guide.

324. The instructor will inform the recruits that, at the command *march*, they will always move off in quick time, unless the command is preceded by that of *double time*.

*To march to the front.*

325. The rank being correctly aligned, the instructor will place a well-instructed man on the side the guide is to be, and then command :

1. *Squad forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left).*
3. MARCH.

326. At the command *march*, the rank will step off smartly with the left foot ; the guide will take care to march straight to the front, keeping his shoulders always square with that line.

327. The instructor will observe in marching to the front that the men touch lightly the elbow toward the side of the guide ; that they do not open out the left elbow nor the right arm ; that they yield to the pressure coming from the side of the guide, and resist that coming from the opposite direction ; that they recover by insensible degrees the slight touch of the elbow, if lost ; that they maintain the head direct to the front, no matter on which side the guide may be ; and if found before or behind the alignment, that the man in fault corrects himself by shortening or lengthening the step by almost insensible degrees.

328. The instructor will labor to cause recruits to comprehend that the alignment can only be preserved in marching by the uniformity of the step, both in length and swiftness, by the touch of the elbow, and the maintenance of the shoulders square with the line of direction.

329. The impulsion of the quick step having a tendency to make the men too free and easy in their movements, the instructor will be careful to regulate its cadence, and to habituate the men to preserve al-

ways the erectness of the body and the due length of the pace.

330. The recruits being well established in the principles of the direct march, the instructor will exercise them in marching obliquely. The rank being in march, the instructor will command:

1. *Right (or left) oblique.* 2. MARCH.

331. At the second command each man will make a half-face to the *right (or left)*, and will then march straight forward in the new direction. As the men no longer touch elbows, they will glance along the shoulders of the nearest files, toward the side to which they are obliquing, and will regulate their steps so that their shoulders shall always be behind those of the next man on that side, and that his head shall conceal the heads of the other men in the rank. Besides this, the men should preserve the same length of pace, and the same degree of obliquity.

332. The instructor wishing to resume the primitive direction, will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

333. At the second command each man will half-face to the left (or right), then march straight to the front.

334. If the rank be halted, at the command *right (or left) oblique*, the men will half-face to the *right* or *left*, and at the command *march*, will step off. If halted while obliquing, they will, after halting, face to the front.

*To march in double time.*

335. When the several principles heretofore explained have become familiar to the recruits, and they shall be well established in the position of the body, the bearing of arms, the mechanism, length, and swiftness of the step, the instructor will pass them from *quick* to *double time*, and the reverse, observing not to make them march obliquely in double time till they are well established in the cadence of the step.

336. The squad marching in quick time, the instructor will command :

1. *Double Time.* 2. MARCH.

337. At the first command, the pieces will be brought to the right shoulder, and the left hand to the hip; at the command *march*, which will be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the squad will step off in double time.

338. To resume quick time, the instructor will command :

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

339. At the command *march*, which will be given as either foot is coming to the ground, the squad will take the quick step.

340. The squad, marching at double time, will *oblique* to the *right* or *left*, *mark time*, and be *halted*, by the same commands as in quick time. The command *halt* will be given just before either foot comes to the ground.

341. The squad being at a halt, to march in *double time*, the commands will be :

1. *Squad forward.* 2. *Double time.* 3. MARCH.

342. In marching at double time, the men will always carry their pieces on the *right shoulder* or at a *trail*. *This rule is general.*

343. If the instructor shall wish the pieces carried at a *trail*, he will give the command *trail arms*, before that of *double time*. If, on the contrary, this command be not given, the men will shift their pieces to the right shoulder at the command *double time*. *This rule is general.*

*To march backward.*

344. The squad being at a halt, the instructor will command :

1. *Squaa backward.*
2. *Guide left (or right).*
3. MARCH.

345. At the command *march*, the men will move to the rear, taking steps of fourteen inches.

346. The instructor, in marching, will be careful not to fatigue the men too much by keeping them for a long time at a *carry*. He will at first rest them frequently, and after they become familiar with marching, will frequently shift the arms to the right shoulder. Whether marching in quick or double time, the pieces at the command *halt* will be returned to the *carry*. *This rule is general.*

### LESSON III.

#### WHEELINGS.

##### *General Principles of Wheeling.*

347. Wheelings are of two kinds: on fixed and on movable pivots.

347\*. The fixed pivot is used in all wheels from a halt; and generally, both at a halt and in marching, in passing troops from the *order in battle* to the *order in column*, and the reverse.

348. The movable pivot is used in marching when changing direction to the side opposite the guide.

349. In wheeling on a fixed pivot, the pivot-man turns in his place without advancing or receding; in the movable pivot, he takes steps of nine inches in quick time, and eleven inches in double time, when the column is at full distance; and fourteen inches in quick and seventeen in double time, when the column is at half distance.

350. The man on the marching flank, in both wheels, takes steps of twenty-eight or thirty-three inches, according to the time.

##### *Wheeling from a halt or on a fixed pivot.*

351. The ranks being at a halt, the instructor

will place a well-instructed man on the marching flank, and then command :

1. *Squad right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

352. At the second command, the rank, excepting the pivot-man, will step off with the left foot, turning at the same time the head a little to the left, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men to their left; the pivot-man will merely mark time in his place, gradually turning his body, so as to conform to the movement of the marching flank; the man who conducts this flank will take steps of twenty-eight inches, and, from the first step, advance a little the left shoulder, cast his eyes from time to time along the rank, and feel constantly the elbow of the next man lightly, but never push him.

353. The other men will feel lightly the elbow of the man next toward the pivot; resist pressure coming from the opposite side, and each will conform himself to the marching flank, shortening his step according to his distance from the pivot.

354. The instructor will make the rank wheel round the circle once or twice before halting, in order to cause the principles to be better understood, and he will be watchful that the centre does not break.

355. To arrest the wheel, the instructor will command :

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

356. At the second command, the rank will halt, and no man stir. The instructor, going to the flank opposite the pivot, will place the two outer men in the direction he may wish to give the rank, leaving just sufficient space between them and the pivot to contain the other men, the pivot conforming to this direction. He will then command :

1. *Left*—DRESS. 2. FRONT.

357. Which commands will be executed as previously explained.

358. The wheel to the left is similarly executed.

359. In wheeling on a fixed pivot, the instructor will carefully observe that the men constantly preserve the touch of the elbow toward the pivot; that they yield to pressure coming from this direction, while they resist that coming from the marching flank; that they cast their eyes toward the marching flank, and take steps in length according to their distance from the pivot.

*Wheeling in marching, or on a movable pivot.*

360. The rank being in march, to change direction to the side opposite the guide, the instructor will command:

1. *Squad right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

361. The first command will be given when the rank is yet three paces from the wheeling-point.

362. At the second command, the wheel will be executed the same as on a fixed pivot, except that the touch of the elbow will be toward the marching flank (side of the guide), instead of toward the pivot; that the pivot-man, instead of merely turning in his place, will conform himself to the movement of the marching flank, feel lightly the elbow of the next man, take steps of full nine inches, and thus gain ground forward in describing a small curve, so as to clear the wheeling-point. The middle of the rank will bend slightly to the rear. As soon as the movement shall commence, the man who conducts the marching flank will cast his eyes on the ground over which he will have to pass.

363. The wheel being completed, the instructor will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

364. The first command will be given when there are yet three paces required to complete the change of direction.

365. At the command *march*, given the instant the wheel is completed, the man on the marching flank will direct himself straight to the front; the pivot-man and all the rank will retake the step of twenty-eight inches, and bring the head direct to the front.

*Turning or changing direction to the side of the guide.*

366. The change of direction to the side of the guide in marching, will be executed as follows:

The instructor will command:

1. *Left (or right) turn.* 2. MARCH.

367. The first command will be given when the rank is yet three paces from the turning-point.

368. At the command *march*, to be pronounced at the instant the rank is to turn, the guide will face to the left (or right) in marching, and move forward in the new direction without slackening or quickening the cadence, or shortening or lengthening the step. The whole rank will promptly conform itself to the new direction, to effect which each man will advance the shoulder opposite to the guide, take the double time and advance in the new direction till he comes upon the alignment, when, casting his eyes toward the guide, he will take the quick step and touch of the elbow, after which he will turn his head to the front. The men will thus successively arrive on the alignment.

*Wheeling and changing direction to the side of the guide in double time.*

369. When the recruits comprehend and execute well in quick time the wheels on fixed and movable

pivots, and the change of direction to the side of the guide, they will be repeated in double time.

370. The command *double time* will precede that of *march*, and the movements will be executed as in quick time, except that the pivot-man will take steps of eleven inches, and in change of direction by turning the men on the side opposite the guide must increase the gait in order to come into line.

371. In order not to fatigue the recruits, the movements in this lesson will first be executed without arms, and after the mechanism is comprehended, with arms.

#### LESSON IV.

##### *Wheeling by fours.*

372. Wheeling by fours is always executed on a fixed pivot, and will first be taught in single rank with eight or more men, and afterward in two ranks. The instructor will cause the squad to call off, and to this end will command :

##### *Count—FOURS.*

373. At the command *fours*, the rank will count from right to left, *one, two, three, four*, each man pronouncing his number with animation and remembering it through the drill. The instructor will then command

##### 1. *Fours in circle right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

374. At the command *march*, each four will wheel as explained for the fixed pivot. The fours will wheel around the circle several times, completing each arc of a half and full circle simultaneously.

375. Should the left four be incomplete, the inner file will wheel on a circle whose radius is thirty-three, twenty-two, or eleven inches, according as there may be one, two, or three files. The other files will as before maintain the touch of the elbow toward the pivot.

376. To arrest the wheel, the instructor will command :

1. *Halt.* 2. *Left*—DRESS.

377. At the first command, given just as a circle is being completed, the fours will halt, and at the command *left dress*, will align themselves on the pivot-men, dressing toward the marching flank.

378. Fours in circle left wheel will be similarly executed, the fours being dressed by the right upon the completion of the wheel.

379. If in two ranks, wishing to call off, the instructor will command :

1. *Each rank.* 2. *Count*—FOURS.

380. (*Pl. XX.*) When the squad is formed in two ranks the instructor will always make the number of men in the front rank consist of a multiple of four or two greater. Having therefore called off, and all the files being complete, should there be but one file in the left four, the instructor will order a man from the rear into the front rank, leaving number one of the rear rank of the left four, and number three of the rear rank of the second four from the left blank; should the left four consist of three files, the instructor will order a man from the rear into the front rank, leaving number two and three rear rank blank.

381. Having called off, should there be a file blank in the rear rank, and the left four consist of either one or three files, the instructor will order a man from the front rank to fall out, which will reduce the number of files to a multiple of four or two greater.

382. The wheeling will be executed as in single rank, the rear-rank men simply covering their file-leaders, and keeping closed to sixteen inches.

383. Wheeling by fours being an essential principle in these Tactics, the instructor will strictly enforce the principles of the fixed pivot; he will see that the pivot-

2	1	4	3	2	1	4	3	2	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

2	4	2	1	4	3	2	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

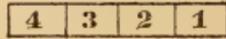
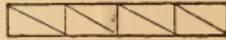
4	3	2	1	4	3	2	1	4	3	2	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

4	1	4	3	2	1	4	3	2	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---





12 in.   
32 in. 



Fours right No. 385.

man turns exactly in his place; that the touch of the elbow toward the pivot is maintained; that the file on the marching flank takes steps of twenty-eight or thirty-three inches; and that all the fours complete each wheel and unite in line simultaneously.

### LESSON V.

#### *To march by the flank.*

384. The squad having been called off, and either at a halt or marching, to march by the right flank, the instructor will command:

1. *Fours right.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide left.*

385. (*Pl. XXI.*) At the command *march*, each four will wheel to the right on a fixed pivot.

386. At the command *forward*, given the instant the wheel shall be completed, all the fours will step off, the front rank of each taking steps of twenty-eight inches, the rear rank shortening the step till they gain the distance of thirty-two inches from the front rank. The front rank of the second four will be thirty-two inches from the rear rank of the first four, and so on to the rear of the squad.

387. At the command *guide left*, each rank will dress to the left; the guide of the first four will march straight to his front, and each man will cover accurately his corresponding file in the rank preceding him.

388. The formation thus described will be designated *column of fours*.

389. The march by the left flank will be similarly executed at the commands: 1. *Fours left.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide right.*

390. Should the instructor desire the squad to halt upon the completion of the wheel, he will command:

## HALT.

391. At which all the ranks will halt, and the rear rank of each four will fall back to thirty-two inches.

392. In wheeling to the right, should the left four consist of two files, at the command *march*, the two front-rank men will step forty-four inches to the front, the rear-rank men will step into the places vacated by the front-rank men; both ranks will then wheel to the right on number one as a pivot, thereby forming a single rank of four, which will step off at the command *forward*, maintaining during the march the distance of thirty-two inches from the rank in front.

393. Wheeling to the left will be similarly executed, the ranks wheeling to the left on number two as a pivot.

394. Should number one rear rank be blank, number two when marching by the right flank will cover number one of the four in his front; in marching by the left flank he will be covered by number four.

*Change of direction in column of fours.*

395. Marching in column of fours, to change direction to the right or left, the instructor will command:

1. *Column right (or left)*. 2. MARCH.

396. At the command *march*, the leading rank of four will wheel to the right (or left) on a movable pivot, and then march straight to the front; the other ranks will wheel on the same ground, carefully maintaining the distance of thirty-two inches.

*To form line from column of fours.*

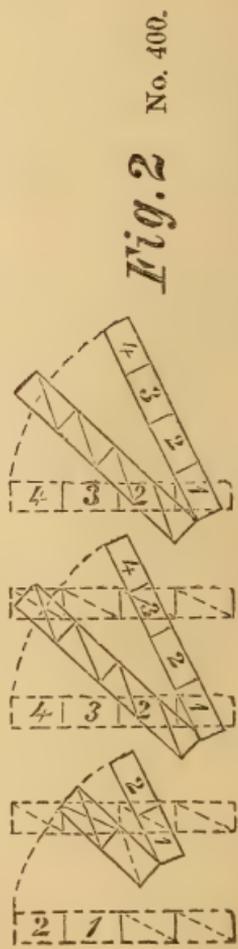
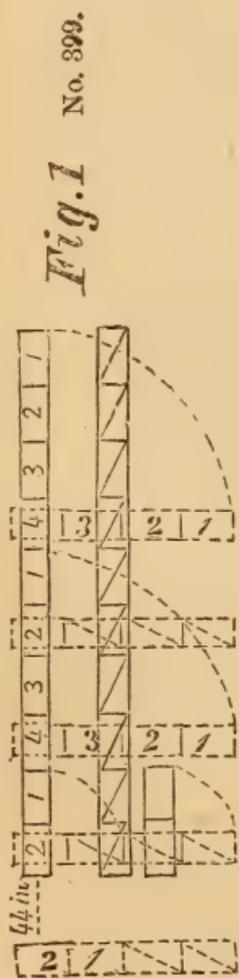
397. In column of fours, either at a halt or marching to form line to the right or left, the instructor will command:

1. *Fours right (or left)*. 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.

4. *Left (or right)* DRESS. 5. FRONT.

Or, 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide left (or right)*.

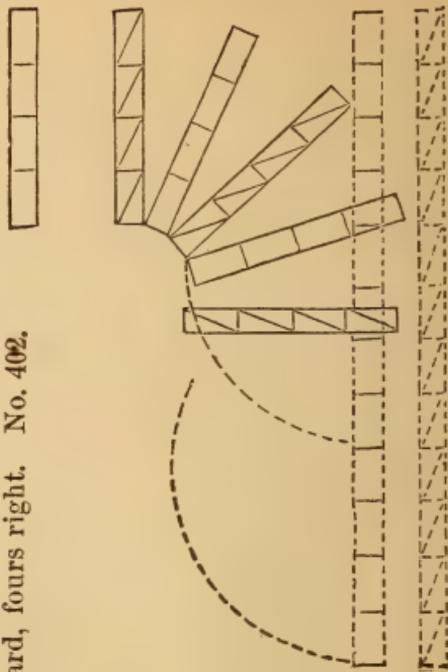








Right forward, fours right. No. 402.



398. The command *halt* or *forward* will be given according as the line is to halt or advance.

399. (*Pl. XXII., fig. 1.*) Should the left four consist of two files, when the line is formed toward the side of the front-rank men, the entire rank at the command *march*, will step forty-four inches to the front; the front- and rear-rank men will then wheel separately to the right (or left).

400. (*Pl. XXII., fig. 2.*) Should the line be formed toward the side of the rear-rank men, the two front-rank men will wheel to the right (or left), as if the four were complete; the rear-rank men will mark time for an instant, then wheel to the right or left, and cover their file-leaders.

*From line to march in column of fours to the front.*

401. Being in line either at a halt or marching, to march to the front in column of fours, the instructor will command:

1. *Right forward.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH.
4. *Guide left.*

402. (*Pl. XXIII.*) At the command *march*, the right four will move straight to the front, shortening the first three or four steps; the other fours will wheel to the right. The second four will wheel to the left the instant its first wheel is completed, and will follow the first four; the remaining fours will wheel to the left on the same ground as the second.

403. The movement will be similarly executed by the left at the commands:

1. *Left forward.* 2. *Fours left.* 3. MARCH.
4. *Guide right.*

404. Should the four which leads in the movement consist of two files, the rear-rank men, at the command *march*, will oblique to the right, or left, lengthen the step, and place themselves in single rank on the

right or left of the front-rank men, according as the movement is from the right or left.

405. The column of fours in march will be halted by the commands :

1. *Column.* 2. HALT.

406. It will be placed in march by the commands :

1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left (or right).*

3. MARCH.

407. The column of fours will oblique to the right or left at the commands :

1. *Right (or left) oblique.* 2. MARCH.

408. It will resume the direct march at the commands :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

*Front into line.*

409. Being in column of fours in march, to form line to the front, the instructor will command :

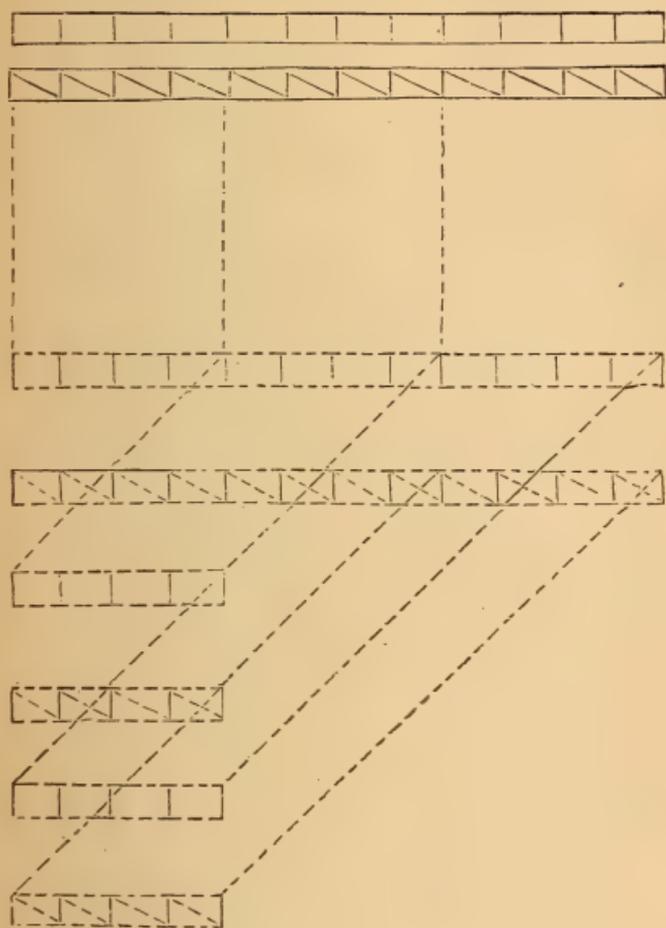
1. *Right (or left) front into line.* 2. MARCH.

3. *Guide left (or right).*

410. (*Pl. XXIV.*) At the command *march*, the first four will move straight to the front; the other fours will take the double step, and oblique to the right (or left) till opposite their intervals, then march to the front, taking, upon arriving in line, the quick step and the touch of the elbow toward the guide. The guide will be announced immediately after the command *march*.

411. If marching at double time, at the command *march*, the leading four will take the quick step, and so with the others upon arriving in line.

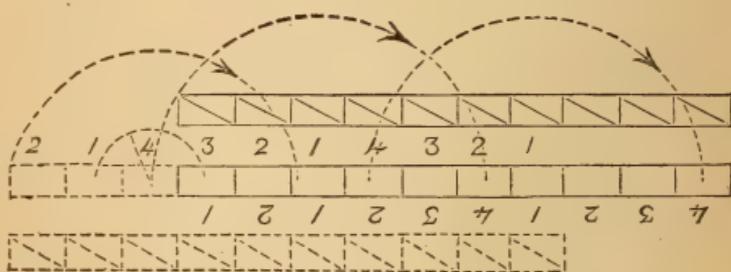
412. Should the leading four consist of two files, the rear-rank men, at the command *march*, will mark time till disengaged from the front-rank men, and then, by obliquing, will cover their file-leaders.



Right front into live. No. 410.







Fours right about. No. 415.

*To march in retreat.*

413. Being in line, or in column of fours, at a halt or marching, to face to the rear, or march in retreat, the instructor will command :

1. *Fours right (or left) about.* 2. MARCH.

3. HALT, or FORWARD—*Guide left (or right).*

414. The command *halt*, or *forward*, will be given as the half circle is completed.

415. (*Pl. XXV.*) If in line, and the left four consist of two files, the inner file will wheel on the arc of a circle whose radius is twenty-two inches. (*Pl. XXVI.*) If in column, to execute the about, the four in the first half of the movement will conform to what has been explained for forming line from column of fours, and in the second half to what has been explained for forming column of fours from line.

416. The same movements will be executed by fours in double time as in quick time. The instructor will observe that it is a matter of indifference whether the fours wheel to the right about or the left about, and that in all movements by fours the guide is announced toward the marching flank; also that, after halting, the squad is dressed toward the marching flank.

417. The precision of all movements by fours depends upon the immovability of the pivot, the touch of the elbow toward it, and the careful preservation of the distance of thirty-two inches between the different ranks while marching. The instructor will therefore give these three points his constant and unceasing attention.

**LESSON VI.***Long marches in double time and the run.*

418. The instructor will cause to be resumed the exercises in double time and the run, with arms and knapsacks.

419. He will cause long marches to be executed in double time, both by the front and by the flank, and by constant practice will lead the men to pass over long distances with little fatigue.

420. The pieces will be carried on the right shoulder, and sometimes at a trail.

421. He will also exercise them in long marches at a run, the pieces carried at will; the men will be instructed to keep as united as possible, without, however, exacting too much regularity, which is impracticable.

422. The run in actual service will only be resorted to when it shall be highly important to reach a desired point with great promptitude.

*To stack arms.*

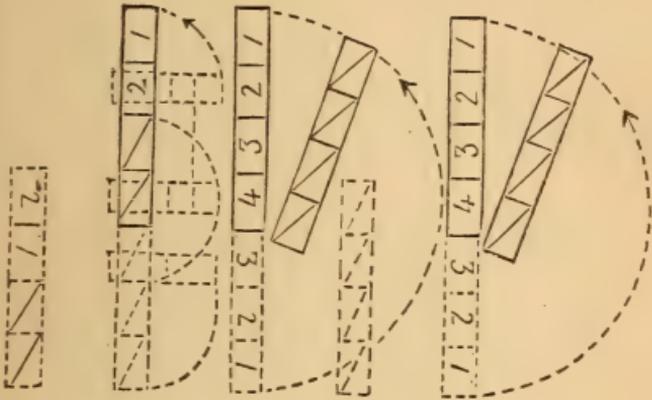
423. The men being at *order arms*, the instructor will command:

STACK—ARMS.

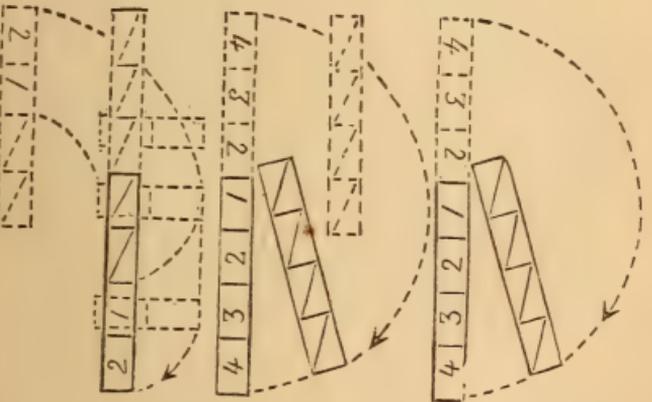
*Two times and two motions.*

424. (*First motion.*) At the command *stack*, each even number of the front rank will carry his piece with the right hand diagonally in front of the centre of the body, and seize it with the left below the middle band, the barrel to the rear, the muzzle opposite the right arm; he will then seize the piece of his rear-rank man with his right hand below the middle band, and place the shank of the bayonet upon that of his own, the barrel to the right; the odd-numbered file of the front rank will then place the shank of his bayonet in the angle formed by the bayonets of the other two pieces, the barrel to the front, retaining his hold on the piece below the middle band. The butts of all the pieces will be about six inches from the ground.

425. (*Second motion.*) At the command *arms*, the even number of the front rank, with his right hand, will pass the butt of the musket of the rear-rank man



Fours left about, in column.



Fours right about, in column.

No. 415.



thirty inches to the front, passing it between the butts of the other two pieces; the stacks will then be lowered, the butt of the musket of the even number striking the ground just to the left of his left toe, that of the odd number striking the ground between his feet.

426. The stack being formed, the odd number in the rear rank will pass his piece to his left hand, and place it against the stack.

427. The men of both ranks having taken the position of the soldier without arms, the instructor will command:

1. *Break ranks.* 2. MARCH.

*To resume arms.*

428. Both ranks being re-formed in rear of their stacks, the instructor will command:

TAKE—ARMS.

*Two times and two motions.*

429. (*First motion.*) At the command *take*, the odd number of the rear rank will take his piece from the stack, and resume the order arms; the even number of the front rank will seize his own piece with the left and the piece of his rear-rank man with the right hand, both hands below the middle band; the odd number of the front rank will at the same time seize his own piece with his left hand below the middle band.

430. (*Second motion.*) At the command *arms*, raise and break the stack, and return the pieces to the order arms.

431. If in single rank, number two of each four will make the stack, and at the command *stack*, will take the piece of number three with the left hand below the middle band, and use it as explained for the piece of the even number when in two ranks; his own

piece he will place as explained for the piece of the even-numbered rear-rank man; the stack will be completed as in two ranks, after which the piece of number four will be passed to the right and placed upon the stack.

432. In breaking the stack, the piece of number four will first be passed to him; the stack will then be broken as when in two ranks, except that number two will seize his own piece with the right and the piece of number three with the left hand.

END OF THE SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

## TITLE THIRD.

### SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

#### *General Rules and Division of the School of the Company.*

433. In the School of the Company the captain will act as the instructor. His position will be two paces in front of the centre of the company, but for the purpose of instruction, he will repair wherever necessary. The second sergeant will place himself on the left of the front rank, and will serve as left or right guide as circumstances require.

434. The company will be formed, facing to the right, by the first sergeant, who, at the second signal, will give the command:

#### FALL IN.

435. The drum having ceased to beat, the sergeant will command FRONT, at which the men will face to the front. He will next bring the company to a *support arms*, and then call the roll, each man coming to a *carry* and *order arms* as his name is called.

436. The sergeant will next cause the company to call off by fours, giving the commands:

1. *Each rank.*
2. *Count fours.*

437. Commencing on the right, the men of each rank will count distinctly *one, two, three, four*, and so on to the left. Should the left four consist of one or three files, the sergeant will conform to what is explained in Paragraph 380.

438. The company having called off, the sergeant will command *In place*—REST, and upon the approach of the captain, will report the absentees.

439. When a company parades without arms, the men will fall in in two ranks, facing to the front, and at *parade rest*.

440. The School of the Company will be divided into six lessons, and each lesson will comprehend from four to five articles, as follows:

### LESSON I.

1. To open ranks.
2. Alignments in open ranks.
3. Manual of arms.
4. To close ranks.
5. Alignments and manual of arms in closed ranks.

### LESSON II.

1. To load in four times and at will.
2. To fire by company.
3. To fire by file.
4. To fire by rank.

### LESSON III.

1. To march in line of battle.
2. To halt the company marching in line of battle and to align it.
3. The oblique march in line of battle.
4. To mark time, to march in double time, and the back step.
5. To wheel the company and to change direction.

### LESSON IV.

1. To march by the flank. To halt the column of fours, and to put it in march. Oblique march in column of fours. To change direction in column of fours.

2. To form line from column of fours to the right or left.
3. Front into line.
4. To form column of fours to the front.
5. To march in retreat.

### LESSON V.

1. To break fours to the rear.
2. Route step.
3. To march by twos.

### LESSON VI.

1. To form the company from double into single rank, to manœuvre it, and to form it from single rank into double ranks.

The instructor will be as clear and concise as possible in his explanations, and will correct all faults as they occur. Composure and presence of mind in him who commands, and in those who obey, being the first means of order in a body of troops, the instructor will labor to habituate the company to this essential quality, and will himself give the example.

### LESSON I.

#### ARTICLE FIRST.

#### *To open ranks.*

441. The company being at *order arms*, to cause the ranks to be opened, the captain will command:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Company.* 3. *Carry—ARMS.*
4. *Rear open order.*

442. At the fourth command, the right and left guides will step off smartly four paces to the rear, to mark the new alignment of the rear rank. The sergeants will judge the distance by the eye and not by counting the steps.

443. The captain will place himself at the same time on the right flank, and observe that the guides are on a line parallel with the front rank; he will then command :

MARCH.

444. At this command, the front-rank men will cast their eyes to the right; the rear rank will step to the rear without counting the steps, halt slightly in rear of the alignment, and then dress to the right on the line established by the guides.

445. The file-closers will march to the rear at the same time with the rear rank, and will place themselves two paces from this rank when it is aligned.

446. The captain will align the front rank, and the right guide the rear rank.

447. The captain, seeing the rear rank aligned, will command :

FRONT.

448. At this command, the guides will take their places in the front rank, and the men will cast their eyes to the front.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### *Alignment of ranks.*

449. The ranks being open, the captain will first align the ranks man by man. To this end he will cause four men on the right (or left) of each rank to march three paces to the front, and having aligned them, will command :

*By file right (or left)*—DRESS.

450. At this, the men of each rank will move up successively on the alignment, each man being preceded by his neighbor toward the basis by two paces, and having correctly aligned himself, will cast his eyes to the front.

451. The successive alignments being correctly executed, the captain will next cause the ranks to align themselves at once, both forward and backward, and in oblique directions, giving in each case four men to serve as a basis. He will command :

1. *Company.* 2. *Right (or left)*—DRESS. 3. FRONT.

OR

1. *Company.* 2. *Right (or left) backward*—DRESS.  
3. FRONT.

452. In oblique alignments, the men in the rear rank will not seek to cover their file-leaders, as the sole object of the exercise is to teach them to align themselves correctly in their respective ranks in the different directions.

453. In the several alignments, the captain may be assisted by the first lieutenant in the front, and the second lieutenant in the rear rank. The positions of the soldiers and their pieces will be corrected after every alignment, if necessary.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

##### *Manual of arms.*

454. The ranks being open, the captain will direct the first lieutenant to superintend the front, and the second lieutenant the rear rank, and then will execute the manual of arms.

455. The instructor will take care that the positions of the body, of the feet, and of the piece, be always exact, and that the motions be briskly executed and close to the body.

456. In the School of the Company, the bayonet will habitually be carried in the scabbard.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

##### *To close ranks.*

457. The captain will command :

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

458. At the command *march*, the rear rank will close up in quick time, each man covering his file-leader.

## ARTICLE FIFTH.

*Alignments and manual of arms in closed ranks.*

459. The ranks being closed, the captain will execute parallel and oblique alignments by the right and left, forward and backward, always placing four files to serve as a basis. He will command :

1. *Company.* 2. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS. 3. FRONT.

OR

1. *Company.* 2. *Right* (or *left*) *backward*—DRESS.  
3. FRONT.

460. The captain will give the command *front* when he sees most of the front rank aligned, and afterward, if necessary, rectify the alignment of the other men, directing by name such as are out of line to move *up* or *back*.

461. In all alignments, the file-closers will preserve the distance of two paces from the rear rank.

462. The alignments being ended, the captain will cause to be executed the manual of arms.

463. The captain, wishing to give the men rest without deranging the alignment, will first cause arms to be supported or ordered, and then command :

*In place*—REST.

464. At this command, they will no longer be required to preserve silence or steadiness of position, but they will always keep one heel or the other on the alignment.

465. Should the captain not desire to preserve the alignment, he will command :

REST.

466. At which command, the men will not be required to preserve immobility or to remain strictly in their places.

467. The captain may also, when he thinks proper, cause bayonets to be fixed and arms stacked, after which he will command :

1. *Break ranks.* 2. MARCH.

### LESSON II.

468. The captain, wishing to pass to the second lesson, will call the company to attention, cause it to take arms, if stacks have been formed, and command :

*Carry—ARMS.*

469. The instructor will then cause the loadings and firings to be executed in the following order :

#### ARTICLE FIRST.

*To load in four times and at will.*

470. Loading in four times is executed as already explained; the first time embracing *charge cartridge*, the second *ram cartridge*, the third *prime*, and the fourth *carry arms*. The captain will cause the exercise to be often repeated before passing to loading at will.

471. Loading at will will be executed as laid down in the manual of arms. It being used exclusively in battle, the men should be carefully instructed in its principles, and brought by degrees to load with cartridges and fire three times per minute with ease and regularity.

#### ARTICLE SECOND.

472. In the different firings, at the first command, the guides will fall back to the line of file-closers, and the captain will take his position four paces in rear of that line, opposite the centre of the company. He

may, however, for instruction, take position where he can best observe the execution of his commands :

*To fire by company.*

473. To fire by company, the captain will command :

1. *Fire by company.* 2. *Company.* 3. READY. 4. AIM. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.

474. At the command *load*, the men will load their pieces and come to the position of *ready*. The captain will continue the firing by the commands :

1. *Company.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

475. The captain will frequently fire to the right or left, giving the command *right* or *left oblique* before the command *aim*.

476. The firing will cease at the command or signal :

*Cease firing.*

ARTICLE THIRD.

*Fire by file.*

477. To fire by file, the captain will command :

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Company.* 3. READY. 4. COMMENCE FIRING.

478. At the fourth command, the file on the right will aim and fire : the second file will aim the instant the first lowers his piece to the first position of load, and so on to the left. After the first fire each man will reload and fire without regulating himself by the others. The firing will cease at the command *cease firing*.

ARTICLE FOURTH:

*Fire by rank.*

479. To fire by rank, the captain will command :

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Company.* 3. READY. 4. *Rear rank*—AIM. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.

480. The captain, seeing some of the pieces of the rear rank at a ready, will command :

1. *Front rank.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

481. The firing will be continued direct or oblique, the ranks alternating till the command *cease firing*, when all discharged pieces will be reloaded and brought to the carry.

482. The signal to cease firing, when cartridges are used, will be sounded on a drum or bugle, and will be followed, when the pieces are brought to the carry, by a tap or bugle-note, at which sound the captain will return to his post, two paces in front of the centre of the company, and the guides will place themselves in the front rank.

483. When cartridges are not used, the commands *cease firing* and *taps* will replace the signals on the drum.

484. The captain in the different firings, after the command *aim*, will allow sufficient time to fix the aim on the object before giving the command *fire*. He will also recommend to the soldiers in the firings the highest degree of composure and presence of mind, and will neglect nothing that may contribute to this end.

485. He will instruct the front-rank men that, in order to preserve the alignment during the firings, the left heel must be kept in place, and he will enforce in each exercise the observance of this principle.

486. The fire by file being that which is most frequently used against the enemy, it is highly important that it be rendered perfectly familiar to the troops; the captain will, therefore, give it almost exclusive preference, and labor to cause the men to aim with care, and always, if possible, at some particular object. As the precision of aiming is of vital impor-

tance in battle, its necessity will be carefully impressed in every lesson.

487. The captain, in addition to the above remarks, will observe the following:

488. When the firing is executed with cartridges, it is particularly recommended that the men observe in uncocking whether smoke escapes from the tube, which is a certain indication that the piece has been discharged; but if, on the contrary, no smoke escapes, the soldier, in such case, will pick and prime again. If, believing the load to be discharged, the soldier should put a second cartridge in his piece, he ought, at least, to perceive it in ramming by the length of the load, and he would be very culpable should he put in a third. The captain will always inspect the arms after firing with cartridges, in order to observe if the fault has been committed of putting in three cartridges without a discharge of the piece, in which case the ball-screw will be applied.

489. It sometimes happens, when a cap has missed fire, that the tube is found stopped up with a hard, white, and compact powder; in this case picking will be dispensed with, and a new cap substituted for the old one.

### LESSON III.

#### ARTICLE FIRST.

##### *To advance in line of battle.*

490. The company being in line of battle, and correctly aligned, when the captain shall wish to exercise it in marching to the front, he will place himself twenty-five or thirty paces in front of the right guide, and facing him, so that the line, passing between his heels and those of the guide, shall be perpendicular to the front of the company.

491. He will next designate a sergeant, distinguished for steadiness and precision in marching, who will place himself six paces in front of the guide, on

the line established. This sergeant, who will be charged with the direction and step, will, as soon as assured in his position, take two points on the ground, in the straight line passing between his heels and those of the captain.

492. These dispositions being made, the captain will command :

1. *Company forward.* 2. MARCH.

493. At the command *march*, the company will step off with life. The directing sergeant will observe, with the greatest care, the length and cadence of the step, marching on the two points he has chosen, and selecting new points in advance, on the same line, before approaching the first. The right guide will march straight in the trace of the directing sergeant, keeping always six paces from him ; the men will each maintain the head direct to the front, the eyes striking the ground about fifteen paces in front ; feel lightly the elbow toward the guide, and resist pressure from the opposite direction.

494. The man next to the guide will take special pains never to pass him ; to this end he will keep the line of his shoulders a little in rear, but in the same direction with those of the guide.

495. The file-closers will march at the habitual distance of two paces from the rear rank.

496. If the men lose the step, the captain will command :

*To the step.*

497. At this command, the men will glance toward the directing sergeant, retake the step from him, and again direct their eyes to the front.

498. The captain will frequently place the directing sergeant in front of the left guide, and in the first exercises will march the company with open ranks. A sergeant, in that instance, will be the guide of the

rear rank, and will follow in the trace of the guide of the front rank.

499. The captain, with a view the better to establish the men in the length and cadence of the step, and in the principles of the march in line, will often cause the company to advance three or four hundred paces without halting.

500. When the principles of marching to the front are well understood, the captain will dispense with the directing sergeant, and will put the company in march by the commands :

1. *Company forward.* 2. *Guide right (or left).*
3. MARCH.

#### ARTICLE SECOND.

*To halt the company marching in line of battle, and to align it.*

501. The captain, wishing to halt the company, will command :

1. *Company.* 2. HALT.

502. At the second command, the company will halt; the directing sergeant will remain in advance, unless ordered to return to the line of file-closers.

503. Wishing to align the company, the captain will establish the guide, and then command :

1. *Company.* 2. *Right DRESS.* 3. FRONT.

Or,

504. He may satisfy himself with rectifying the alignment, by directing such files as are out of line to move up or back.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

*Oblique march in line of battle.*

505. The company being in the direct march, to cause it to march obliquely, the captain will command :

1. *Right (or left) oblique.* 2. MARCH.

506. At the command *march*, the company will half face to the right (or left); and march in the new direction; the rear-rank men will march in rear of the next man to the right or left of their file-leaders. The captain will observe, in obliquing, that the line of the ranks should remain constantly parallel to the line when marching to the front, which can only be done by the men preserving the same degree of obliquity, and taking steps equal in length.

507. When the captain shall wish the direct march to be resumed, he will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

508. At the command *march*, the company will make a half face to the left (or right), and resume the direct march.

509. In the oblique march, the men not having the touch of the elbow, the guide will always be on the side toward which the oblique is made, without any indication to that effect being given; and when the direct march is resumed, the guide will be, equally without indication, on the side where he was previous to the oblique.

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

*To mark time, to march in double time, and the back step.*

510. The company being in the direct march, and in quick time, to cause it to mark time, the captain will command :

1. *Mark time.* 2. MARCH.

511. To resume the march, he will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

512. To cause the march in double time, the captain will command :

1. *Double time.* 2. MARCH.

513. At the command *double time*, the pieces will be brought to the right shoulder, and the left hand to the hip. The command *march* will be given the instant either foot is coming to the ground.

514. To resume quick time, the captain will command:

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

515. The command *march* will be pronounced at the instant either foot is coming to the ground. The pieces will remain on the right shoulder.

516. The company being at a halt, to cause it to march in the back step, the captain will command:

1. *Company backward.* 2. MARCH.

517. The company will take steps of fourteen inches directly to the rear, and will be halted at the commands:

1. *Company.* 2. HALT.

518. The back step will only be used when necessary to gain a few paces to the rear, and will always be executed in quick time.

519. The company will oblique to the right or left, and resume the direct march by the same commands and means in double time as in quick time. If at a halt, at the command *right* or *left oblique*, the men will make a half face to the right or left, and step off at the command *march*; upon halting, they will face to the front without command.

520. Whenever a company is halted, the pieces will be brought to a carry, if not already there, and the rear rank, except in column of fours, will always close to sixteen inches.

## ARTICLE FIFTH.

*To wheel the company, and to change direction.*

521. The company being in line of battle, at a halt,

when the captain shall wish it to wheel to the right, he will command :

1. *Company right wheel.* 2. MARCH (OR *double time* —MARCH).

522. At the command *march*, the company will wheel to the right, the files touching toward the pivot and dressing toward the marching flank, which will be conducted by the left guide ; the captain will throw himself by the shortest line to the point where the left of the company will rest when the wheel shall be completed.

523. When the left guide shall be near the perpendicular, the captain will command :

1. *Company.* 2. HALT.

524. At the command *halt*, which will be given at the instant the left guide shall be at three paces from the perpendicular, the company will halt ; the guide will advance and place his left arm lightly against the breast of the captain, who will establish him on the alignment ; the right guide at the same time will place himself on the alignment, on the right of the pivot-man, which being done, the captain will command :

1. *Left—DRESS.* 2. FRONT.

525. The captain having given the command *front*, will return to his post, two paces in front of the centre of the company.

526. The company will wheel to the left on a fixed pivot according to the same principles. The right guide will conduct the marching flank, and the company will be dressed to the right.

*To change direction to the side opposite the guide.*

527. The company being in line of battle, and on the march, with the guide to the left, when the captain shall wish it to change direction to the right, he will command :

1. *Company right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

528. At the command *march*, the company will wheel to the right on a movable pivot, the files touching and dressing toward the marching flank; the pivot-man will take steps of nine or eleven inches according to the time.

529. When the left guide shall be near the perpendicular, the captain will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

530. The first command will be given at the instant the guide shall be at three paces from the perpendicular, and the second the instant the change of direction shall be complete, upon which all the files will take the full step.

531. The guide being right, the change of direction to the left will be similarly executed.

*To change direction to the side of the guide.*

532. The company being in line of battle, and on the march, with the guide to the right, to change direction to the right, the captain will command:

1. *Company right turn.* 2. MARCH.

533. The first command will be given at three paces from the turning-point.

534. At the second command, given the instant the change of direction should commence, the right guide will face to the right, and continue the march without changing the cadence or the length of the step; all the files will increase the gait, and hasten to place themselves on the left, taking the step and touch of the elbow toward the guide upon arriving in line.

535. Left turn will be similarly executed.

536. The captain may always effect a change of direction by a wheel, by first changing the guide to the side opposite the desired change, if not already there.

## LESSON IV.

## ARTICLE FIRST.

*To march by the flank.*

537. The company being in line of battle, and either at a halt or marching, the captain, wishing to march by the right flank, will command :

1. *Fours right.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide left.*

538. At the second command, the fours will wheel to the right, and at the third will move off in the new direction, the rear rank of each four shortening the step till the front rank gains thirty-two inches.

539. Both guides, at the second command, will march sixty-six inches to the front and face to the right; the right guide, at the command forward, will march on a line parallel to the former front of the company, and will be covered by the left file of the first four; the left guide will follow in rear of the company, opposite the left file.

540. The file-closers will march two paces from the flank of the column.

541. The march by the left flank will be similarly executed at the commands :

1. *Fours left.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide right.*

*To halt the column of fours and put it in march.*

542. The column of fours will be halted at the commands :

1. *Column.* 2. HALT.

543. It will be put in march at the commands :

1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left (or right).* 3. MARCH.

*Oblique march in column of fours.*

544. The column of fours, either at a halt or marching, will oblique at the commands :

1. *Right* (or *left*) *oblique*. 2. MARCH.

545. It will resume the direct march at the commands :

1. *Forward*. 2. MARCH.

*Change of direction in column of fours.*

546. To change direction in column of fours, the captain will command :

1. *Column right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH.

547. If the change of direction be toward the side of the guide, the guide will, at the command *march*, shorten his step and wheel to the right or left on the arc of a small circle ; the pivot-man of the leading rank of four will wheel on the same ground, following in the trace of the guide, and conforming his movements to those of the marching flank ; when the wheel shall be completed, the guide and pivot-man will retake the step of twenty-eight inches. The other ranks will wheel on the same ground.

548. If the change be to the side opposite the guide, he will wheel as if on the marching flank of a rank of four.

549. The principles of *turning* are not applicable to changes of direction in *column of fours*.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*To form line from column of fours, to the right or left.*

550. To form line from column of fours to the right or left, either at a halt or marching, the captain will commands :

1. *Fours right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.

4. *Left* (or *right*) DRESS. 5. FRONT.

OR

3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

551. At the command *march*, the fours will wheel to the right or left, according to the command.

552. If to the right, and the guide be in front of the pivot, he will at the command *march* step two paces forward and face to the right, placing himself on the left of the leading four at the command *halt* or *forward*; if in front of the marching flank, he will wheel to the right with the leading four, obliquing at the same time to his left, so as to uncover the file on the marching flank, taking his place beside him at the command *halt* or *forward*.

553. The guide in rear will take his place on the right of the company, at the same commands.

554. If the wheel is made to the left, the guide will conform to what is explained above, except that he will face to the left, or oblique to the right, according as he is in front of the pivot or the marching flank.

555. Should the line be formed toward the side of the file-closers, they will at the first command close in to the flank of the column, and at the command *march* will dart through it, passing between the rear rank of one four, and the front rank of the succeeding four.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

556. The column of fours being in march, to form line to the front, the captain will command:

*Right (or left) front into line.* 2. MARCH.

3. *Guide left (or right).*

557. At the second command, the leading four will continue the march, the guide placing himself on the left (or right); the other fours will take the double step, and oblique to the right (or left) till opposite their interval, then march to the front, taking upon arriving in line the quick step, and touch of the elbow toward the side of the guide.

558. The guide in rear will place himself on the

right (or left) of the company, upon the arrival of the last four in line.

559. If the movement is made toward the side of the file-closers, they will dart through the column as the oblique commences.

560. Should the captain wish to halt the company before the movement is completed, he will command :

1. *Company.* 2. HALT.

561. At the second command, only those fours in line will halt ; the others will complete the movement, each dressing toward the guide upon halting.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

*To form column of fours to the front.*

562. To form column of fours to the front, the company being either at a halt or marching, the captain will command :

1. *Right forward.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH.
4. *Guide left.*

563. At the third command, the right four will move straight to the front, shortening the first four or five steps ; the other fours will wheel to the right, the second four wheeling to the left and following the first four the instant its first wheel shall be completed ; the other fours will wheel to the left on the same ground as the second. The guide will take his place in column of fours at the fourth command.

#### ARTICLE FIFTH.

*To march in retreat.*

564. The company being either in column of fours or in line of battle, at a halt or marching, to march in retreat, the captain will command :

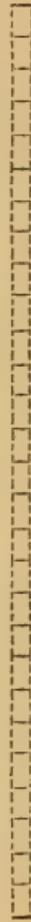
1. *Fours right (or left) about.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left (or right).*



Cp. □



Lt.



Lt. □



Lt. □



(So many) fours from right to rear. No. 57L

565. At the second command, the fours will wheel about, and at the third, given the instant the half circle shall be completed, each file will take the full step.

566. If in line, the captain, at the command *march*, will pass through the nearest interval and place himself two paces in front of the centre of his company; the guides will wheel about on the arc of a circle whose radius is thirty-three inches; the file-closers will dart through the nearest interval, placing themselves two paces from the rear rank.

567. In column, the guides, in the first half of the movement, will conform to what has been explained for forming from column into line; and in the second half, to what has been explained for breaking from line into column; the file-closers will simply gain the space to the right or left necessary to maintain the distance of two paces from the flank of the column.

568. In column, the about will always be executed toward the side opposite the file-closers.

569. In battalion drill, the position of the captain in column of fours is by the side of the leading guide; in the company drill he may go wherever his presence is necessary.

## LESSON V.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

#### *To break fours to the rear.*

570. The company marching in line, to break fours to the rear for the purpose of passing obstacles which may present themselves in front of either flank, the captain will command:

1. (So many) *Fours from right (or left) to rear.* 2.  
MARCH.

571. (*Pl. XXVII.*) If from the right, the fours will execute the left forward, fours left, on the four next to the left which remains in line; if from the left, they

will execute the right forward, fours right, on the four next on their right.

572. When more than one four break to the rear, the captain will point with his sword to the inner four which will lead in the movement. The guide, if the fours are broken from his side, will close on the fours which remain in line; if from the opposite side, the sergeant on that flank will follow in rear of the four next to him.

573. The fours which have broken to the rear will be formed into line at the command:

1. *Rear fours, front into line.* 2. MARCH.

574. Which is executed as previously explained.

575. The guide, if on the side of the fours broken to the rear, will, at the command *march*, hasten to the point where the flank of the company will be when the movement is completed.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### *Route step.*

576. The column of fours will be the habitual column of route. The route step is at the rate of from two miles and a half to three miles per hour.

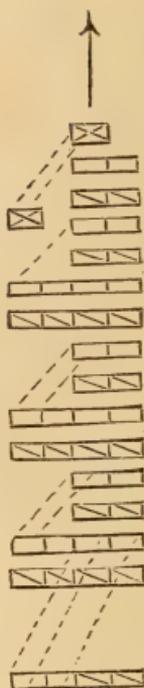
577. The company being at a halt, to march it in the route step the captain will command:

1. *Fours right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD.  
4. *Guide left* (or *right*)—*Route step.* 5. MARCH.

578. At the fifth command, the men will carry their arms at will, keeping the muzzles elevated. They will no longer be required to preserve silence, or to keep the step, but each will march in the manner most easy to him, simply covering the file in his front, and always maintaining the distance of thirty-two inches.

579. To resume the cadenced step, the captain will





Right by twos. No. 584.

give the commands: 1. *Attention*. 2. COMPANY. At which command, the arms will be brought to a right shoulder shift, and the cadence step will be resumed.

580. The company in line may also march in the route step when the ground will permit.

581. If in march, the commands: 1. *Route step*. 2. MARCH, will be given; if at a halt, the command *route step* will precede that of *march*.

582. The company in the route step will change direction by the same commands as when in the cadenced step. The cadenced step will be resumed by the same commands and means as in column of fours.

### ARTICLE THIRD.

#### *To march by twos.*

583. Being in column of fours, right in front; or with the file-closers on the right, when it shall be necessary to reduce the front to two men, the captain will command:

1. *Right by twos*. 2. MARCH.

584. (*Pl. XXVIII.*) At the first command, the rear rank of each four will close to sixteen inches.

585. At the second command, the two files on the right of each four will continue the march; the two files on the left will mark time till disengaged, when they will oblique to the right and follow the right files, keeping closed to sixteen inches.

586. Should the leading or rear four consist of two files, at the command *march*, the rear-rank men will mark time for an instant, so as to allow the front-rank men to oblique to the right and place themselves in front.

587. The leading guide will place himself sixteen inches in front of the left file of the leading two; the rear guide will follow sixteen inches in rear of the left file of the rear two.

588. Left by twos will be similarly executed. If the leading or rear four consist of two files, the rear-rank men will mark time for an instant, and the front-rank men will oblique to the left.

589. The march by twos will always be in quick time; the leading guide will take a steady step, shortening the first few, so as to allow the twos time to form, and the men, as nearly as possible, will keep closed to sixteen inches.

*To re-form the column.*

590. Having broken to the right by twos, to re-form the column, the captain will command:

1. *Form fours.* 2. *Right oblique.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Guide left.*

591. At the command *march*, the right or leading two of each four will oblique to the right till they uncover the left two; they will then mark time, and again resume the forward march when the left two arrive on a line with them; the fours having united, the rear ranks will fall back to thirty-two inches.

592. Should the leading or rear four consist of two files, the front-rank men at the command *march*, will move straight to the front; the rear-rank men will oblique to the right till they uncover the front-rank men; they will then march to the front, the front-rank men shortening the step till the rear-rank men arrive on a line with them.

593. The leading guide will shorten the first few steps so as to allow the fours time to form.

594. Forming fours, left oblique, will be similarly executed.

595. Should the leading or rear four consist of two files, the rear-rank men will place themselves on a line with the front-rank men by obliquing to the left.

596. A company in line of battle may move by the flank in column of twos by the commands:

1. *Twos right* (or *left*).
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

597. The twos will wheel to the right on numbers one and three of each four as pivots, and to the left on numbers two and four.

598. Being in column of twos, fours will be formed right or left oblique, according as the right or left is in front, or the file-closers on the right or left of the column.

599. The column of twos will be formed in line, according as the right or left is in front, by the commands:

1. *Twos left* (or *right*).
2. MARCH.
3. HALT, or FORWARD.
4. *Guide right* (or *left*).

600. Being in line of battle, the company will march in column of twos to the front, by the command:

1. *Right* (or *left*) *forward*.
2. *Twos right* (or *left*).
3. MARCH.
4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

601. The march by twos will never be resorted to, except when temporary obstacles prevent the march in column of fours, or when in small squads.

602. In the former case, column of fours will be formed the instant the obstacle is passed.

603. In the latter case the squad will call off by fours, and in wheeling to the right, the odd file, should there be one, will step twenty-two inches to the front, and face to the right; in wheeling to the left, the odd file will step the same distance to the front, and face to the left.

604. In forming line to the right or left, the odd file will step twenty-two inches to the front, and face to the right or left.

## LESSON VI.

## ARTICLE FIRST.

*To form the company from double into single rank, to manœuvre it, and to form it from single to double ranks.*

*To form single rank.*

605. The company being in line of battle, should the captain desire to form single rank by the right flank, he will command :

1. *Form single rank.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH  
(or double time—MARCH).

606. (*Pl. XXIX., fig. 1.*) At the command *march*, all the fours will wheel to the right; the front rank of the right four, upon completing the wheel, will continue the march, and will be conducted by the right guide, in front of the file on the marching flank; the other ranks will halt, and successively resume the march, when at seventy-six inches, or wheeling distance from the rank preceding. The rearmost rank being at its distance, the captain will command :

1. *Fours left.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. *Left—*  
DRESS. 5. FRONT.

607. Single rank will be formed by the left flank, by the commands :

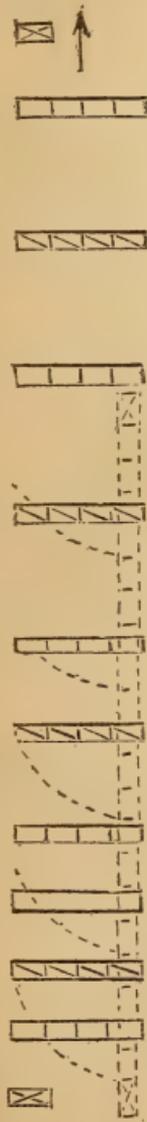
1. *Form single rank.* 2. *Fours left.* 3. MARCH  
(or double time—MARCH).

608. The rearmost rank having its wheeling distance, the captain will command :

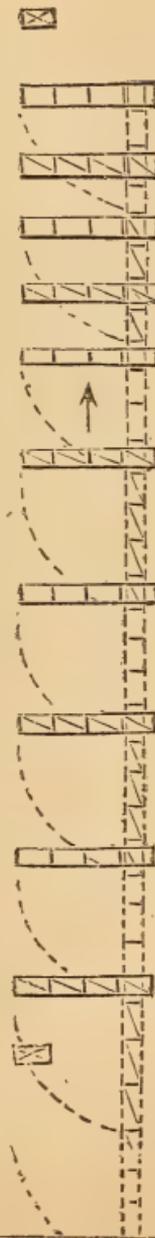
1. *Fours right.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. *Right—*  
DRESS. 5. FRONT.

609. In forming single rank, should any rank of four be incomplete, the files, upon breaking into column, will close in toward the marching flank; the

Form single rank, fours right. No. 606.



*Fig. 1*



*Fig. 2*

Form double ranks, fours right. No. 620.



wheeling distance will be fifty-four, or thirty-two inches, according as the rank contains three or two files.

610. Should the company be marching in column of fours, and the captain wish to form single rank, he will command :

1. *Form single rank.* 2. MARCH.

611. At the second command, the leading rank of fours will continue the march; the other ranks will halt, and successively resume the march when at wheeling distance. The rearmost rank having its distance, the captain will form line as before.

612. Should the company be marching in column of fours, and the captain desire to take single-rank distance without forming line, he will command :

1. *Single-rank distance.* 2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

613. At the second command, the leading rank, if the column be marching in quick time, will continue in that gait; the other ranks will halt, and successively resume the march when at wheeling distance.

614. If the march be in double time, or in quick time, and the command be double time, the leading rank will march in double time; the other ranks will march in quick time till they gain their distance, and will then take the double time.

615. The company being in single rank, the position of the officers and sergeants will be the same as when in double ranks, and the company will perform all the movements explained for double ranks by the same commands and means.

616. In breaking from line into column, should any rank of four be incomplete, the rank, before commencing the wheel, will step twenty-two or forty-four inches to the front, according as there may be three or two files in the rank; the rank will then fol-

low the one preceding, precisely at the distance it finds itself upon the completion of the wheel.

617. Likewise, in forming from column into line, should any rank be incomplete, it will step twenty-two or forty-four inches to the front before commencing the wheel.

618. In wheeling about in column of fours, should any rank be incomplete, the rank in its rear will follow it precisely at the distance it finds itself when the wheel is completed.

*To form double ranks.*

619. The company being in single rank, to form double ranks, the captain will command:

1. *Form double ranks.*    2. *Fours right (or left).*
3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

620. (*Pl. XXIX., fig. 2.*) At the command *march*, the ranks of four will wheel to the right (or left), the leading rank halting the instant the wheel shall be completed; the other ranks will continue the march, and halt successively, upon closing to thirty-two inches upon the rank preceding. The rearmost rank having closed to its distance, the captain will command:

1. *Fours left (or right).*    2. MARCH.    3. HALT.
4. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*    5. FRONT.

621. In forming from single rank to double rank, the second command of the captain will be, *Fours right, or left*, according as the front-rank men are on the right or left of their rear-rank men.

622. Should the company be marching in column of fours in single rank, to form double ranks, the captain will command:

1. *Form double ranks.*    2. MARCH.

623. At the second command, the leading rank of four will halt; the other ranks will continue the

march, each halting at thirty-two inches from the rank preceding; the rearmost rank having closed, the captain will form line, as before.

624. Should the column of fours be marching in quick time, and the captain desire to close to double-rank distance, without forming line, he will command :

1. *Double-rank distance.* 2. *Double time.* 3. MARCH.

625. At the third command, the leading rank of four will continue in quick time; the other ranks will take the double time, and resume the quick time upon closing to thirty-two inches.

626. If the column of fours be marching in double time, the command *double time* will be omitted; the leading rank, at the command *march*, will take the quick step, as will also the other ranks upon closing to thirty-two inches.

*Note.*—At guard mounting, for the purpose of marching in review, a guard may be divided into two equal, or nearly equal parts, called platoons, the first platoon always consisting of an even number of files.

To wheel the guard by platoon to the right, the adjutant will command :

1. *By platoon, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chiefs of platoon will place themselves two paces in front of the centre of their respective platoons.

At the second command, the platoons will wheel to the right on a fixed pivot, each being halted by its chief when at three paces from the perpendicular, and then dressed to the left; the right guide, at the command *halt*, will pass by the front of his platoon, and will be established by his chief at the point where

the left of the platoon will rest when the wheel shall be completed.

The chiefs, having commanded *front*, will place themselves in front of the centre of their respective platoons.

END OF THE SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

## TITLE FOURTH.

### INSTRUCTIONS FOR SKIRMISHERS.

#### *General Principles.*

627. THE movements of skirmishers should be subjected to such rules as will give to the commander the means of moving them in any direction with the greatest promptitude.

628. It is not expected that these movements should be executed with the same precision as in closed ranks, nor is it desirable, as such exactness would materially interfere with their prompt execution.

629. When skirmishers are thrown out to clear the way for, and to protect the advance of the main body, their movements should be so regulated as to keep it constantly covered.

630. Every company of skirmishers should have a small reserve, whose duty it shall be to fill vacant places, furnish the line with cartridges, and relieve the fatigued.

631. If the main body be at considerable distance, besides the company reserves, others will be required, composed of entire companies, which will be employed to sustain and reinforce such parts of the line as may be warmly engaged or attacked; and which will likewise serve as rallying-points, should the line be forced back.

632. The company reserve will be posted about one hundred and fifty paces from the line. The main reserves will be posted at about four hundred paces, on ground favorable to the formation of a second line, and so as to mutually sustain each other.

633. The officers in command of skirmishers will keep them concealed as much as possible from the view of the enemy, and protected from his fire.

634. The movements of skirmishers will be executed in quick or double time.

635. Skirmishers will be permitted to carry their pieces in the manner most convenient to them.

636. The movements will habitually be indicated by the sounds of the bugle.

637. The officers, and, if necessary, the non-commissioned officers, will repeat and cause the commands to be executed, as soon as they are given; but, to avoid mistakes, when signals are employed, they will wait until the last bugle-note is sounded before commencing the movement.

638. In the skirmish drill, the officers and non-commissioned officers will constantly aim to impress each man with the idea of his individuality, and the responsibility that rests upon him; they will see that the men economize their strength, preserve their presence of mind, husband their ammunition, and profit by all the advantages which the ground may offer for cover.

639. They will likewise cultivate among the men the feeling that they cannot be whipped, and that, when compelled to give ground, a new position will be rapidly gained from which the action will be renewed. Experience will soon teach skirmishers that the very ardor with which an enemy pursues a temporary advantage will surely secure his defeat, if boldly and unexpectedly confronted by the men whom he had supposed to be demoralized.

640. Skirmishers will habitually be deployed at five paces' interval; this may be diminished or extended according to the desired strength of the line.

641. The instruction for skirmishers will be divided into six articles, and subdivided as follows:

## ARTICLE I.

1. To deploy forward.
2. To deploy by the flank.
3. To extend intervals.
4. To close intervals.
5. To relieve skirmishers.

## ARTICLE II.

1. To advance in line.
2. To retreat in line.
3. To change direction.
4. To march by the flank.

## ARTICLE III.

1. To fire at a halt.
2. To fire marching.

## ARTICLE IV.

1. The rally.
2. The assembly.

## ARTICLE V.

1. To deploy a company as skirmishers from single rank.

## ARTICLE VI.

1. To deploy a battalion as skirmishers.

## ARTICLE FIRST.

*Deployments.*

642. A company may be deployed as skirmishers in two ways: forward and by the flank.

643. The deployment forward will be adopted when the company is behind the line on which it is to be established; it will be deployed by the flank when it finds itself already on that line.

644. When a company is to be deployed as skirmishers, the captain will designate one or more fours from its right or left, to act as a reserve, and will

cause it to step a few paces backward. The reserve will be commanded by the lieutenant of that half of the company to which it belongs; the guide on its flank of the company, and the sergeant file-closer in its rear, if there be one, will remain with it to act as guides. The nearest remaining sergeant will place himself in the front rank by the side of the outer file of the company.

645. The captain will next designate the centre four, the *left rear-rank man of which* will be regarded as the *centre skirmisher* of the company.

646. A company may be deployed on the right, left, or centre four. Wishing to deploy it on the left four, the captain will command :

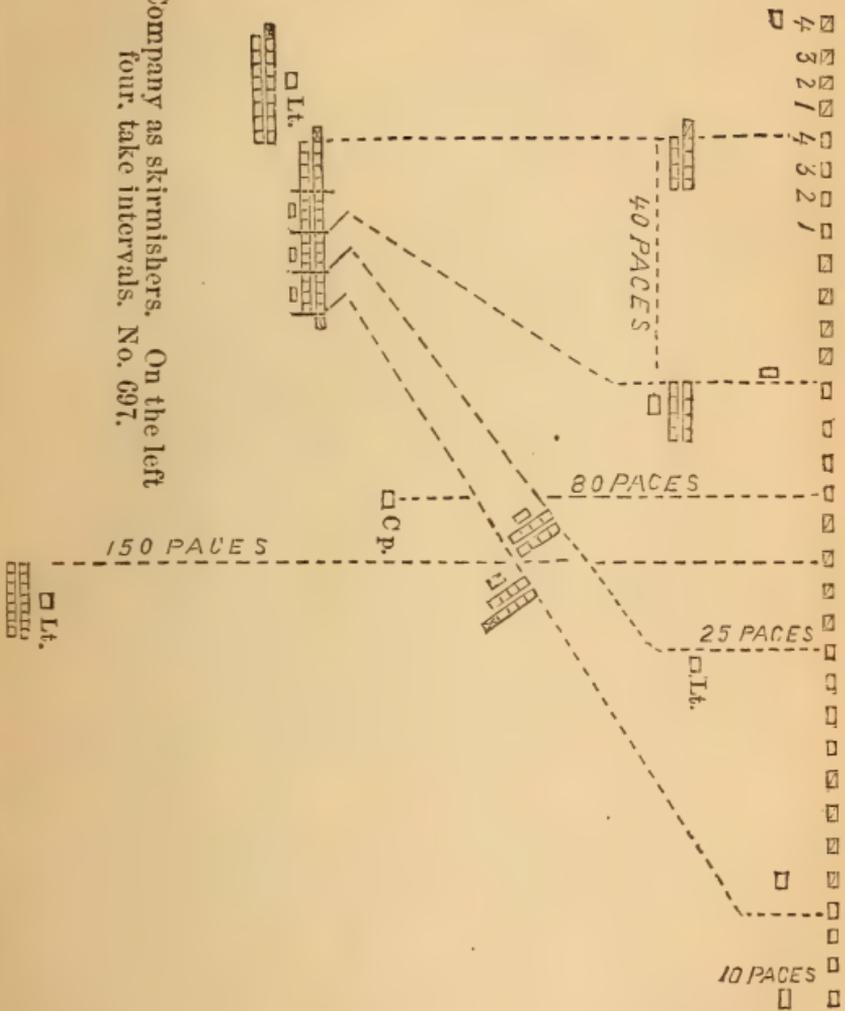
1. *Company as Skirmishers.* 2. *On the left four take intervals.* 3. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

647. (*Pl. XXX.*) At the command *march*, the left four, conducted by the sergeant on the left of the company, will move straight to the front, in quick time; the others will make a partial wheel to the right in double time, those near the right increasing the wheel considerably beyond forty-five degrees.

648. The second four from the left will march diagonally till it shall have gained the distance of forty paces to the right, when it will wheel to the left and march to the front, taking the quick step upon arriving abreast with the left four.

649. The other fours will gain successively forty paces from the one next on the left, each taking the quick step upon arriving in line. The file on the left of each four will be the guide; the right guide of the company will march on the right of the right four.

650. The captain will follow the movement so as to be about eighty paces in rear of the centre of the line when formed; the lieutenant will drop back to twenty-five paces, opposite the centre of his half of



Company as skirmishers. On the left four, take intervals. No. 697.



the company, and the sergeant file-closers, to ten paces in rear of their respective fours.

651. Should the command be *double time—march*, the left four will move in double time; the other fours will move at the same gait, and will halt upon arriving in line.

652. When the left four shall arrive on the designated line, the captain will command:

1. *Skirmishers*. 2. HALT.

653. At the second command, all the fours that are in line will halt, and each will deploy in double time upon the left front-rank man, who will stand fast; the other front-rank men will move to his right, and the rear-rank men to his left, and will place themselves in their order at five paces apart.

654. The other fours, upon arriving in line, will halt, and deploy as just explained.

655. The right and left guides, as soon as the fours to which they belong have deployed, will fall back ten paces and place themselves in rear of the right and left skirmishers of the company.

656. The file-closers during the movement will see that each four, after gaining its distance, marches to the front, and that the deployments are promptly made.

657. In all deployments as skirmishers, whether forward or by the flank, the rear-rank men will be placed in their order on the left of the front-rank men.

658. The reserve will be conducted by the lieutenant commanding to a point about one hundred and fifty paces in rear of the centre of the line, and will afterward conform to all its movements.

659. Should the captain command *On the right four take intervals*, that four will move to the front, and the others will make a partial wheel to the left; if on the *centre four*, that four will move to the front; the

fours to the right will wheel to the right, and those to the left will wheel to the left. The movement will be completed as in deploying on the left four.

660. In all deployments forward, should the four on which the deployment is made consist of two files, the four next on its right (or left) will gain the distance of thirty paces to the right (or left), instead of forty. The distance of forty paces is always measured from the left file of one four to the left file of the adjoining four.

*To deploy by the flank.*

661. To deploy a company by the right flank, the captain will command :

1. *Company as skirmishers.* 2. *By the right flank take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

662. At the second command, the company will face to the right.

663. At the third command, number one of the front rank of the right or leading four will step off, and, conducted by the right guide on his left, will march in the prolongation of the former front of the company.

664. The other men of this four, front and rear rank, will follow successively at the distance of five paces, number one rear rank stepping off as soon as number four of the front rank shall have advanced five paces beyond him ; the left rear-rank man having advanced five paces, number one front rank of the second four will step off, and the movement will continue till the left rear-rank man of the rear four shall have his distance, when the captain will command :

1. *Skirmishers.* 2. HALT.

665. At the second command, all the men will halt and face to the front, and the officers and sergeants will take their posts as in the deployment forward.





666. The reserve, at the commencement of the movement, will be conducted to its place in rear of the centre of the line.

667. To deploy by the left flank, the captain will command :

1. *Company as skirmishers.* 2. *By the left flank take intervals.* 3. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

668. The deployment will be executed the same as by the right flank, except that the movement in each four will commence with number four of the rear rank.

669. To deploy by both flanks, the captain will command :

1. *Company as skirmishers.* 2. *By the right and left flanks take intervals.* 3. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

670. (*Pl. XXXI.*) At the second command, the centre four and those to the right will face to the right, the other fours will face to the left. The men who have faced to the right will be designated *right skirmishers*, those who have faced to the left, *left skirmishers*.

671. At the third command, the right and left fours will deploy respectively as explained for the deployment by the right and left flanks.

672. The captain will superintend the deployment of the right fours, and when the centre skirmisher shall have his distance, he will command: *Right skirmishers*—HALT, at which the right skirmishers will halt, and face to the front.

673. The lieutenant remaining with the company will superintend the deployment of the left fours, and when his rear skirmisher shall have advanced five paces, he will command: *Left skirmishers*—HALT, at which the left skirmishers will halt and face to the front.

674. In the deployment by the left flank, should the left four consist of two files, the movement will commence with number two of the rear rank, instead of number four.

*To extend or close intervals.*

675. Intervals will be extended or closed according as it may be necessary to occupy more or less ground with the line of skirmishers.

*To extend intervals.*

676. The skirmishers being at a halt, when the captain shall wish to extend intervals by the left flank, he will command:

1. *By the left flank* (to so many) *paces extend intervals.* 2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

677. At the command *march*, the left skirmisher, conducted by the left guide, will march by the left flank; the other skirmishers will successively face to the left, and follow the one next on their left, at the interval specified in the command. The captain will command: 1. *Skirmishers.* 2. HALT—as soon as the right skirmisher shall have his interval, at which command the skirmishers will halt and face to the front.

678. Intervals will be extended by the right flank, according to the same principles.

679. If the line of skirmishers be marching to the front, and the captain shall desire to extend intervals to the right, he will command:

1. *On the left skirmisher* (to so many) *paces extend intervals.* 2. MARCH.

680. At the second command, the left skirmisher will march to the front in quick time; the other skirmishers will oblique to the right at double time, each resuming the direct march, and taking the quick step

upon gaining his interval from the skirmisher on his left.

681. Intervals will be extended to the left by similar commands and means; they may likewise be extended on the centre skirmisher, those to the right obliquing to the right, those to the left obliquing to the left.

682. If, in extending intervals, it be intended that one company should occupy a line which had been previously occupied by two, the men of the company which is to retire will fall successively to the rear as they are relieved by the extension of the intervals.

*To close intervals.*

683. The skirmishers being at a halt, to close intervals by the left flank, the captain will command :

1. *By the left flank* (to so many) *paces close intervals.*
2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

684. At the command *march*, the left skirmisher will stand fast, and the other skirmishers will march by the left flank; the second skirmisher, as soon as he shall have closed his interval to the given number of paces, will halt and face to the front, and so on successively with the other skirmishers.

685. Intervals will be closed by the right flank, according to the same principles.

686. If the line be marching, to close intervals on the left skirmisher, the captain will command :

1. *On the left skirmisher* (to so many) *paces close intervals.*
2. MARCH.

687. At the command *march*, the left skirmisher will advance in quick time; the others will oblique to the left at double time, each resuming the direct march, and taking the quick step upon attaining his interval.

688. Intervals will be closed on the right skirmisher

in a similar manner; likewise on the centre skirmisher, in which case those to his right will oblique to the left, those to the left will oblique to the right.

689. When intervals are to be closed up, in order to reinforce a line of skirmishers, so as to cause two companies to occupy the ground which had been previously occupied by one, the new company will deploy so as to finish its movement about twenty paces in rear of the line it is to occupy, and the men will successively move upon that line as they shall be unmasked by the men of the old company.

*To relieve a company deployed as skirmishers.*

690. When a company of skirmishers is to be relieved, the captain will be advised of the intention, which he will immediately communicate to the line.

691. The new company will execute its deployment forward, so as to finish the movement about twenty paces in rear of the line.

692. Arrived at this distance, the men of the new company, by command of their captain, will advance rapidly to, or a few paces beyond, the old line, and halt; the new line being established, the old company will retire and assemble as soon as beyond the reach of the enemy's fire.

693. If the skirmishers to be relieved are marching in retreat, the company which is to relieve them will deploy by the flank; the old company, after having passed the new line, will assemble as will hereafter be explained.

ARTICLE SECOND.

*To advance in line and retreat in line.*

694. In all movements of the skirmish line, whether forward, in retreat, or by the flank, at the preparatory command, the right and left sergeants, and the one nearest the centre of the company, will advance to the line and place themselves by the side of the right,

left, and centre skirmishers, for the purpose of conducting them, and forming the basis of alignment.

695. The captain, wishing the line of skirmishers to advance, will command :

1. *Skirmishers.* 2. *Forward.* 3. *Guide centre.*
4. MARCH.

696. At the fourth command the line will step off, taking the quick toward the centre, and preserving intervals from the centre skirmisher.

697. The captain and lieutenant will correct any errors that may occur, and will see that the skirmishers maintain their intervals, and preserve a general alignment. The guides on the right and left will see that the skirmishers between them and the guide do not advance beyond the line, or fall too far to the rear.

698. When the captain shall wish to halt the skirmishers, he will command :

1. *Skirmishers.* 2. HALT.

699. At the second command, the line will halt; the skirmishers will take advantage of any cover that may present itself, and the guides will return to their places in rear of the line.

700. To march the skirmishers in retreat, the captain will command :

1. *Skirmishers.* 2. *In retreat.* 3. *Guide centre.*
4. MARCH.

701. At the fourth command, the skirmishers will face about individually and march to the rear, with the guide toward the centre.

702. The line marching in retreat will be halted by the same commands as when marching in advance; at the command halt, the skirmishers will halt and face to the front

703. While the guide, in marching in advance or re-

treat, shall habitually be centre, the captain, for good reasons, may announce it either on the right or left.

*To change direction.*

704. Wishing to change direction, the captain will first order the guide to the flank opposite the desired change, and then command:

1. *Skirmishers right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

705. At the command *march*, the guide on the marching flank will describe the arc of a circle to the right (or left), taking the full step of twenty-eight or thirty-three inches; the guide at the pivot will turn in his place; the centre guide will describe the arc of a circle, and will so regulate his march as to remain slightly in rear of the other two.

706. The skirmishers will regulate the length of their steps by their distance from the marching flank; and they will frequently cast their eyes toward the marching flank in order to preserve their direction and intervals.

707. When the line has wheeled sufficiently, the captain will command:

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide centre.*

*To march by the flank.*

708. The captain, wishing the skirmishers to march by the right flank, will command:

1. *Skirmishers by the right flank.*
2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

709. At the command *march*, the skirmishers will face to the right and move off; the right guide will place himself by the side of the leading skirmisher, to conduct him, and will march on the point indicated; each skirmisher will take care to follow exactly in the direction of the one immediately preceding him, and to preserve his distance.

710. The line will be moved by the left flank, according to the same principles, substituting in the command, *left* for *right*.

711. The line marching by the flank, will change direction by the commands:

1. *Skirmishers right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH.

712. At the second command, the guide and leading skirmisher will face to the right (or left) and move in the new direction; the other skirmishers will turn on the same ground, and follow in their rear.

713. Marching by the flank, to march in line, the captain will command:

1. *Skirmishers by the right* (or *left*) *flank*. 2. MARCH.  
3. *Guide centre*.

714. At the second command, the skirmishers will face individually to the right (or left), and take the guide toward the centre.

715. When the skirmishers marching by the flank are halted, they will face immediately to the front.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

##### *The firings.*

716. The fire of skirmishers can be subjected to no fixed rules, but will vary with circumstances.

##### *To fire at a halt.*

717. To cause this fire to be executed, the captain will command:

##### *Commence—FIRING.*

718. At this command, briskly repeated by the file-closers, the odd numbers of the front and rear rank will aim and fire; the even numbers will aim and fire as soon as the odd numbers have half completed the loading, after which each skirmisher will fire without regard to others.

719. The following instructions will be observed :

720. If the enemy be advancing, the rapidity of fire will increase as he approaches, but no skirmisher will ever fire till he has taken deliberate aim, and, if possible, at a rest.

721. The efficacy of fire may be increased by concentrating that of several skirmishers upon knots or groups of the enemy.

722. If the enemy be halted at five or six hundred yards' distance, and well covered, few shots will be fired, except to resist any change of position on his part. The best marksmen should, however, be permitted to practise upon the enemy, in order to inspire him with a fear of their fire.

*To fire advancing.*

723. Skirmishers will in general advance to the attack firing, for the reason that their fire will greatly derange that of the enemy, while it will but slightly impede their advance.

724. To fire advancing, the captain will command :

*Commence—FIRING.*

725. At this command, the odd numbers will halt, kneel, and fire; they will then rise, and load while marching; as soon as they have half completed loading, the even numbers will halt, kneel, and fire; after which, each skirmisher will fire independently, observing to kneel each time, for the double purpose of presenting less surface to the enemy, and securing the rest in aiming afforded by the knee.

726. The officers and file-closers will give their constant attention to the general preservation of the alignment; will keep the men at their proper intervals, and see that after each fire they advance in the same gait as when the firing commenced, and that the sights are elevated according to the distance. Kneeling in advancing may be omitted when the ground is unfavorable for it.

*Firing in retreat.*

727. Whenever a company of skirmishers, through superiority of numbers of the enemy, is compelled to yield a position, the captain will select a second, four or five hundred yards in rear, which he will designate to the men and file-closers. He will then command :

*In retreat, double time—MARCH.*

728. At the second command, the skirmishers will cease firing, and retreat; arrived in the new position, the captain and file-closers will command: HALT; at which, the skirmishers will halt, face the enemy, and resume the fire.

729. The length of time a skirmish line should hold a position will depend upon the nature of the ground; if such that the skirmishers can immediately disappear, as in the edge of a wood, or behind the crest of a ridge, they should hold it to the last instant. If the ground be level and open in rear, the line should be abandoned before the enemy arrives within too deadly range.

*To fire marching by the flank.*

730. Should a line of skirmishers, marching by the flank, be threatened by the enemy, the captain will cause it to halt and commence firing. The flank movement will be resumed as soon as the enemy is repulsed.

731. A skirmish line should always be on the alert, and the men should willingly forego all considerations of personal safety when the efficacy of their fire can be increased.

732. The officers will observe that a too scrupulous regard for cover will make the men timid; they should therefore set the example of fearless exposure whenever an advantage can be gained.

733. They will likewise cheer and encourage the men, and impress them at all times with an idea of superiority over the enemy.

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

*The rally.*

734. A company deployed as skirmishers will be rallied when threatened by bodies of the enemy's cavalry; the rallies are made at a run, and with bayonets fixed; when ordered to rally, the skirmishers fix bayonets without command.

735. Should small parties of the enemy present themselves, the captain will command:

1. *Rally by fours.* 2. MARCH.

736. (*Pl. XXXII., fig. 1.*) At the second command, the men of each four will move at a run, and place themselves in a circle around the skirmishers on which the deployment was made. The captain and file-closers will place themselves within the nearest fours.

737. The men will open fire, and continue it till the enemy is close upon them, when they will charge bayonets, and remain firm. During the approach of the enemy, the men in rear will face about, so that all the muskets may be brought to bear upon him.

738. The reserve, if threatened, will form circle around its chief, and open fire as explained for the fours.

739. The danger past, the captain will command:

1. *Deploy as skirmishers.* 2. MARCH.

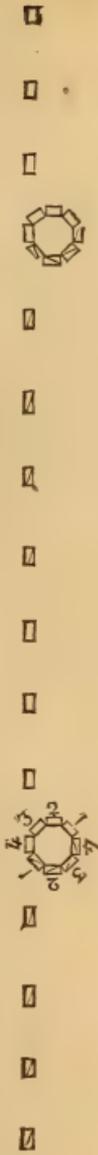
740. At the second command, the skirmishers will unfix bayonets, and, moving at a run, will resume their proper places.

741. Should fours be too weak to resist the enemy, the captain will command:

1. *Rally on the centre skirmisher.* 2. MARCH.

742. (*Pl. XXXII., fig. 2.*) At the second command, all the skirmishers will rally in two ranks on the centre skirmisher, those to his right forming in a semi-circle to his right and rear; the front-rank men being

*Fig. 1*



Rally by fours. No. 736.

*Fig. 2*



Rally on the centre skirmisher. No. 742.



in front, those to his left will complete the circle by forming a semicircle to his left and rear. The centre skirmisher, and those first approaching him, will elevate their muskets, the better to indicate the point on which the rally is to be made.

743. The captain and file-closers will place themselves within the circle.

744. The reserve, should there be strong ground at hand, will hasten to it and take measures to defend itself; otherwise, it will advance to the line and form part of the circle.

745. The captain will direct the fire in the most efficacious manner, bringing as many muskets to bear as possible. Should the enemy approach too close, he will charge bayonets, and again resume the fire as soon as the charge is repulsed.

Wishing to deploy, he will command:

1. *Deploy as skirmishers.* 2. MARCH.

746. The men will unfix bayonets and resume their proper places at a run. The reserve will be conducted by its chief to its position in rear of the centre of the line.

### *The Assembly.*

747. The assembly will be used whenever a company is to be relieved, or is to be withdrawn as a line of skirmishers; it may be executed either from a halt, advancing, or in retreat, and on the right, left, or centre skirmisher.

748. Being at a halt, to assemble on the right skirmisher, the captain will command:

1. *Assemble on the right skirmisher.* 2. MARCH.

749. At the first command, all the skirmishers, excepting the right one, will face to the right.

750. At the second command, the right skirmisher will stand fast; the others will close upon him in quick time, and will form on his left in their order, in

two ranks, the front-rank men in front; the reserve will at the same time rejoin the company, and the officers and sergeants will take their posts as before deployment.

751. The assembly on the centre or left skirmisher will be similarly executed.

752. Should the line be advancing, the captain will give the same commands as at a halt; the skirmisher designated will march in quick time; the others will oblique toward him in double time, and will form as before, in two ranks, the front-rank men in front.

753. If marching in retreat, the company will assemble as when marching in advance, except that rear-rank men will form in front; the assembly completed, the company will be halted and faced about.

754. If marching in advance, the reserve will rejoin the company in double time; if in retreat, it will rejoin upon the approach of the company.

#### ARTICLE FIFTH.

*To deploy a company as skirmishers from single rank.*

*To deploy forward.*

755. The company being in single rank, to deploy it forward as skirmishers, the captain will first detach the reserve, and then command:

1. *Company as skirmishers.* 2. *On the right (or left) file take intervals.* 3. **MARCH** (or *double time—MARCH*).

756. At the command *march*, the file designated will advance in quick time, conducted by the right (or left) guide; the other files will oblique in double time, moving nearly by the left or right flank, till they gain their intervals, when they will march to the front, taking the quick step upon arriving in line.

757. If the command be double time, the directing file will move in that time till the command *halt*; the others will continue in it till they arrive in line.

758. The captain will command: 1. *Skirmishers*. 2. HALT—when the directing file arrives on the ground he may wish to occupy. The files which have not gained their intervals will continue in double time till they arrive upon the line, when they will halt.

759. The company may likewise be deployed on the centre file, substituting in the command *centre*, for *right* or *left*. The centre file will be conducted by the centre guide; the files to his right will oblique to the right, those to his left will oblique to the left.

760. The company being deployed, the position of the officers, sergeants, and the reserve, will be the same as in deploying from double ranks.

*To deploy by the flank.*

761. The company being in single rank, to deploy by the right flank, the captain will command:

1. *Company as skirmishers*. 2. *By the right flank take intervals*. 3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

762. At the second command, the company will face to the right.

763. At the third command, the right or leading file will step off in the gait indicated, and conducted by the right guide, will march in the prolongation of the former front of the company; the other files will follow successively, each at the distance of five paces from the file preceding it.

764. The last file having its distance, the captain will command: 1. *Skirmishers*. 2. HALT; at which all the skirmishers will halt, and face to the front; the officers and sergeants will take their posts as previously explained. The reserve will be conducted to its place at the commencement of the movement.

765. The deployment of the left flank will be similarly executed.

766. To deploy by the right and left flanks, the captain will command:

1. *Company as skirmishers.* 2. *By the right and left flanks take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

767. At the second command, the centre file, previously designated, will stand fast; the files to its right will face to the right, those to its left will face to the left.

768. At the third command, the files to the right will deploy by the right flank, those to the left by the left flank. The captain will give the command: 1. *Right skirmishers.* 2. HALT—when the file next to the centre file shall have advanced five paces, the lieutenant will command: 1. *Left skirmishers.* 2. HALT—when his rear skirmisher shall have advanced five paces.

769. At the command HALT, the skirmishers will halt and face to the front; and the officers and sergeants will drop back to their posts.

770. The company having been deployed as skirmishers from single rank, will be manœuvred by the same commands and means as when deployed from double rank, except that, in rallying by fours, each four will rally on number four, and that in assembling, the company will form in single instead of double rank.

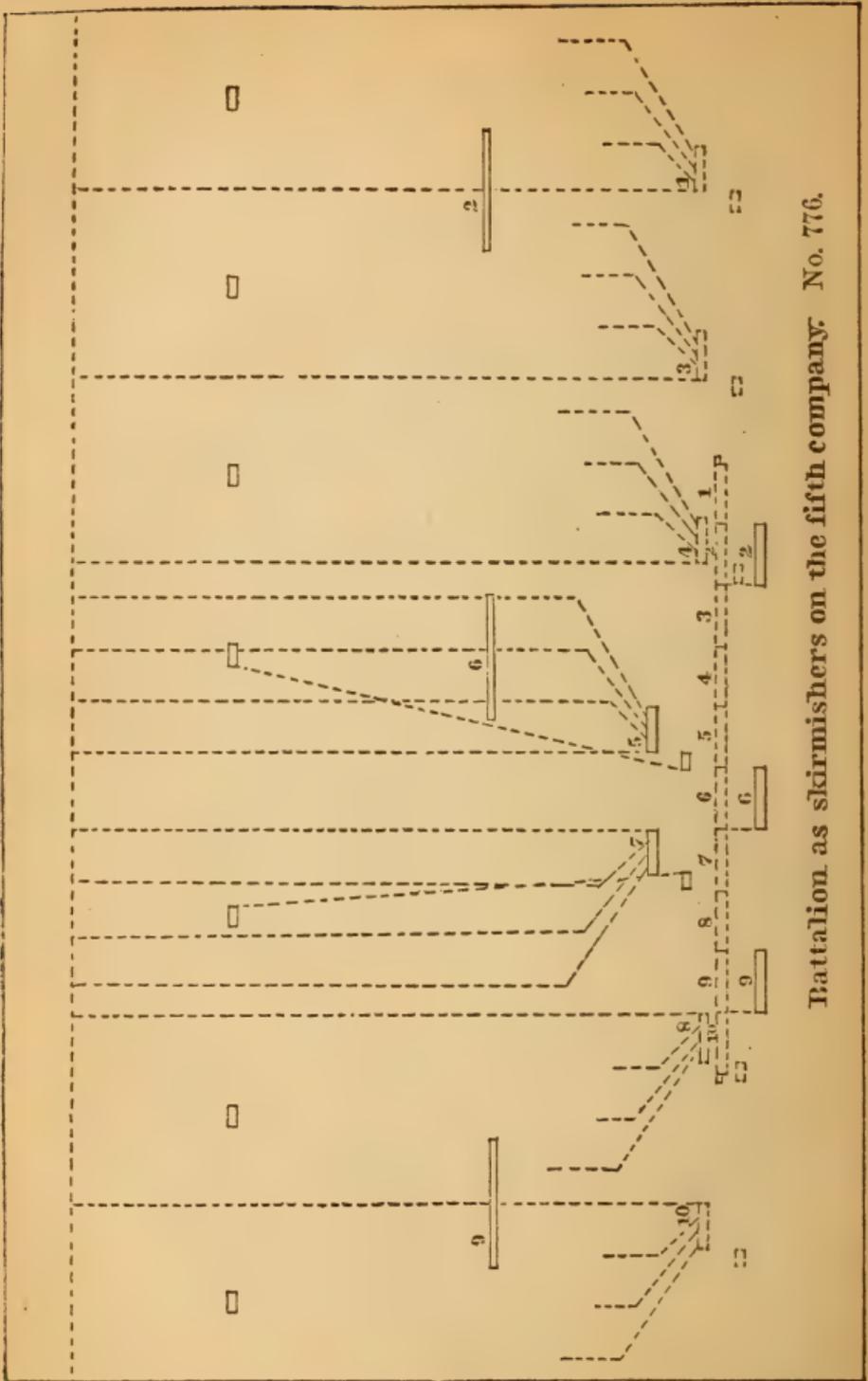
#### ARTICLE SIXTH.

##### *To deploy a battalion as skirmishers.*

771. A battalion will always be deployed from line of battle. The companies will be designated from right to left, first company, second company, and so on. The colonel will indicate the size of the company reserves, and will also designate the companies to constitute the battalion reserve.

772. The duty of the company reserves being simply to fill vacant places, relieve the fatigued, and to supply the line with ammunition, they should be as





Battalion as skirmishers on the fifth company. No. 776.

small as possible consistent with the efficient performance of these duties.

773. The battalion reserve will be commanded by the lieutenant-colonel, and will consist of two or three companies; one to be taken from each wing, the third from near the centre. The companies designated will step a few paces backward.

774. The battalion may be deployed either forward or by the flank.

*To deploy forward.*

775. The colonel, wishing to deploy the battalion forward, will cause the company on which the deployment is to be made, and the one next on its left, to march ten paces to the front; he will then command:

1. *Battalion as skirmishers.* 2. *On (such) company take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

776. (*Pl. XXXIII.*) At the second command, the captain of the designated company will give the preparatory commands for deploying as skirmishers on the left four; the captain of the company next on the left will give the same commands for deploying on the right four; the captains of the companies to the right of the two mentioned, will command, *Fours right*: those to the left, *Fours left*.

777. At the command *march*, the company designated will deploy forward on its left four, and the one on its left on its right four, which will gain the distance of forty paces to the left.

778. The companies to the right will move by the right flank, and when the left (now the rear) four arrives opposite its interval in the skirmish line, the captain will form line to the left, and give the commands for deploying on the left four; the left companies will move by the left flank, and when the right four of each is opposite its interval the company will

form line to the right, and be deployed on the right right four.

779. The company reserves will step backward at the preparatory commands of the captains.

780. The colonel will give the commands: 1. *Skirmishers*. 2. HALT, when the left four of the designated company arrives on the line which he may wish to occupy. This command will be repeated by those captains whose fours have arrived on the line; the other captains will command: 1. *Skirmishers*. 2. HALT, when the four on which the deployment is made arrives in line.

781. The companies which deploy to the right will be designated the right wing, those to the left the left wing.

782. The senior major will superintend the deployment of his wing. The other wing will be superintended by the junior major; the adjutant, mounted, will remain with the colonel, who will go wherever his presence may be necessary.

*To deploy by the flank.*

783. To deploy by the flank, the colonel will first cause the company on which the deployment is to be made, and the one next on its left, to march ten paces to the front, and then command:

1. *Battalion as skirmishers*. 2. *By the right and left flanks take intervals*. 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

784. At the second command, the captain of the designated company will give the preparatory commands for deploying by the right flank; the captain of the company next on his left will give the same commands for deploying by the left flank.

785. The captains of the right companies will command, *Fours right*; those of the left, *Fours left*.

786. At the command *march*, the two advance com-

panies will deploy respectively by the right and left flanks.

787. The right companies will move by the right flank, and as the left or rear file of each arrives opposite its interval, the captain will form line to the left, move up to the skirmish line, and deploy by the right flank; the left companies will move similarly to the left, and deploy by the left flank.

788. The entire battalion may be deployed by the right flank, by the commands:

1. *Battalion as skirmishers.*
2. *By the right flank take intervals.*
3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

789. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right.

790. At the third command, number one of the front rank of the leading four of the right company will step off, and will be followed successively by all the files of the battalion; when the rear file of the left company is about to step off the colonel will command: 1. *Skirmishers.* 2. HALT, at which command the skirmishers will halt and face to the front.

791. The deployment by the left flank will be similarly executed, commencing with number four rear rank.

792. The battalion being deployed, the colonel will cause the line to advance, retreat, change direction, move by the right or left flank, rally by fours, or by company, and execute the fires by the same commands and means as prescribed for a company of skirmishers.

793. To execute a central change of direction to the left, the colonel will command:

1. *Right wing, left wheel.*
2. *Left wing, in retreat, left wheel.*
3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

794. At the third command, the left wing will face about, and both wings will then wheel to the left on the left skirmisher of the right wing as a pivot.

795. The change being executed, the colonel will command: 1. *Skirmishers*—2. HALT. At which both wings will halt, and the left wing face to the front.

796. Change of direction to the right will be similarly executed, on the right skirmisher of the left wing.

797. Whenever a wing outflanks or overlaps the enemy, the field officer in command will at once cause it to wheel forward, so as to envelop him with a front and flank fire.

798. To extend intervals, the colonel will command:

1. *On left skirmisher, (such) company (to so many) paces extend intervals.*
2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

799. At the first command, the captain of the designated company, and the one on its left, will give respectively the preparatory commands for extending intervals by the right and left flanks. The captains of the companies to the right will command: *Skirmishers by the right flank*; those to the left: *Skirmishers by the left flank*.

800. At the command *march*, the two companies specified will extend intervals respectively by the right and left flanks.

801. The right companies will march by the right flank; each captain commanding: 1. *To (so many) paces extend intervals.* 2. MARCH, as soon as the company next on his left shall have extended its intervals. At the second command, the leading skirmisher will continue the march; the others will halt and successively resume the march when at the specified distance.

802. The left companies will similarly extend by the left flank.

803. To close intervals, the colonel will command:

1. *On left skirmisher (such) company (to so many)*

*paces close intervals.* 2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

804. At the first command, the captain of the designated company, and the one on its left, will give respectively the preparatory commands for closing intervals by the left and right flanks.

805. The captains of the right companies will command: *Skirmishers by the left flank*; those of the left: *Skirmishers by the right flank*.

806. At the command *march*, the two companies specified will close intervals by the left and right flanks.

807. The right companies will move by the left flank, each captain commanding: 1. *To* (so many) *paces close intervals.* 2. MARCH, when the company next to the left shall have completed its movement.

808. The intervals will be closed on the left, now the leading skirmisher, who at the command *march*, will halt and face to the front.

809. The left companies will move by the right flank, and close by the same means.

#### *Movements of the reserve.*

810. As soon as the deployment commences, the captains of reserve companies will form them in single rank; the lieutenant-colonel will then cause them to take position on strong ground, about three or four hundred yards in rear of the skirmish line, as follows: the right company, opposite the left of the right company of skirmishers; the left company opposite the right of the left company of skirmishers; the centre company opposite the centre of the battalion.

811. When there are but two reserve companies, they will be posted opposite the centre of the right and left wings.

812. The lieutenant-colonel will remain near the centre reserve company. Should the other companies be beyond the reach of his voice, he will cause file-

closers to be posted between them for the purpose of passing the commands.

813. The reserve will conform to the movements of the battalion, and will advance, retreat, and move by the right or left flanks, by the commands:

*Reserve forward; in retreat; by the right (or left) flank, MARCH (or double time—MARCH).*

814. The captains of reserve companies will give the necessary preparatory commands.

815. The distance of the reserve from the line will vary with the nature of the ground, attention being paid to the selection of a strong natural position.

816. Should the skirmish line be attacked or threatened by superior numbers, and its position be deemed superior to that held by the reserve, the colonel will send orders to the lieutenant-colonel to reinforce the line.

817. The lieutenant-colonel will immediately give the commands: 1. *Reserve forward.* 2. MARCH, and then the commands:

1. *Reserve as skirmishers.* 2. *On the centre files take intervals.* 3. MARCH.

818. At this command, repeated by the captains, each reserve company will deploy on its centre file.

819. The companies having finished their deployment, the lieutenant-colonel will command: 1. *Double time.* 2. MARCH, and will conduct his reserve forward to the skirmish line; when without command, all the men will halt and join in the action.

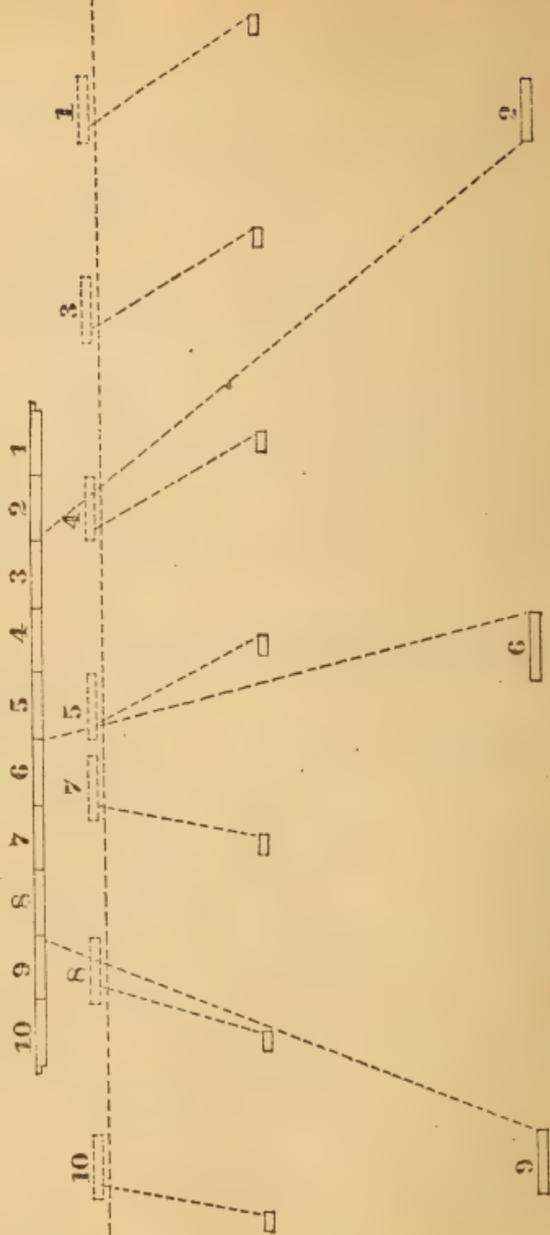
820. The reserve, having united with the skirmish line, will conform to all its movements.

821. To withdraw the reserve, the lieutenant-colonel will command:

1. *Reserve in retreat.* 2. MARCH.

822. At the second command, all the reserve skirmishers will march in retreat.





Assembly of the battalion. No. 880.

823. The reserve companies having retired a sufficient distance, the lieutenant-colonel will command: *Assemble on the centre files.* 2. MARCH, and will afterward post them as before the advance.

824. Should the skirmish line be forced back, the colonel will cause the firing to cease, and then command:

1. *Rally on the reserve.* 2. *Double time*—MARCH.

825. At the first command, the lieutenant-colonel will command:

1. *Reserve as skirmishers.* 2. *By the right and left flanks take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

826. At the command *march*, the reserve companies will each deploy by the right and left flanks, on its centre file; the skirmish companies with their reserves will at the same time march in retreat, and upon arriving on the reserve skirmish line, will halt and face to the front, when all will commence firing.

827. The reserve will be withdrawn as in the previous instance.

828. Extra ammunition for the skirmish line will be kept with the reserve companies.

*To assemble the battalion.*

829. When the colonel shall wish to assemble the battalion, he will command:

1. *Assemble on left skirmisher of (such) company.*  
2. MARCH.

830. (*Pl. XXXIV.*) At this command, the captain of the designated company and those to its right, will each cause his company to assemble on its left skirmisher. The captains to the left will cause their companies to assemble on the right skirmisher.

831. Each captain, as soon as his company shall have assembled, will march it toward the one designated.

832. The reserve companies, after being formed in two ranks by their captains, will move forward, and all the companies will resume their position in line as before the deployment.

833. Should the line be in retreat, each company will assemble on its skirmisher nearest the designated company, and then oblique toward that company. The battalion will be halted and formed in line when it arrives on the ground occupied by the reserve companies, which will halt at the commencement of the assembly.

*To deploy the battalion as skirmishers from single rank.*

834. The battalion, being in single rank, will be deployed, both forward and by the flank, by the same commands as when in double ranks. If the deployment is forward, the captains will command, *on such file take intervals*, instead of *on such four*.

The assembly will be made in single rank.

END OF INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS.

## TITLE FIFTH.

### SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

#### *Formation of the Battalion.*

835. EVERY colonel will labor to habituate his battalion to form line of battle, by night as well as by day, with the greatest possible promptitude.

836. The color company will generally be designated as the directing company. That, as soon as formed, will be placed on the direction the colonel may have determined for the line of battle. The other companies will form on it, to the right and left, on the principles of successive formations, which will be herein prescribed.

837. For the purpose of indicating the direction of lines of battle, every battalion will be provided with four markers, who will habitually be posted in the line of file-closers, one near each flank of the right and left companies when in line, and the leading and rear subdivisions when in column.

838. The color-bearer may have received the color from the hands of the colonel; but if there be daylight and time, the color may be produced with due solemnity.

#### *Composition and march of the color-escort.*

839. When the battalion turns out under arms, and the color is wanted, a company, other than that of the color, will be put in march to receive and escort it.

840. The march will be in the following order: band without music, escort in column by platoons

with arms on the right shoulder, the color-bearer between the platoons.

841. Arrived in front of the tent or quarters of the colonel, the escort will form line, the band on the right, and arms will be brought to the carry.

842. The moment the escort is in line, the color-bearer, preceded by the first lieutenant, and followed by a sergeant of the escort, will go to receive the color.

843. When the color-bearer shall come out, followed by the lieutenant and sergeant, he will halt before the entrance; the escort will present arms, and the field music will sound *to the color*.

844. After some twenty seconds, the captain will cause the sound to cease, arms to be carried, and then break into column by platoon; the color-bearer will place himself between the platoons, and the lieutenant and sergeant will return to their posts.

845. The escort will march back to the battalion to the sound of music, in quick time, and in the same order as above, the guide to the right. The march will be so conducted that when the escort arrives at one hundred and fifty paces in front of the right of the battalion, the direction of the march shall be parallel to its front; when the color arrives nearly opposite its place in line, the column will change direction to the left, and the right guide will direct himself on the centre of the battalion.

#### *Honors paid to the color.*

846. Arrived at thirty paces from the battalion, the escort will halt, and the music cease; the colonel will place himself six paces before the centre of the battalion, the color-bearer will approach the colonel, by the front, in quick time, and when at the distance of ten paces will halt; the colonel will cause arms to be presented, and *to the color* to be sounded, which being executed, the color-bearer will take his place in color-

guard, and the battalion will, by command, carry arms.

847. The escort and band will return, in quick time, to their places in line of battle, passing by the rear of the battalion.

848. The color will be escorted back to the colonel's quarters by the color-guard.

*General Rules and Division of the School of the Battalion.*

849. This school has for its object the instruction of battalions singly, and thus prepare them for manœuvres in line.

850. The harmony so indispensable in the movements of many battalions, can only be attained by the use of the same commands, the same principles, and the same means of execution. Hence, all colonels and actual commanders of battalions will conform themselves, without addition or curtailment, to what will herein be prescribed.

851. The School of the Battalion will be divided into six parts.

852. The first will embrace :

1. Opening and closing ranks.
2. Manual of arms.
3. Firings.
4. March in line of battle.
5. Oblique march in line of battle.°
6. To halt the battalion and to align it.
7. Change of direction, marching in line.
8. Passage of obstacles.

853. The second will embrace :

1. The march by the flank.
2. To break into column of fours from one flank to march toward the other.
3. Column of fours to the right or left into line.
4. Principles of successive formations.
5. Column of fours front into line.

854. The third will embrace :

1. To break to the right or left into column.
2. To break to the rear into column.
3. To break from the right to march to the left.
4. To march in column at full distance.
5. The route step.
6. Change of direction in column at full distance.
7. To halt the column.
8. Column at full distance to the right or left into line.
9. Column at full distance front into line of battle.
10. Formation of line of battle by two movements.

855. The fourth will embrace :

1. Ployment of the battalion into close column or at full or half distance.
2. Column of fours to or on the right into close column.
3. To march in column at half distance or in mass.
4. Change of direction in column at half distance.
5. Change of directions of column in mass.
6. Deployment of column in mass.
7. Ployment of the battalion into double column.
8. Deployment of the double column to the front.
9. Deployment of the double column to the right or left.

856. The fifth will embrace :

1. Closing distances.
2. Taking distances.
3. To form line from column at half distance.
4. To form divisions.
5. To break from column by division into column by company.
6. Passages of defiles in retreat.
7. Change of front.

8. To advance and retire by the flank of subdivisions; to form line advancing by the flank of subdivisions; to march by the flank of subdivisions from column of fours, and to resume the march in column of fours.
  9. Formation of squares.
  10. The rally.
857. The sixth will embrace :
1. The battalion being in line of battle in double ranks, to form single rank.
  2. The battalion being in column in double ranks, to form single rank.
  3. The column of fours in double ranks, front into line in single rank.
  4. Movements of the battalion in single rank.
  5. The battalion being in line of battle in single rank, to form double ranks.
  6. The battalion being in column in single rank, to form double ranks.

## PART FIRST.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

#### *To open and close ranks.*

858. The colonel wishing ranks to be opened, will command :

#### 1. *Prepare to open ranks.*

859. At this command, the lieutenant-colonel and adjutant will place themselves to the right of the battalion, the first, four, and the second, six paces in rear of the front rank.

860. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command :

#### 2. *Rear open order.*    3. MARCH.

861. At the second command, the first sergeants, and sergeant on the left of the battalion, will place themselves four paces in rear of the front rank, opposite their places in line of battle, in order to mark the new alignment of the rear rank; they will be aligned by the lieutenant-colonel on the left sergeant of the battalion, who will be careful to place himself exactly four paces in rear of the front rank, and to hold his piece between the eyes, erect and inverted, the better to indicate the direction to be given the first sergeants.

862. At the command *march*, the rear rank and the file-closers will step to the rear, without counting the steps; the men will pass a little in rear of the line traced for this rank, halt, and dress forward on the first sergeants, who will align correctly the men of their respective companies.

863. The file-closers will fall back and preserve the distance of two paces from the rear rank, glancing eyes to the right; the adjutant will align them on the left file-closer, who, having placed himself accurately two paces from the rear rank, will hold his piece inverted between the eyes.

864. The colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command:

FRONT.

865. At this command, the lieutenant-colonel, adjutant, and the sergeants designated, will return to their places in line of battle.

866. Should the battalion have wheeled about by fours, the major and sergeant-major will perform the duties of lieutenant-colonel and adjutant.

867. The colonel will close the ranks by the commands:

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*Manual of arms.*

868. The ranks being closed, the colonel will cause the manual of arms to be executed.

869. In the battalion drill the arms will habitually be carried on the right shoulder.

## ARTICLE THIRD.

*Firings.*

870. The colonel having caused the battalion to load at will, will next execute the fire by company, the fire by wing, the fire by battalion, the fire by file, and the fire by rank.

871. The fire by company and the fire by file will always be direct; the fire by battalion, the fire by wing, and the fire by rank, may be either direct or oblique.

872. When the fire ought to be oblique, the colonel will give, at every round, the caution *right* or *left oblique*, between the commands *ready* and *aim*.

873. The fire by company will be executed alternately by the right and left companies of each division, as if the division were alone. The right company will fire first; the captain of the left will not give his first command till he shall see one or two pieces at a ready in the right company; the captain of the latter, after the first discharge, will observe the same rule in regard to the left company; and the fire will thus be continued alternately.

*The fire by company.*

874. The colonel, wishing to fire by company, will command:

1. *Fire by company.*
2. *Commence firing.*

875. At the first command, the captains will place themselves four paces in rear of the line of file-closers,

opposite the centre of their companies; the first sergeants, and the sergeant on the left of the battalion, will fall back to the line of file-closers.

876. At the second command, the right company of each division will commence the fire at the commands: (such) *Company, Ready, AIM, FIRE, LOAD.*

877. The same commands will be given by the captains of the left companies.

878. The colonel will cause the fire to cease at the command *cease firing*; all the pieces, after the loading is completed, will be brought to the carry.

879. At the sound for the officers to take their places after firing, the captains and sergeants will promptly resume their places in line of battle. *This rule is general for all the firings.*

#### *The fire by wing.*

880. Wishing to fire by wing, the colonel will command:

1. *Fire by wing.* 2. *Right wing.* 3. *READY.* 4. *AIM.*
5. *FIRE.* 6. *LOAD.*

881. The colonel will cause the wings to fire alternately; and will recommence the fire by the commands: 1. *Right wing*; 2. *AIM*; 3. *FIRE*; 4. *LOAD.* 1. *Left wing*; 2. *AIM*; 3. *FIRE*; 4. *LOAD*; and so on. The captains will always caution their companies, *right* or *left wing*, according to the wing they may be in when the firing commences.

#### *The fire by battalion.*

882. The fire by battalion will be executed by the commands:

1. *Fire by battalion.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *READY.*
4. *AIM.* 5. *FIRE.* 6. *LOAD.*

#### *The fire by file.*

883. To cause this to be executed, the colonel will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. READY. 4. COMMENCE FIRING.

884. The fire by file will commence on the right of each company simultaneously.

*The fire by rank.*

885. To fire by rank, the colonel will command :

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. READY. 4. *Rear rank.* 5. AIM. 6. FIRE. 7. LOAD.

886. The fire will be continued by the commands :  
1. *Front rank.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

887. The fire by file, being that most used in war, the colonel will give it the preference, in order that the battalion may be brought to execute it with the greatest possible regularity.

888. When the colonel desires to give short relaxation to the battalion, he will bring it to a *support* or *order arms*, and then command : REST, or *In place*—REST, according as he designs the alignment to be broken or preserved.

889. Being at an *order arms*, the colonel may command :

1. *Stack*—ARMS. 2. *Break ranks.* 3. MARCH.

890. The colonel, wishing the men to return to the ranks, will cause the *attention* to be sounded, at which the battalion will re-form behind the stacks. He will then command :

1. *Battalion.* 2. *Take.* 3. ARMS.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

*To march in line of battle.*

891. The battalion being correctly aligned, when the colonel shall wish to march it in line of battle, he will send a marker two or three hundred yards to the front, and, placing himself in rear of the color-bearer,

will establish the marker, who will face to the rear, on a line perpendicular to the front of the battalion, passing between the heels of the color-bearer; he will then command:

1. *Battalion forward.* 2. *Guide centre.*

892. At the second command, the color-bearer will advance six paces to the front; the corporal of his file in the rear rank will place himself in the front rank; at the same time, the two general guides will move in advance abreast with the color-bearer, one opposite the right and the other opposite the left flank of the battalion.

893. The captains of the right wing will place themselves on the right of their companies in the front rank; the captains of the left wing will place themselves similarly on the left; the first sergeant in the centre of the battalion will remain in the front rank.

894. The colonel will then command:

MARCH.

895. At this command, the battalion will step off with life; the color-bearer, charged with the step and direction, will scrupulously observe the length and cadence of the pace, and will direct himself upon the marker.

896. The two general guides will march in the same step with the color-bearer, each maintaining himself abreast, or nearly so, with him, and neither occupying himself with the movements of the other.

897. The captains on the flanks of the two centre companies will constitute, with the color-corporals in the front rank, the basis of alignment for both wings; they will march in the same step with the color-bearer, and exert themselves to maintain their shoulders exactly on the square with the direction; the corporal in the rear of the color-bearer will march directly in

his trace, without lengthening or shortening the step, unless by direction of the colonel; the captains will occasionally turn their heads toward him, in order to maintain themselves on the same line, each regaining his position, should he lose it, by almost insensible degrees.

898. All the other captains will maintain themselves on the prolongation of this basis, and to this end they will cast their eyes occasionally toward the centre, taking care to turn the neck but slightly, and not to derange the direction of their shoulders.

899. They will observe the march of their companies, and prevent the men from getting in advance of the line of captains; they will not lengthen or shorten the step except when evidently necessary; because to correct small faults with too scrupulous attention is apt to cause the production of greater.

900. The men will keep their heads direct to the front, feel lightly the elbow toward the centre, resist all pressure coming from the flank, give the greatest attention to the squareness of the shoulders, and hold themselves always very slightly behind the line of captains, in order never to shut out from the view of the latter the basis of alignment; they will from time to time cast an eye upon the color rank or general guides, in order constantly to preserve the step.

901. The color-bearer, as he approaches the marker, will select points in the same line beyond him, which being done, the marker will return to his place in line of battle.

902. The lieutenant-colonel and senior major will superintend the march of their respective wings; the junior major, at the discretion of the colonel, may superintend the march of the color-bearer.

903. The colonel will habitually hold himself about thirty paces in rear of the centre of his battalion.

904. Should he observe that the march of the color-bearer is not perpendicular, he will command:

*Point of direction to the right (or left).*

905. At this command, the color-bearer will advance very gradually his left (or right) shoulder, giving time to the basis of alignment to conform to his movement, without producing derangement in the march of the wings, which would cause crowding in the one and openings in the other; the general guides will likewise conform gradually to the new change of direction.

906. If the battalion happens to lose the step, the colonel will call its attention by the command, *to the step*; captains and their companies will immediately cast their eyes to the color-bearer, or one of the general guides, and promptly conform themselves to the step.

907. The battalion being at a halt, if the colonel shall wish to march it in the opposite direction, he will first command: *Fours left about*—MARCH. HALT, and then:

1. *Battalion.* 2. *Forward.* 3. *Guide centre.* 4.  
MARCH.

908. This command will be executed as already explained.

909. Should the battalion be in march, the colonel will command:

1. *Fours left about.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Forward.* 4.  
*Guide centre.*

910. At the first command, the color-bearer and general guides will return to their places in line of battle.

911. At the command *march*, the battalion will wheel about by fours; at the command *forward*, it will step off, conforming to the principles of the direct march; at the command *guide centre*, the color-bearer and general guides will advance six paces, and resume the direction of the march.

912. In line of battle, for uniformity, the command will always be *fours left about*.

913. Whenever a battalion in line of battle wheels about by fours, the field officers, staff, non-commissioned staff, and band will place themselves in its rear by passing around its flanks. The battalion will then be manœuvred by the same commands and means as when facing in the opposite direction.

#### ARTICLE FIFTH.

##### *Oblique march in line of battle.*

914. The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to oblique, he will command:

1. *Right (or left) oblique.* 2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

915. At the command *march*, the whole battalion will take the oblique step; the captains and companies will strictly observe the principles laid down in the School of the Company.

916. The colonel will see that the captains and corporals constituting the basis of alignment march with the same obliquity as the color-bearer; that they preserve the length of the step, and that their alignment remains constantly parallel with that which existed when the obliquing commenced.

917. He will see that the battalion preserves its parallelism, and will exert himself to prevent the files from opening or crowding. If he perceive the latter fault, he will cause the files on the flank, to which the battalion obliques, to open out.

918. The colonel, wishing the direct march to be resumed, will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

919. At the command *march*, the battalion will take the direct step.

## ARTICLE SIXTH.

*To halt the battalion, and to align it.*

920. The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will command :

1. *Battalion.* 2. HALT.

921. At the second command, the battalion will halt, the color-bearer and general guides will remain in front; but if the colonel shall not wish to resume the advance in line, nor give a general alignment, he will command :

*Color and general guides—Posts.*

922. At this command, the color and general guides will return to their places in line of battle, and the captains will place themselves before the centre of their respective companies.

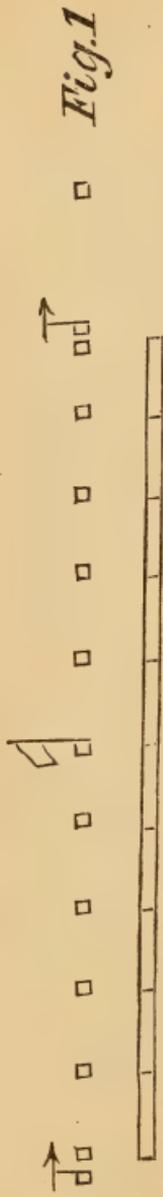
923. If the colonel should then judge it necessary to rectify the alignment, he will command :

*Captains, rectify the alignment.*

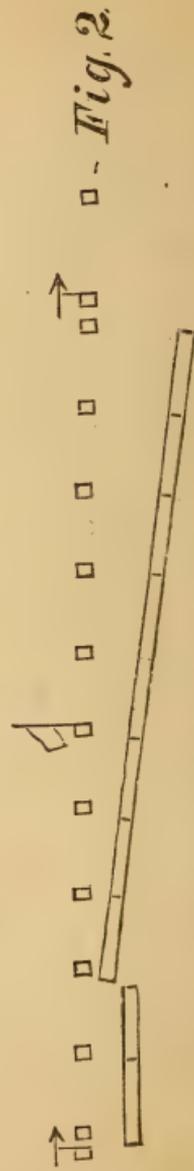
924. The captains of the right wing, at this command, will place themselves on the left of their companies and align them successively by the left, each as soon as the captain next on the left shall have commanded *front*; the captains of the left wing will place themselves on the right of their companies and align them similarly by the right, each captain returning to his place in line of battle after commanding *front*. In the two centre companies the senior captain will align his company first; the junior captain will align his company after the senior captain commands *front*.

925. (*Pl. XXXV., fig. 1.*) But when the colonel shall wish to give the battalion a general alignment, either parallel or oblique, instead of rectifying it as above, he will move some paces outside one of the general guides (the right will here be supposed), cau-





General alignment. No. 925.



General alignment. No. 984.

tion the general guide and the color-bearer to face him, and then establish them, by signal of the sword, on the direction which he may wish to give to the battalion. As soon as they shall be correctly established, the left general guide will place himself on their direction, and be assured in his position by the field officer of the left wing. The color-bearer will carry the color-lance perpendicularly between his eyes.

926. This disposition being made, the colonel will command :

### 1. *Guides*—ON THE LINE.

927. At this command, the right guide of each company in the right wing, and the left guide of each company in the left, will place himself on the direction of the color-bearer and the two general guides, face to the color-bearer, place himself in rear of the guide who is next before him at a distance equal to the front of his company, and align himself on the color-bearer and the general guide beyond.

928. The captains in the right wing will go to the left, and the captains in the left wing to the right of their companies; the junior captain of the two centre companies will cover the senior captain in the rear rank; the first sergeant in that interval will fall back to the line of file-closers.

929. The field officers of the right and left wings will place themselves outside the general guides, and each assure the position of the guides in his own wing, which being executed, the colonel will command :

### 2. *On the centre*—DRESS.

930. At this command, the companies will move up in quick time against the guides, where having arrived, each captain will align his company and command: **FRONT**. The senior captain of the two centre companies having aligned his company, will step a

pace to the front so as to enable the junior captain to align his company, after which he will step back to the front rank.

931. If the alignment be oblique, the captains will take care to conform to it in conducting their companies toward the line.

932. The battalion being aligned, the colonel will command :

*Color and guides—Posts.*

933. At this command, the color-bearer, the general and company guides, and the captains will take their places in line of battle.

934. (*Pl. XXXV., fig. 2.*) If the new direction of the line of battle be such that one or more companies find themselves in advance of it, the colonel, before establishing the general guides, will cause such companies to be moved to the rear, either by the back step, or by wheeling about by fours, according to the distance to be passed over.

935. When the colonel shall wish to give a general alignment, and the color and general guides are not on the line, he will cause them to move out by the command :

*Color and general guides—ON THE LINE.*

936. At this command, the color-bearer and general guides will place themselves on the line and be assured in their positions by the colonel as before explained.

ARTICLE SEVENTH.

*Change of direction marching in line of battle.*

937. The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to change direction to the right, he will command :

1. *Battalion right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

938. At the command *march*, the movement will

commence; the left general guide, continuing in the full step of twenty-eight or thirty-three inches, will wheel to the right on the right captain of the battalion as a pivot, describing the arc of a circle whose radius is equal to or a little greater than the front of the battalion; the color-bearer will wheel on the same pivot, taking care to preserve his distance and dress toward the left general guide, and at the same time keep on or slightly in rear of the line connecting this guide and the pivot; the right general guide will wheel on the same pivot, conforming to the movement of the left general guide.

939. The left captain of the battalion will follow in the trace of the left general guide, preserving the distance of six paces; the battalion will wheel to the right, the files touching and dressing toward the marching flank, and shortening the step in proportion to the distance from that flank to the pivot captain, who will turn in his place, observing to keep closed on the file next on his left; the corporal of the color-file will follow the color-bearer at the distance of three paces.

940. The field officer of the left wing at the first command of the colonel, will place himself outside the left general guide, and during the movement will superintend his march and that of the color-bearer, taking care that the latter never advances beyond the line of the left general guide and the pivot.

941. The battalion having wheeled sufficiently, the colonel will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

942. At the second command, the color and general guides and the battalion will take the direct step, the files dressing toward the centre; the color-bearer will advance to the line of the general guides, and will be assured in front of the corporal of the color-file by the colonel.

943. The battalion will change direction to the left, according to the same principles.

## ARTICLE EIGHTH.

*Passage of obstacles.*

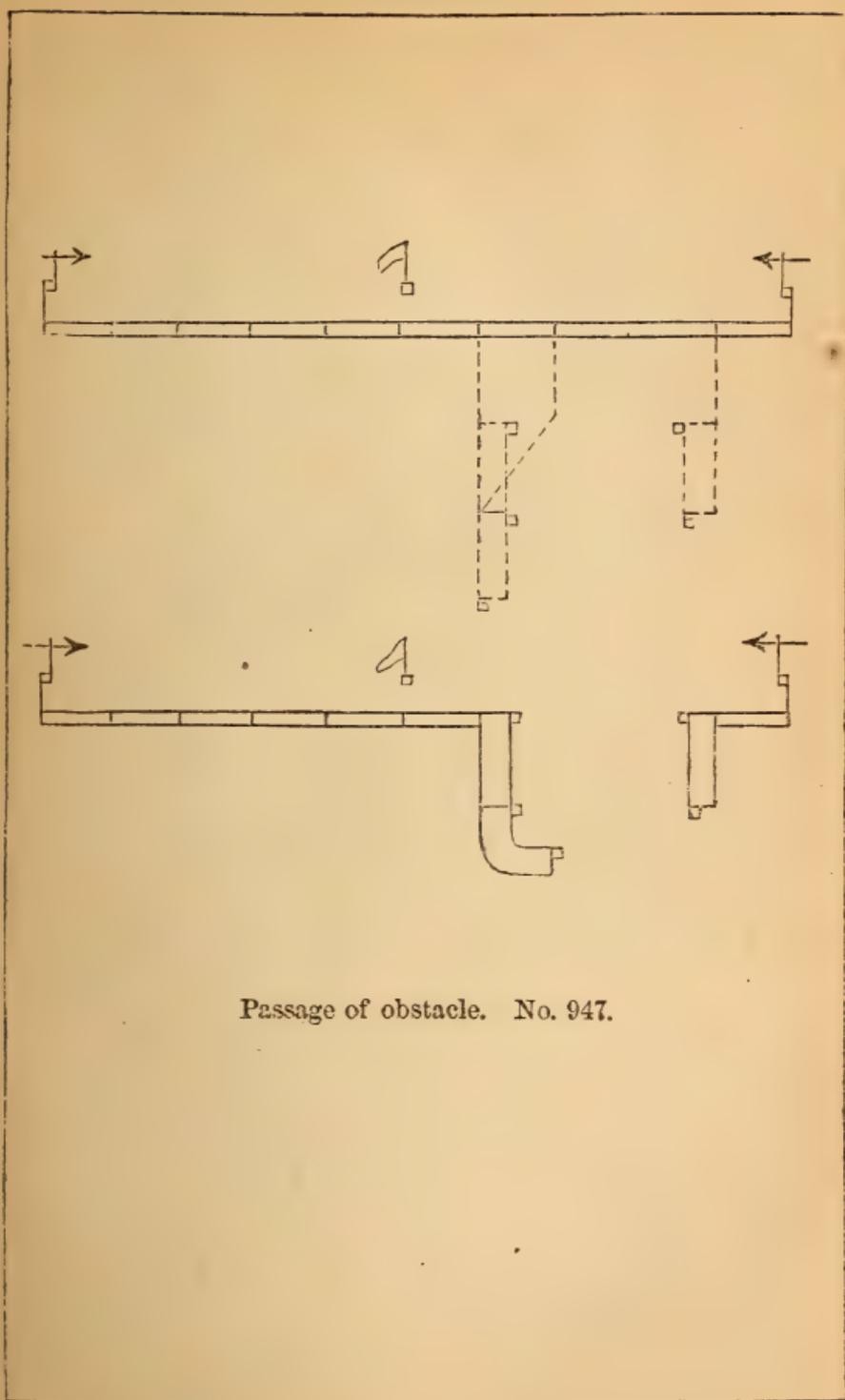
944. When the battalion, marching in line of battle, shall encounter an obstacle covering one or more companies, the colonel will command:

(such) *Company* or *companies*—OBSTACLE.

945. Should the obstacle cover but one company, the captain of this company will command: 1. (such) *Company*; 2. *Left forward*; 3. *Fours left*: or, *Right forward*; 4. *Fours right*; 5. MARCH, according as he may be on the right or left of the centre of the battalion; he will then place himself by the side of the right or left file of the leading four, which will march in the line of battle. The leading guide of the company whether in the line of battle or as a file-closer, will remain in his place. The guide of the company next toward the flank of the battalion will march abreast with the basis of alignment, and will preserve the distance necessary for the company which has broken to the rear to form again into line.

946. Should the obstacle cover two companies not on the flank of the battalion, the captain of the right company will command: *Right forward*, *Fours right*, and the captain of the left: *Left forward*, *Fours left*, MARCH; the leading four of both companies will march in the line of battle, and the captain of the company farthest from the centre of the battalion, will preserve the distance necessary for the two companies to form into line.

947. (*Pl. XXXVI.*) If the obstacle cover three companies, the captain of the centre company will follow in column of fours the one next toward the centre of the battalion. In like manner, if it be in front of the flank companies of the battalion, the outer ones will follow in column of fours in rear of the one nearest the centre of the battalion.



Passage of obstacle. No. 947.



948. When the obstacles shall have been passed, the colonel will command:

(such) *Company or companies*—INTO LINE.

949. At this, the captains of those companies whose leading fours are in line of battle, will command: *Right front into line*, or *Left front into line*—MARCH, according as the column of fours was formed by the left or right. The captain of the company in rear will conduct the head of his company at double time to its place in line of battle and then give the same commands.

950. The files as they arrive in line will take the step, and as soon as each company is formed it will dress toward the centre; the captain will place himself on its outer flank.

*Remarks on the march in line in the presence of the enemy.*

951. In battle it should always be the aim of the colonel to preserve command throughout; which can only be done by keeping the men in ranks; the file-closers will, therefore, closely observe the men in their front; allow them to break neither to the front nor the rear, and permit no man to fall out unless wounded.

952. The advance to an attack, if at a considerable distance, should be made by a combination of gaits, and while it should be an object to pass over the intervening ground in the least possible time, care will be taken not to take the double time nor the run till all the men shall be able to reach the point of attack.

953. The unity of the fours will be preserved as long as possible, and as casualties occur in the front rank the vacancies will be filled from the rear rank.

954. When necessary to fall back in the presence of the enemy, the colonel will caution the file-closers not to pass through the intervals, before giving the

command: *Fours left about.* The file-closers from in front of the battalion will closely observe the front rank, and instantly check any tendency there may be to break.

## PART SECOND.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

955. The battalion being in line of battle, either at halt or marching, when the colonel shall desire to march it by the right flank, he will command:

1. *Fours right.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide left.*

956. At the command *march*, the fours will wheel to the right, and each captain will place himself by the side of the guide at the head of the company.

957. At the command *forward*, the battalion will step off; the leading guide will direct his march parallel with the late line of battle, and the file on the marching flank of the leading four will follow thirty-two inches in his rear. The guide on the left of the battalion will follow in rear of the rear four, opposite the file on the marching flank.

958. To move by the left flank the colonel will command:

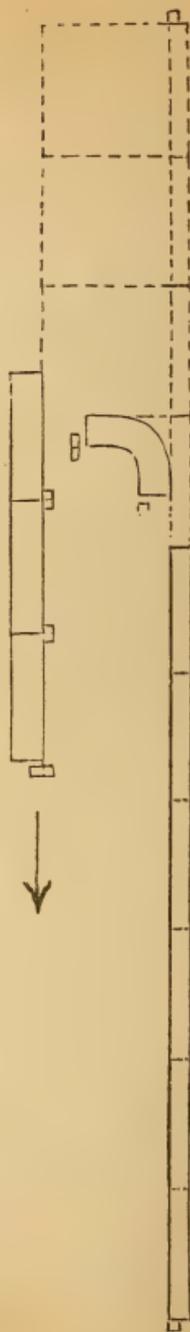
1. *Fours left.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide right.*

959. At the command *march*, the fours will wheel to the left; the captains will go to the left and place themselves on the right of the guide at the head of their companies.

960. The lieutenant-colonel and senior major will march on the side of the captains, six paces from the head or rear of the column, each in his own wing; the adjutant and sergeant-major will march between them and the column; the junior major will march on the same side, six paces from the color.



Column of fours, break from the right to march to the left. No. 966.



961. The file-closers will march two paces from the flank of the column, and will see that all files maintain accurately their distances.

*To march the column of fours in retreat.*

962. The colonel wishing to march the column of fours in retreat, will command :

1. *Fours left (or right) about.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide right (or left).*

963. The third command will be given the instant the fours shall have completed the half circle. The captains at the command *march*, will face about and hasten to place themselves by the side of the guide at the rear, now become the head, of their companies.

964. The colonel will give his commands so that the fours shall always wheel toward the side of the captains.

#### ARTICLE SECOND.

*To break into column of fours from the right (or left) to march to the left (or right).*

965. To break in column of fours from the right to march to the left, the colonel will command :

1. *Column of fours.* 2. *Break from the right to march to the left.* 3. MARCH (or double time—MARCH).

966. (*Pl. XXXVII.*) At the second command, the captain of the right company will command : (such) *company. Right forward. Fours right.*

967. At the third command, the company will move in column of fours, company distance, to the front, when it will change direction to the left, the guide directing his march parallel with the front of the battalion.

968. The captain of the second company, and the others successively, will give the commands: (such) *company. Right forward. Fours right—MARCH. Guide left*, in time to follow in the rear of the company next toward the right.

969. The battalion will break in column of fours from the left to march to the right, according to the same principles.

970. Should the leading guide of each company as it breaks to the front be a second sergeant, he will retire to his place as a file-closer as the head of his company is about to unite with the rear of the one preceding.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

*Column of fours to the right or left into line of battle.*

971. The colonel, wishing to form the column of fours to the right or left into line of battle, will command:

1. *Fours right (or left).* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.

972. The command *halt* will be given the instant the fours unite in line. The captains will see that the files dress toward the marching flank, aligning themselves on the pivot files, and then take their places in front of their companies.

973. If the battalion should not cover in file, the colonel may direct the captains to rectify the alignment, or he may establish the color and general guides and cause a general alignment.

974. Should the colonel desire the battalion to advance after forming line, instead of commanding *halt*, he will command: FORWARD. *Guide centre.*

975. At the command *guide centre*, the color and general guides will advance six paces, and the captains will place themselves on the flank of their companies most remote from the centre of the battalion.

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

*Principles of successive formation.*

976. Under the denomination of successive formations are included all those formations where the several subdivisions of a column arrive successively on the line of battle; such as front into line, and the deployments of columns in mass, or at half distance.

977. In all successive formations, the field officer at the head of the column will, at the preparatory command, establish two markers on the line of battle opposite the right and left files of the leading subdivision. The markers will face toward the *point of rest*, or the point where the right of the battalion is to rest, if the movement be from right to left, or where the left is to rest if the movement be from left to right; should the formation be central, they will be placed on the line of battle, in front of the leading subdivision, and will face each other.

978. The guides, as they successively arrive, will cover the markers and the guides preceding, being assured by the field officer at the head of the column who will place himself in their rear. If the movement be central, the lieutenant-colonel and senior major will each assure the guides of his own wing.

979. The general guide at the rear of the column will, at the preparatory command, move at a run and place himself on the line of the markers, a little outside the point where the outer flank of the rear subdivision will rest when the movement shall be completed. If the movement be central, both general guides will post themselves on the line of markers, outside the points respectively where the outer flanks of the leading and rear subdivisions will rest.

980. In all successive formations, each captain will cause his company to *support arms*, the instant the captain who follows him shall have commanded *front*. The captains will conform to the same rule in the formations into line by two movements.

## ARTICLE FIFTH.

*Column of fours right (or left) front into line.*

981. The colonel, wishing to form the column of fours right front into line, will command :

1. *Right front into line.* 2. MARCH.

982. (*Pl. XXXVIII.*) At the first command, repeated by the captain of the leading company, the field officer at the head of the column will proceed company distance to the front with the markers; the other captains will command: *Column half right.*

983. At the second command, the markers will be established; the leading company will execute the right front into line, and when at three paces from the line of battle it will be halted and dressed by the left against the markers.

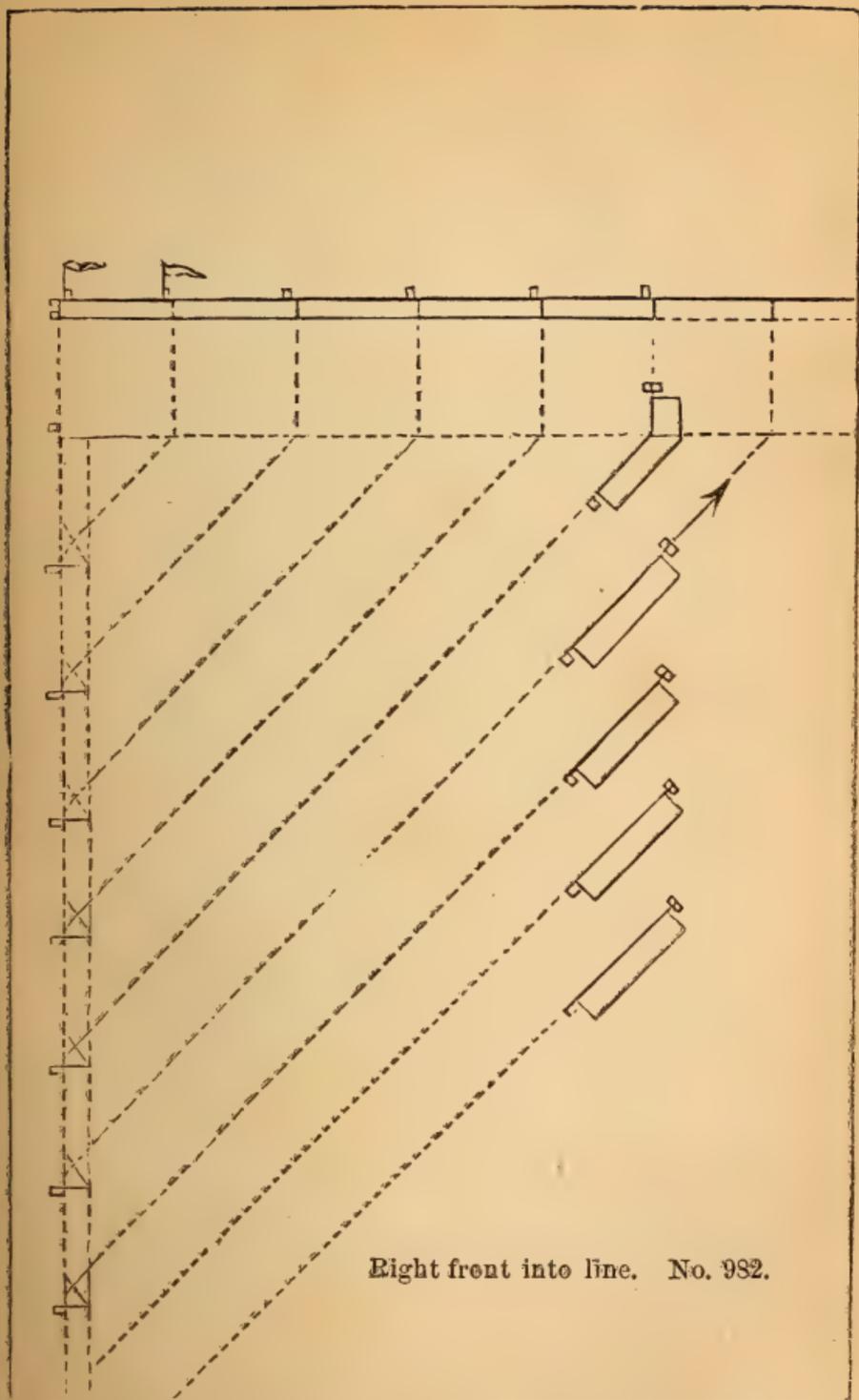
984. The captains of the other companies will conduct their companies diagonally toward the left of their interval in line, changing direction half left, when at company distance from it, so as to approach perpendicularly; they will immediately after command: 1. (such) *company.* 2. *Right front into line.* 3. MARCH, and will halt their companies three paces from the line of battle, and align them by the left. At the command *halt*, the right (or rear) guide will place himself covering the markers.

985. The movement ended, the colonel will command:

*Guides—Posts.*

986. Left front into line will be executed upon the same principles.

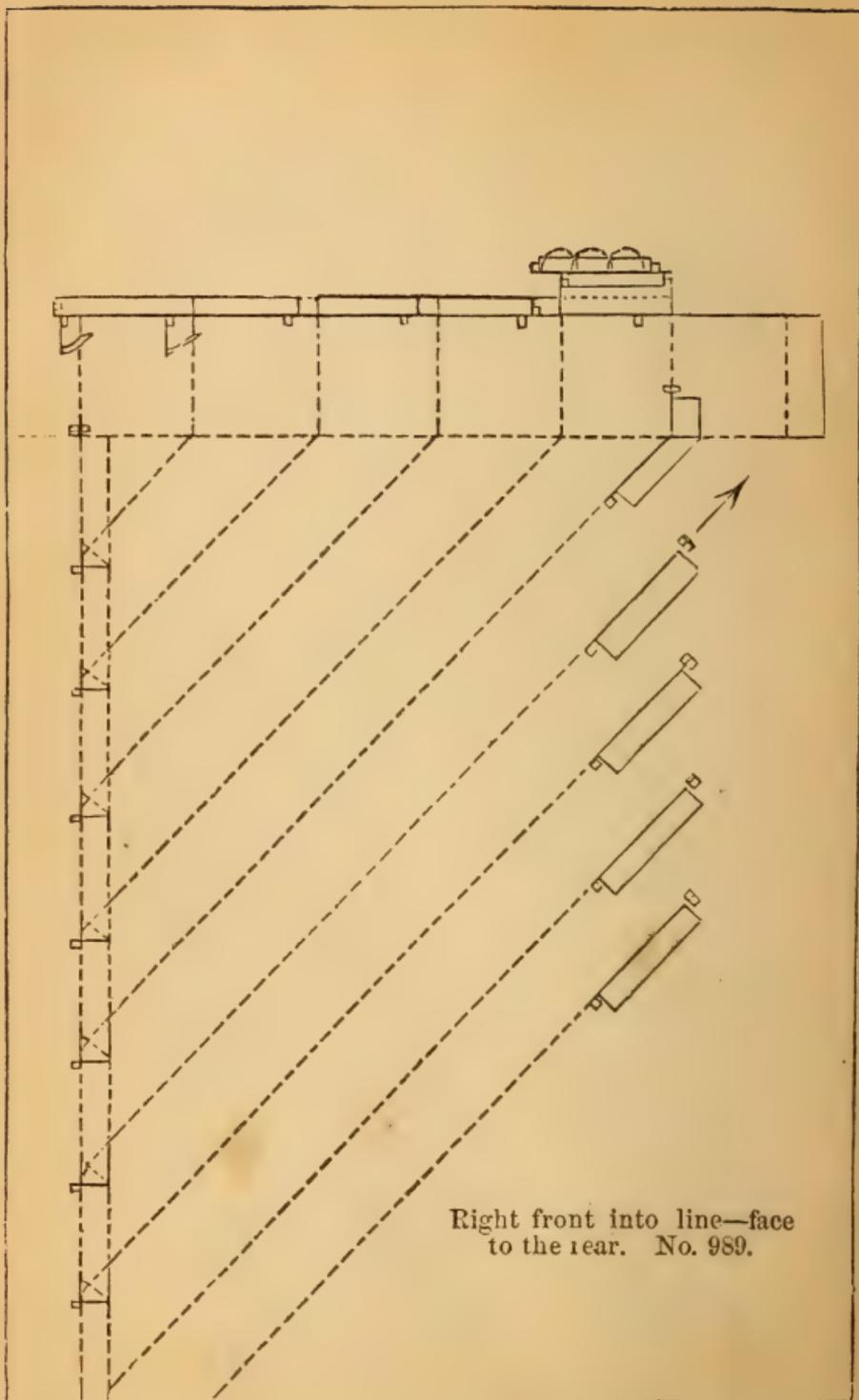
987. Should the movement be executed toward the side of the file-closers, those of each company, as it forms front into line, will dart through the column, passing between the rear rank of one four and the front rank of the one succeeding.



Eight front into line. No. 982.







Right front into line—face  
to the rear. No. 989.

988. Should the colonel desire to have the line face to the rear after forming front into line, he will command :

1. *Right (or left) front into line—face to the rear.*

2. MARCH.

989. (*Pl. XXXIX.*) The movement will be executed as previously explained, except that the captains will not halt their companies till they shall have marched three paces beyond the line of battle ; the fours having all arrived in line, the captains will cause their companies to wheel to the left (or right) about by fours and halt, and will then dress them to the right (or left). The left (or right) guides, after the companies shall have wheeled about, will indicate the line of battle.

990. The markers will be so posted as to permit the leading company to pass between them, after which the second marker will close to a little less than company distance from the first.

991. The movement ended, the colonel will command :

*Guides—POSTS.*

*Formation of column of fours into line of battle by two movements.*

992. A part of the column of fours having changed direction to the right, when the colonel shall wish to form line of battle to the left, he will command :

1. *Fours left.* 2. *Rear companies left front into line.* 3. MARCH.

993. At the command *march*, those companies which have entered the new direction will form to the left into line, each captain giving the command *halt* as the fours unite ; the rear companies will execute the left front into line.

994. To form line to the right, the colonel will command :

1. *Fours right.* 2. *Rear companies left front into line—face to the rear.* 3. MARCH.

995. If the column has changed direction to the left, to form line to the left, the colonel's commands will be:

1. *Fours left.* 2. *Rear companies right front into line—face to the rear.* 3. MARCH.

996. To form line to the right, he will command:

1. *Fours right.* 2. *Rear companies right front into line.* 3. MARCH.

997. In each of the foregoing movements, the companies which wheel by fours to the left (or right) will be dressed to the left (or right). The line of battle will be prolonged by the proper guides of the companies which execute front into line, who will retire at the command: *Guides—Posts.*

*Movements of the guide in School of the Battalion.*

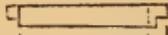
998. The battalion being in the primitive order, and the left four in each company being complete, in forming column of fours to the right, the distance between the rear rank of the left four of one company, and the front rank of the right four of succeeding company, measuring from heel to heel, will be sixty-six inches. The thickness of a man being computed at twelve inches, each first sergeant, in the interval between the companies, will follow twenty-one inches in rear of number four, rear rank, of the company on his right; number four, front rank, of the right four of each company, will follow twenty-one inches in rear of the guide.

999. If the column of fours be formed to the left, the same distance will be maintained by the first sergeants, who act temporarily as the leading guide of the companies in their rear, and by the men who follow them.

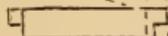
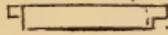
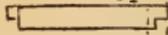
1000. Should there be two files in the left four, as these files in wheeling to the right or left form in a



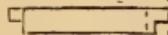
L.C. or M.



A. or S.M.



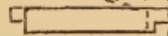
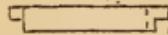
Jr. M.



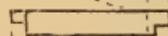
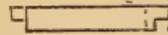
Col.



By company right wheel. No. 1003.



S.M. or A.



M. or L. C.



single rank, with the front-rank man on the left or right, the first sergeant and the files in their rear will preserve the same distance as when the four is complete.

## PART THIRD.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

*To break to the right or left into column.*

1001. Lines of battle will break into column either by company or division.

1002. The battalion being at a halt, and wishing to break by company to the right, the colonel will command:

1. *By company right wheel.* 2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1003. (*Pl. XL.*) At the first command, the captains will caution their companies to wheel to the right.

1004. At the command *march*, each company will wheel to the right, the files touching toward the pivot, and dressing toward the marching flank; each captain will throw himself, by the shortest line, to the point where the left of his company will rest when the wheel shall be completed; the left guide, if not already there, will, as soon as he can pass, place himself on the left of the front rank, and conduct the marching flank.

1005. When the guide shall be near the perpendicular, the captain will command:

1. (such) *Company.* 2. HALT.

1006. At the second command, which will be given at the instant the left guide shall be at three paces from the perpendicular, the company will halt; the guide will advance and place his left arm lightly against the breast of the captain, who will establish

him on the alignment; the right guide will, at the same time, place himself on the alignment by the side of the pivot-man, which being executed, the captain will align his company by the left, command **FRONT**, and place himself two paces before its centre.

1007. The captains having commanded *front*, the guides, although some of them may not be in the direction of the preceding guides, will stand fast, in order that the error of a company, which has wheeled too much or too little, may not be propagated; the guides not in the direction will readily come into it when the column is put in march.

1008. A battalion in line of battle will break into column by company to the left by similar commands and means; the right guide will conduct the marching flank, and the left guide will place himself on the left of the pivot-man the instant the company halts.

1009. If the battalion be in march, at the first command of the colonel, the captains will place themselves before the centre of their companies; at the command *march*, the pivot-men will halt short, and then turn gradually in their places; the wheel will be completed as from a halt.

1010. The battalion will break into column by division, by similar means, substituting in the command *division* for *company*; the chief of each division (the senior captain) will, at the first command, place himself two paces before the centre of his division, and perform the same duties as a captain of a company; the junior captain at the same time will place himself in the interval between the two companies, in the front rank; the first sergeant in that interval will fall back and cover him in the rear rank. The right guide of the right company and the left guide of the left company will be the right and left guides of the division.

1011. In all battalion movements by division, in forming from line into column, the divisions will pre-

serve their line designation till the movement shall be completed, when they will take the column designation; in like manner in forming line from column, the divisions will preserve their column designation till the movement shall be completed, when they will take the line designation. The chiefs of division will caution *such* and *such companies, such division*, whenever the designation is changed.

1012. The battalion being in column, the lieutenant-colonel and senior major will each remain with his own wing, and will take positions on the side of the guides, six paces from the flank of the column, abreast with the leading and rear subdivisions. The junior major will be on the same flank, six paces from the color subdivision.

1013. The adjutant and sergeant-major will be six paces from the flank of the second subdivision from the front and rear of the column, and on the side of the guide.

1014. The position of the colonel will be on the directing flank, about twenty paces from the column. As instructor, he may go wherever his presence may be necessary.

1015. When the colonel shall wish to move the column forward without halting it, he will caution *continue the march*, and then command:

1. *By company right wheel.* 2. MARCH (or *double-time—MARCH*).

1016. The companies will wheel as before, except that the captains will remain before the centre of their companies; when near the perpendicular, the colonel will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide left.*

1017. At the third command, the right guides will place themselves on the right of the pivot-men.

1018. At the fourth command, which will be given

the instant the wheel shall be completed, the companies will cease to wheel, and march straight forward. At the fifth, the men will take the touch of the elbows to the left. The leading guide will march directly to his front or in the direction indicated by the lieutenant-colonel or major, and the succeeding guides will be careful to preserve the trace and distance.

1019. If the battalion be marching in line of battle, and the colonel should wish to continue the march after wheeling to the right, he will give the same commands as in the latter case. The pivots will halt short at the second command, and then turn gradually in their places.

1020. Breaking to the left, and continuing the march, either from a halt or marching, will be executed by similar commands and means.

#### ARTICLE SECOND.

*To break to the rear by the right or left into column.*

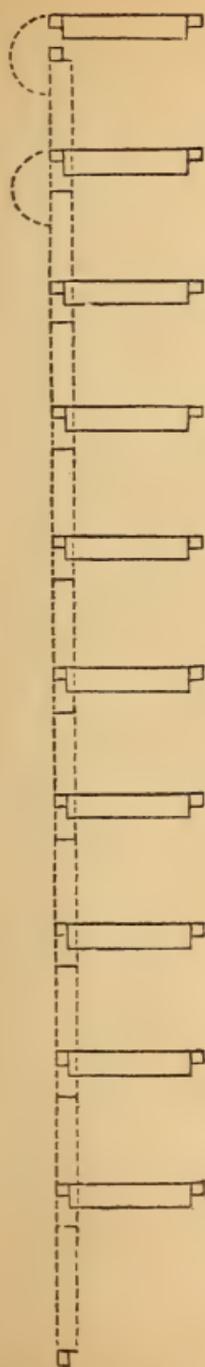
1021. When the colonel shall wish to cause the battalion to break to the rear into column, by the right of companies, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the rear into column.*
2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH.

1022. (*Pl. XLI.*) At the first command, each captain will hasten to the right of his company, and caution the right four to wheel to the right about.

1023. At the third command, all the fours will wheel to the right, the leading four in each company wheeling to the right about; the right guide, as soon as this is accomplished, will conduct the leading four perpendicularly to the rear, and the captain will place himself on the line formerly occupied by the front rank, facing to the rear, so that the outer file in each four shall graze his right arm in passing to the rear.

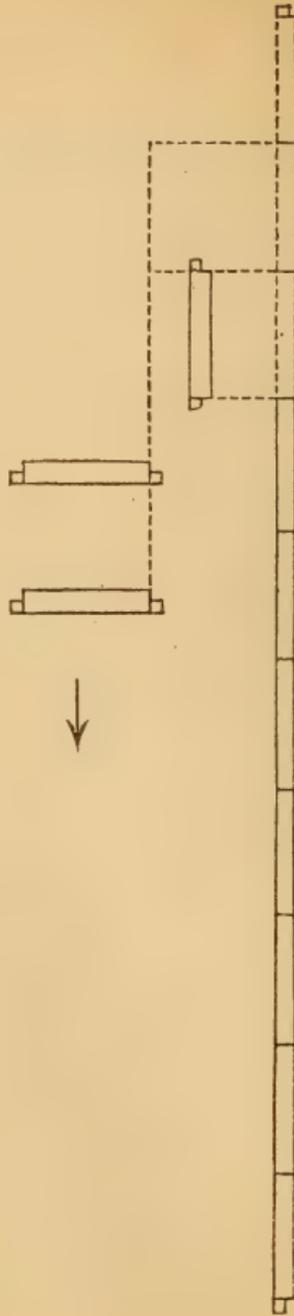
1024. When the rear four has nearly completed the wheel to the rear, the captain will command:



By the right of companies to the rear into column, fours right.  
No. 1022.







By company, break from the right to march to the left. No. 1031.

1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Fours left*. 3. MARCH.
4. HALT.

1025. The third command will be given the instant the front rank of the rear four arrives abreast with the captain, and the fourth command the instant the fours unite in line; the captain will then post the left guide on the left of the company, and command:

1. *Left*—DRESS. 2. FRONT.

1026. The captain, having aligned his company, will place himself before its centre.

1027. The battalion will break into column to the rear by the left of companies by similar commands, substituting *left* for *right*. The left four will wheel to the left about, and will be conducted to the rear by the left guide; the captain will post himself so that the outer files shall graze his left arm in passing to the rear.

1028. The battalion will break by division by the same commands and means, substituting *divisions* for *companies*.

1029. In all movements on the march, from the order in line to the order in column, the color and general guides will, at the preparatory command, resume their places in line of battle. *This rule is general.*

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

*To break from the right to march to the left.*

1030. The colonel, wishing to break from the right to march to the left, will command:

1. *By company*—*break from the right—to march to the left*. 2. MARCH.

1031. (*Pl. XLII.*) At the first command, the captain of the first company will command:

(such) *Company forward*—*Guide left*.

1032. At the command *march*, the right company will move company distance to the front, when the captain will command: *Left turn*, MARCH; after which the left guide will direct himself on a line parallel with the front of the battalion.

1033. When the first company shall be opposite the left of the second, the second company will be put in march by the captain, and will turn to the left after having marched company distance to the front, its left guide following in the trace of the guide of the first.

1034. The other companies will execute successively what is prescribed for the second, the captains being careful to give their commands in time to avoid loss of distance.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

##### *To march in column at full distance.*

1035. When the colonel shall wish to put the column in march, he will indicate to the leading guide two distant objects in front, on the line the guide ought to follow. This guide will immediately put his shoulders in a square with this line, take the more distant object as the point of direction, and the nearer one as the intermediate point.

1036. If only a single prominent object present itself in the direction the guide has to follow, he will face to it as before, and immediately endeavor to catch on the ground some intermediate point by which to give steadiness to his march.

1037. There being no prominent object, the colonel will establish a field officer thirty or forty paces in front of the column, facing to it, and on the line the guide ought to pursue; the guide will take this officer as the point of direction, and prolong his march by the selection of successive points in the line beyond him.

1038. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left (or right).* 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1039. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of subdivision, the column will put itself in march.

1040. The leading guide will carefully maintain his direction, and the following guides will preserve with exactness the trace, step, and distance.

1041. The field officer at the head of the column will hold himself habitually abreast with the leading guide, and will see that he prolongs accurately his direction; he will also see that the second guide carefully preserves the trace of the leading one, thereby insuring steadiness in the march of the rear subdivisions.

1042. The field officer at the rear of the column will give his attention to the trace and distance of the rear guides.

1043. The column being in march, to march in retreat, the colonel will command:

1. *Fours left (or right) about.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide right (or left).*

1044. At the second command, the captains and file-closers will change positions, darting through the nearest interval.

1045. The third command will be given the instant the *about* is executed, and the fourth command immediately after.

1046. The colonel will give the command, *left or right about*, according as the guide is left or right, thereby avoiding a change of the field officers from one flank of the column to the other.

1047. During the march, the colonel will hold himself habitually on the directing flank, giving his

special attention to the preservation of distances, the trace, and the translation of the step.

*Remarks on the march in column.*

1048. Although the uncadenced step be that of columns in route marches, and also that which ought to be *habitually* employed in the Evolutions of the Line (because it leaves the men more at ease, and consequently is better adapted to movements on a large scale and on difficult ground), nevertheless, as it is of paramount importance to confirm soldiers in the measure and movements of the cadenced pace, the route step will be but little practised in the exercises by battalion, except in going to and returning from the ground of instruction, and for teaching the mechanism and movements of columns in route.

1049. It is highly essential to the regularity of the march in column, that each guide follow exactly in the trace of the one immediately preceding, without occupying his attention with the general direction of the guides. If this principle be steadily observed, the guides will find themselves aligned, provided the leading one march exactly in the direction indicated to him; and even should obstacles in his way force him into a momentary deviation, the direction of the column would not necessarily be changed; whereas, if the following guides endeavor to conform themselves at once to all the movements of the leading one, in order to cover him in file, such endeavors would necessarily cause corresponding fluctuations in the column, from right to left, or from left to right, and render the preservation of distances extremely difficult.

1050. Should the colonel desire to change slightly the direction of march, he will caution *incline to the right* (or *left*); the leading guide will advance the left or right shoulder, and come gradually into the new direction, his subdivision conforming to his movements. The rear guides will execute the change

of direction on the same ground and in the same manner as the leading one.

#### ARTICLE FIFTH.

##### *Route step.*

1051. When the colonel shall wish to put the battalion in column in route, he will command:

1. *Fours right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide left* (or *right*). 5. *Route step*. 6. MARCH.

1052. At the sixth command, the men will carry their arms at will and march in the manner most convenient to them, taking care simply to cover in file and to preserve the distance of thirty-two inches.

1053. To resume quick time, the colonel will command:

1. *Attention*. 2. BATTALION.

1054. At the second command, the pieces will be brought to a right shoulder shift and the men will resume the cadenced step, to facilitate which, the colonel, if necessary, will command *left*, each time the leading guide plants his left foot.

1055. When the ground will admit of marching a long distance without reducing the front of the column, the colonel may march the battalion in route step, in column by company, commanding: *Route step, march*, if the battalion be in march; or if it be halted, by commanding: *Route step*, before the command *march*.

1056. The guides, as before, will preserve their distances and the trace, without, however, giving any attention to the cadence of the step.

1057. The battalion will be brought to quick time by the same commands as when marching in column of fours.

1058. In the route step, the colonel, the field officer at the head of the column, the adjutant, quartermas-

ter, sergeant-major, and quartermaster-sergeant, will march at the head of the column; the field music and band will march in front of the leading company; the field officer at the rear of the column; the junior major, and the surgeons, will march at the rear of the column.

1059. When long distances have to be overcome rapidly, it will be done by alternating the gaits. The double time will be used for ten or fifteen minutes, and then quick time for about five. The most favorable ground should be selected for the double time.

#### ARTICLE SIXTH.

*To change direction in column at full distance.*

1060. The column being in march, in the cadenced step, when the colonel shall wish to change direction to the right, he will command:

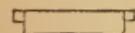
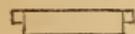
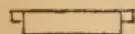
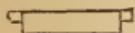
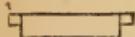
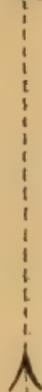
1. *Column, right.* 2. MARCH.

1061. (*Pl. XLIII.*) At the first command, a marker will place himself abreast, and on the left of the leading subdivision. The chief of this subdivision will command, *Right wheel*, or *Guide left, Right wheel*, according as the guide of the column is left or right.

1062. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chief of the leading subdivision, this subdivision will wheel to the right, the chief adding: 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH, upon the completion of the wheel, and returning the guide to the original flank, if not already there.

1063. The marker at the same command will halt and face to the column, and remain in this position till the rear has passed, when he will return to his post in rear of the first subdivision.

1064. The other subdivisions will march squarely up to the marker, and then change direction by the same commands and means as the first subdivision.



Column right. No. 1061.



1065. If the change of direction is to the left, the command of each chief of subdivisions will be *Left wheel*, or *Guide right*, *Left wheel*, according to the position of the guide.

1066. In changing direction, it is essential that the rear of the column should never be checked; each chief will, therefore, face his subdivision while wheeling, and see that the guide takes the full step of twenty-eight or thirty-three inches, and that the pivot takes steps of nine or eleven inches, according as the column is marching in quick or double time.

#### ARTICLE SEVENTH.

##### *To halt the column.*

1067. The column being in march, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will command:

1. *Column.* 2. HALT.

1068. At the second command, briskly repeated by the captains, the column will halt; no guide will stir, though he may have lost his distance, or be out of the direction of the preceding guides.

#### ARTICLE EIGHTH.

##### *Column at full distance to the right or left into line of battle.*

1069. The column being halted, when the colonel shall wish to form it into line of battle, he will move a little in front of the leading guide and face toward him; he will then establish this guide, and the one next in rear, on the direction he may wish to give to the line of battle, and then command:

##### *Guides—COVER.*

1070. At this the following guides will place themselves on the direction, covering the first two in file, and each precisely at a distance equal to the front of

his subdivision from the guide next in front; the field officers at the front and rear of the column will place themselves respectively in front and rear of the guides and assist in placing them promptly on the direction; the colonel will then command:

*Right (or left)*—DRESS.

1071. At this command, each subdivision will be aligned by its chief on the guide already established, which done, he will command, FRONT, and then return to his place in column.

1072. If the distance from the flank of the subdivision to the guide be considerable, its chief may close it in by the side step; or if ground has to be gained to the front, he may cause it to oblique.

1073. Should the colonel wish to form line of battle to the side opposite the guide, he will first change the guide to that side, and then conform to what has just been explained.

1074. The column being by company, and the guides having been established, to form line to the right, the colonel will command:

1. *Right into line, wheel.* 2. MARCH (or *double time*  
—MARCH).

1075. At the first command, the left guide of the leading company will hasten to place himself on the direction of right guides of the column; and, facing to them, will place himself so as to be opposite one of the three left files of his company; he will be assured in his position by the field officer at the head of the column.

1076. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, the companies will wheel to the right, preserving the touch of the elbow toward the pivot, and dressing toward the marching flank; each captain will turn to his company to observe the execution of the movement, and, when the left shall arrive

at three paces from the line of battle, he will command :

1. (such) *Company*. 2. HALT.

1077. At the command *halt*, the second sergeant, if the left guide, will return to the line of file-closers, the captain will place himself on the line, by the side of the right front-rank man of the company next on the left, and then command :

*Left—DRESS.*

1078. At this command, the company will dress up between the captain and the front-rank man on its right; the front-rank man of the left company, who finds himself opposite its left guide, will lightly rest his breast against the right arm of this guide.

1079. Each captain, having aligned his company, will command FRONT, and the colonel will add :

*Guides—POSTS.*

1080. At this command, the captains will place themselves two paces before the centre of their companies, and the guides will return to their places in line of battle.

1081. Should the first sergeants be the left guides, they will cover the captains in the rear rank while dressing, and at the command *guides—posts*, will step a pace to the rear and right, so as to permit the second sergeants, or right guides, to return through their intervals to the line of file-closers, after which they will step into the front rank.

1082. When companies form in line of battle, the rear-rank men will close to sixteen inches; the file-closers will always place themselves exactly two paces from this rank, which will sufficiently assure their alignment.

1083. The battalion being correctly aligned, the lieutenant-colonel, major, adjutant, and sergeant-ma-

major will take post as in line of battle, each in rear of his appropriate wing; the junior major will place himself in rear of the centre of the battalion. *This rule is general for all formations into line of battle.*

1084. The colonel may return to his place in line of battle, or go wherever his presence may be necessary.

1085. The column will be formed *to the left into line of battle* by the commands:

1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. MARCH.

1086. The movement will be executed on the same principles as *to the right into line*. The right guide of the leading company, at the first command, will establish himself on the direction of the left guides of the column, and the companies, after completing the wheel, will be dressed by the right.

1087. A column by division will be formed to the right or left into line by the same commands and means as a column by company, observing what follows:

1088. If to the right, at the command *halt*, the right guide of each of the left companies will place himself on the line of the division guides, opposite one of the three right files of his company. To permit this guide to pass, the junior captain in the interval and the first sergeant covering him (if not the guide who is to mark the line) will step, the first one pace to the front and right, the second one pace to the rear and right; the guide having passed through, they will return to their places. The division guides, and also the left guide of the leading division, who will be established as in the movement by company, will invert their pieces and hold them vertically in front of the centre of the body, the barrel to the right.

1089. The guides being established, each chief of division will command: *Left—DRESS*, and then give the command *FRONT* to the company on his right;

the junior captain will give the command *front* to the company on his right.

1090. If the movement be to the left, the left guide of the right company of each division will place himself on the line, and the captains will give the command *front* to the companies on their left.

1091. In all cases where line of battle is formed from column by division, the division will be aligned as explained in the three preceding paragraphs. *This rule is general.*

1092. A column in march will be formed into line without halting by the same commands as when at a halt. At the command *march*, the guides will halt in their places, and the field officer at the head of the column will promptly rectify their positions; the companies will wheel on the fixed pivot as just explained.

1093. If, in forming the column into line, the colonel shall wish to move forward without halting, he will first caution *continue the march*, and then give the same commands as before.

1094. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, each company will wheel to the right (or left) on a fixed pivot, the front-rank man on the pivot-flank taking care to mark time in his place, conforming his movements to those of the marching flank.

1095. When the marching flank shall approach the line of battle, the colonel will command :

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide centre.*

1096. At the first command, the second sergeants will retire to their places in the line of file-closers.

1097. At the second command, given the instant the wheel shall be completed, each company will march to the front.

1098. At the third command, the color and general guides will step six paces to the front, and each cap-

tain will place himself in the front rank on that flank of his company most remote from the centre of the battalion.

#### ARTICLE NINTH.

*Column at full distance front into line of battle.*

1099. A column being by company, at full distance and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it to the right front into line, he will command :

1. *Right front into line.* 2. *By company right half wheel.* 3. MARCH (OR *double time—MARCH*). 4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH. 6. *Guide left.*

1100. (*Pl. XLIV.*) At the first command, the markers will be established at company distance from the leading company, and the captain of this company will command : (such) *Company forward. Guide left.*

1101. At the third command, the leading company will advance, and when at three paces from the line will be halted and dressed to the left against the markers; all the other companies will wheel to the right on a fixed pivot.

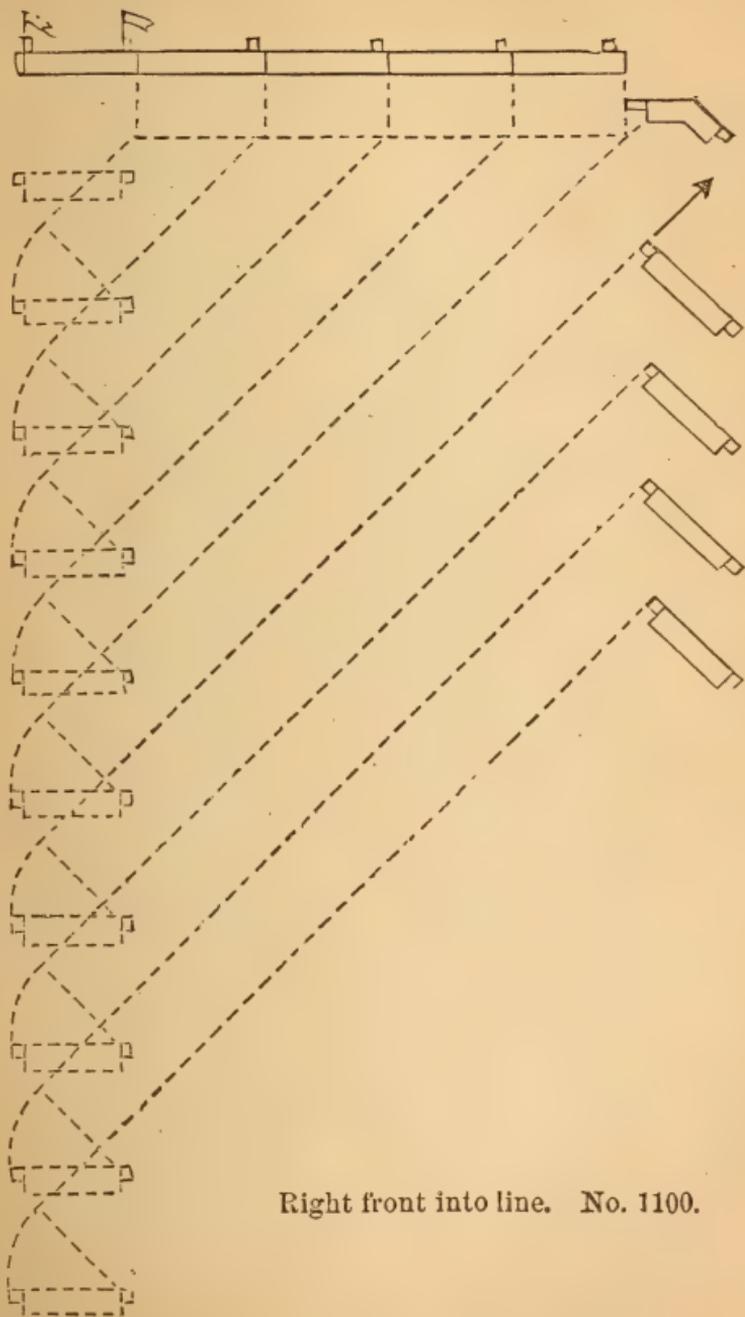
1102. At the fifth command, given the instant the companies shall have completed the eighth of a circle, they will cease to wheel, and march straight to the front.

1103. At the sixth command, the left guides of the companies will march directly to their front.

1104. The left of the second company having arrived opposite the right of the leading company, its captain will cause it to turn to the left, and when at three paces from the line will command :

(such) *Company—HALT.*

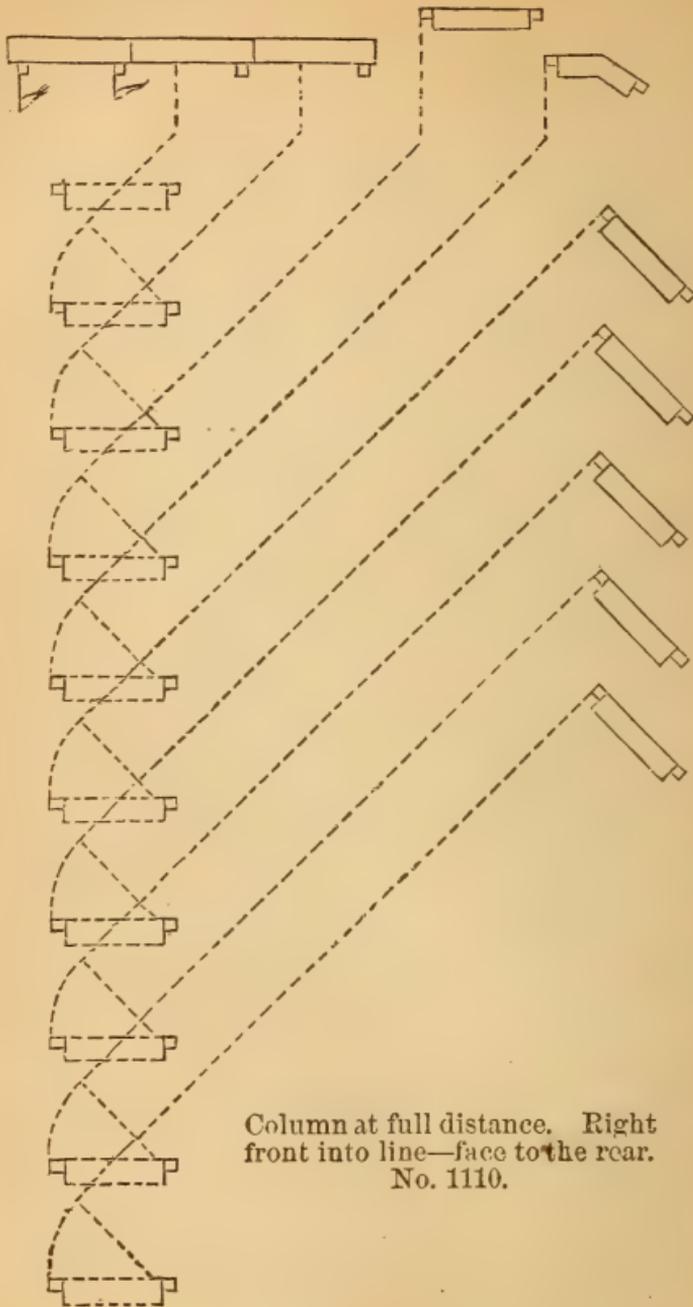
1105. At the second command, the company will halt, the files not yet in line will promptly form in their places; the right guide will step to the front



Right front into line. No. 1100.







Column at full distance. Right  
front into line—face to the rear.  
No. 1110.

and cover the markers, and the captain will place himself by the side of the front-rank man on the right of the leading company; which being done, he will align his company by the left, and command: **FRONT.**

1106. When the left of the third company arrives opposite the right of the second, it will turn to the left, and will be halted and dressed as prescribed for the second; each following company will execute what has been prescribed for the third.

1107. The movement ended, the colonel will command:

*Guides—Posts.*

1108. A column will form to the left front into line according to the same principles, the left guides will mark the line of battle, and the companies will be dressed by the right.

1109. Should the column be in march, the colonel will give the same commands, and the movements will be similarly executed. The leading company will approach the markers with the guide toward the point of rest, the guide being changed if necessary at the preparatory command. The markers will be so established that the leading company shall have to advance company distance after the command *march*.

1110. (*Pl. XLV.*) Should the colonel desire to form front into line and face to the rear, he will add to the command:

*Face to the rear, after Front into line.*

1111. The movement will be executed the same as front into line, except that the companies will march three paces beyond the line of battle and halt; as soon as all the files are in line they will wheel to the left (or right) about by fours and halt, and then be dressed to the right (or left), according as the front into line was to the right (or left).

1112. The guides who indicate the line of battle

will place themselves upon it after the company wheels about.

#### ARTICLE TENTH.

##### *Formation in line of battle by two movements.*

1113. A column by company having partly changed direction to the right, should the colonel desire to form line before all the companies enter the new direction, he will command:

1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. *Rear companies left front into line.*

1114. At the second command, the captain of each of the rear companies, excepting the leading one, will command: (such) *Company left half wheel*, and the colonel will add:

MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

1115. At this command, briskly repeated, the companies which have changed direction to the right will execute *to the left into line*, and the rear companies *left front into line*, by the means prescribed for the respective formations; the captains of the rear companies, when they shall have sufficiently wheeled, will command: 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.*

1116. Should the column have executed a partial change of direction to the left, the colonel will form line by the command:

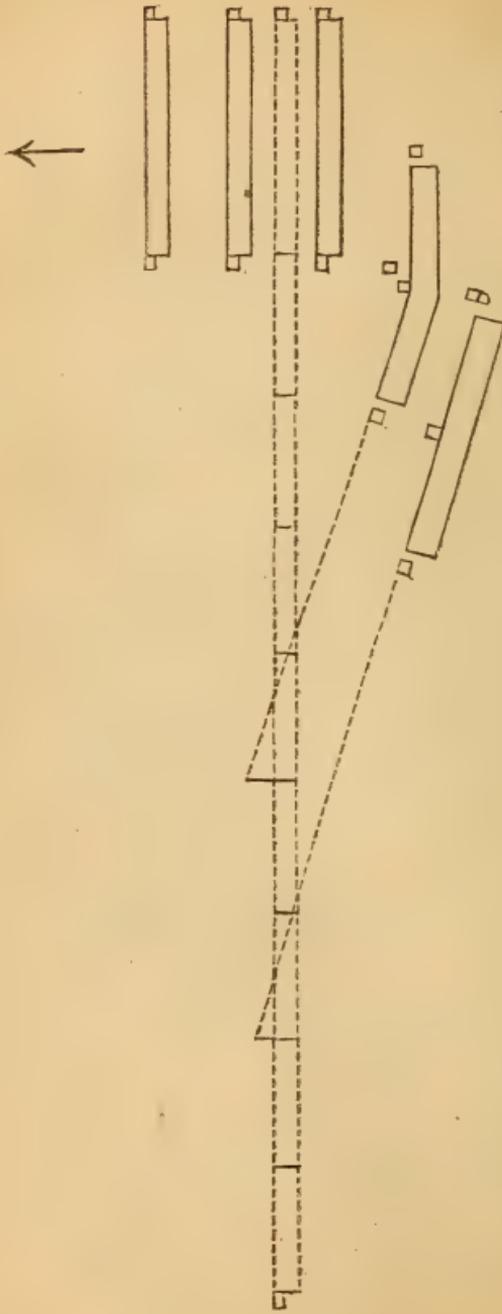
1. *Right into line wheel.* 2. *Rear companies right front into line.* 3. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

1117. The companies which have executed the change of direction will execute *to the right into line*, and the rear companies *right front into line*.

1118. After the completion of either movement, the colonel may cause the battalion to face in the opposite direction by the commands:

1. *Fours left about.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.





Close column by division on first division, right in front. No. 1121.

## PART FOURTH.

## ARTICLE FIRST.

*To ploy the battalion into close column.*

1119. The distance between the guides in close column is six paces. The movement may be executed by company or division on the right or left subdivision of the battalion, with either the right or left in front.

1120. To ploy the battalion into close column by division, in rear of the first, with the right in front, the colonel will command :

1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On first division right in front.* 3. *Fours right.* 4. MARCH.

1121. (*Pl. XLVI.*) At the second command, the chief of the first division will command : 1. *First division forward.* 2. *Guide left* ; the chiefs of the other divisions will hasten to their right, and the junior captains will place themselves in the interval between the companies.

1122. At the fourth command, the first division will march nine paces to the front, and be halted and dressed to the left by its chief ; the file-closers will at the same time close to one pace.

1123. The other divisions will wheel by fours to the right, each chief adding : *Forward—Guide left.* The second, conducted by the right guide, will march in rear of the first, parallel with the line of battle ; its chief will halt in the trace of the guide of the preceding division, and when his division shall have nearly marched past him, he will command : 1. *Second division.* 2. *Fours left.* 3. MARCH. 4. HALT. The commands *march* and *halt* will be so given, that when the movement is completed, the left file of the division shall be directly in rear of the left file of the first division, and six paces from him ; the left guide will

place himself on the left of this file, in the trace of the preceding guide, and the captain will then align his division by the left, and command: FRONT.

1124. Each of the other divisions, after wheeling by fours to the right, will break slightly to the rear and be conducted by its chief, who will march on the left of the guide, so as to enter the column six paces in rear of the preceding division. The chiefs will conform to what is prescribed for the chief of the second, and the file-closers will close to one pace as the fours wheel to the left.

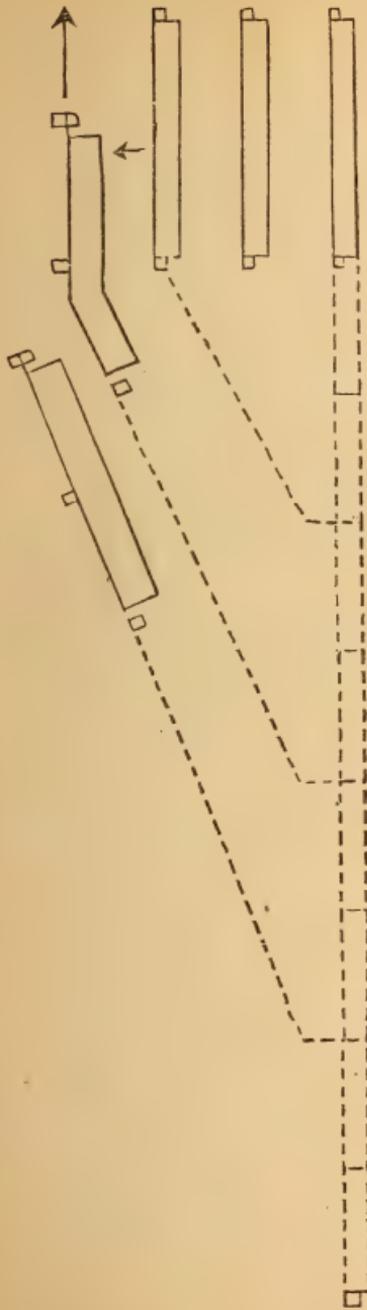
1125. The field officer of the right wing, placing himself in their rear, will rectify the position of the guides as they successively arrive, after which he will place himself in column, six paces from the flank of the first division. The field officer of the left wing will follow up the movement, and take post on the left flank of the rear subdivision. The junior major, adjutant, and sergeant-major will take their places as in column at full distance.

1126. (*Pl. XLVII.*) Should the command be *left* instead of *right* in front, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast.

1127. The chief of the second will caution, *right forward, fours right*, and at the command *march*, will conduct the right of his division about three paces to the front, change direction to the right, and when nearly opposite the right of the first division, command: 1. (such) *Division*. 2. *Fours left*. 3. MARCH. 4. HALT. He will then post his right guide six paces in front of and facing the right guide of the first division, and align his division by the right.

1128. The other divisions will break to the front, and be conducted by their chiefs till they halt. The right guides will face to the rear, and each division will be aligned as in the case of the second.

1129. The field officer of the right wing will place himself in rear of the guides as they successively ar-



Close column by division, on first division, left in front. No. 1126.



rive, and having rectified their positions, will place himself six paces from the directing flank of the rear subdivision.

1130. The movement ended, the colonel will command: 1. *Guides*—ABOUT. 2. FACE.

1131. The close column will be formed on the fifth division, left or right in front, by similar commands and means. The divisions in the first instance will be dressed to the right, and in the second, to the left.

1132. Should the battalion be in march, the directing division will march nine paces and halt, or halt at the command *march* from the colonel, according as the ployment is in rear or in front of it.

1133. The junior captain, during the march by the flank, is on the right or left of the guide in the interval between the two companies, covering the chief of the division.

1134. In all the ployments, should the guide who is to lead the subdivision be in the line of file-closers, he will, at the command *march*, place himself in front of the outer file or the file on the marching flank of the leading four; should it be the rear guide who is in the line of file-closers, he will place himself in rear of the file on the marching flank of the rear four. *This rule is general.*

1135. Chiefs of division will recollect, that whenever the battalion wheels about by fours, the first division becomes the fifth, and the fifth the first; the second the fourth, and the fourth the second; the third division always preserves its designation. The same rule holds in column.

1136. The battalion may be formed by companies or divisions, in column at full or half distance, on the right or left subdivision by the commands:

1. *Column at full (or half) distance.*
2. *By company on right (or left) company right (or left) in front.*
3. *Fours right (or left).*
4. MARCH.

or,

2. *By division on first (or fifth) division right (or left) in front.*

1137. If the ployment is in rear of the directing subdivision, that subdivision, at the command *march*, will move to the front a distance equal to its front or half front increased by three paces, according as the column is to form at full or half distance.

1138. The battalion in column of fours will ploy into close column on its first or leading division by the same commands as from line of battle, omitting *fours right* or *left*.

1139. If the right is in front, the first division will form line to the left at the command *march*, and advance six paces, or halt, according as the right or left is to be in front.

1140. The other divisions conform to the same principles as when plying from line of battle, the chief of the second cautioning, *column left*, before the command *march* of the colonel, if the left is to be in front.

1141. If the column of fours be left in front, the first division, at the command *march*, will form line to the right and advance six paces, or halt, according as the left or right is to be in front.

1142. In column of fours, it will be observed that the right is in front whenever the captains present the right shoulder to their guides, or whenever the file-closers are on the right flank of the column; the left is in front whenever the captains present the left shoulder to their guides, or whenever the file-closers are on the left flank of the column.\*

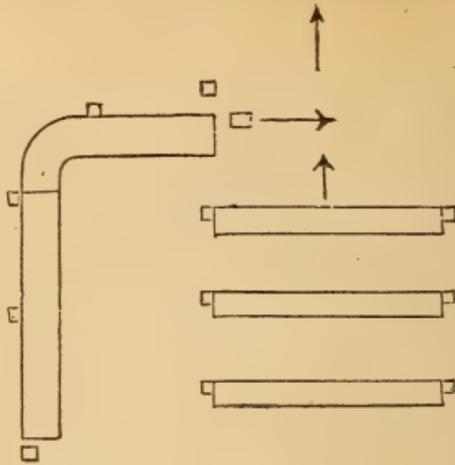
1143. It will likewise be observed as a *general rule*, that in all ployments, when the right is to be in front, the heads of divisions incline *to the right*; when the left is to be in front, they will incline *to the left*.

1144. In all formations of close column from

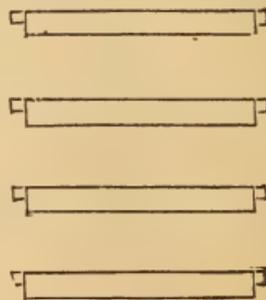
\* See page 218.



On the right, close column by division. No. 1151.

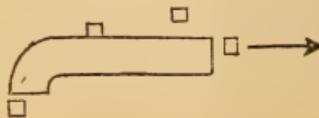


*Fig. 2.*



*Fig. 1.*

To the right, close  
column by division.  
No. 1148.



column of fours, each chief of division will hasten to the head of his division at the preparatory command of the colonel; the junior captains will cover their chiefs opposite the interval between the two companies.

ARTICLE SECOND.

*To or on the right or left close column by division from column of fours.*

1145. In the formation *to the right* or *left close column by division*, the divisions will enter the column successively, each six paces in rear (to the rear as the column is now facing) of the point where the preceding division entered it. In forming *on the right* or *left*, each division will pass six paces beyond the point where the preceding division entered the column.

1146. In all cases, whether *to* or *on* the right or left, the divisions will be dressed by the flank *nearest the line of march*, and the guides will be assured by the field officer at the head of the column, who, placing himself in their rear, as they successively arrive, will see that their line is parallel with the line of march.

1147. Being in column of fours, right in front, to form close column to the right, the colonel will command:

1. *To the right, close column by division.* 2. MARCH.

1148. (*Pl. XLVIII., fig. 1.*) At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution, *column, right*; at the second command, his division will change direction to the right; after proceeding ten paces in the new direction, he will halt, in his own person, allow his division to march past him, and as the left, or rear file approaches, he will command:

1. *First division.* 2. *Fours left.* 3. MARCH. 4. HALT. 5. *Left—DRESS.* 6. FRONT.

1149. The other divisions will enter the column in rear of the first, form line and be dressed to the left, by the same commands and means.

1150. To form on the right close column by division, the colonel will command :

1. *On the right, close column by division.* 2. MARCH.

1151. (*Pl. XLVIII., fig. 2.*) The first division will execute the movement as prescribed for forming to the right; the other divisions will enter the column beyond the point where the first changed direction, will form line to the left, and be dressed to the left as before, the guides facing to the rear.

1152. The movement ended, the colonel will command :

1. *Guides—ABOUT.* 2. FACE.

1153. Being in column of fours right in front, to form close column to the left, the colonel will command :

1. *To the left, close column by division.* 2. MARCH.

1154. (*Pl. XLIX., fig. 1.*) The first division will change direction to the left at the command *march*, and having cleared the flank of the column by ten paces, will form in line to the left and be dressed to the left.

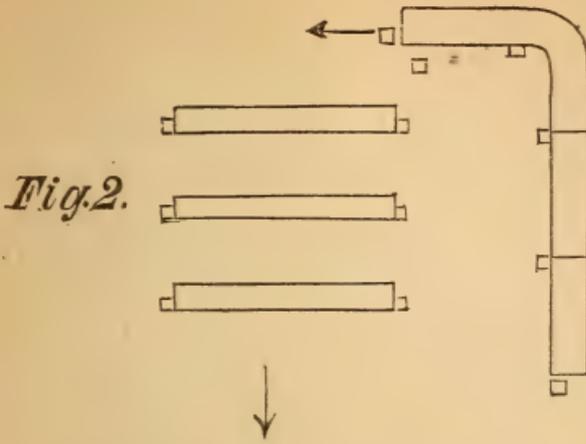
1155. The other divisions will enter the column in front of the first, and be formed and dressed in a similar manner, the guides facing to the rear.

1156. The movement ended, the colonel will command :

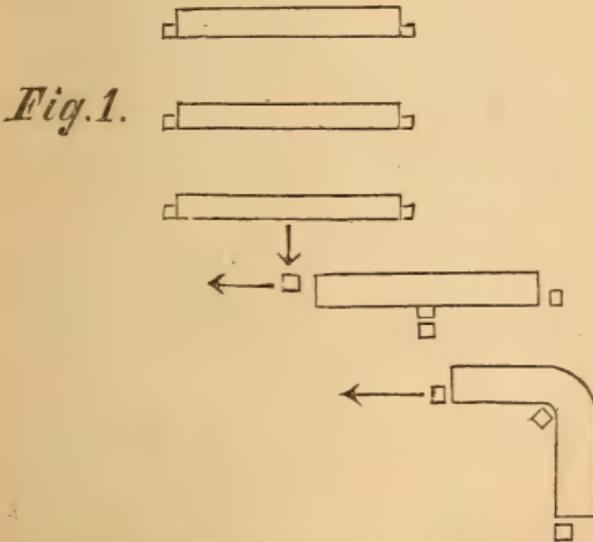
1. *Guides—ABOUT.* 2. FACE.

1157. (*Pl. XLIX., fig. 2.*) In forming on the left, the rear divisions pass beyond and enter the column in rear of the first; each division as before being dressed to the left.

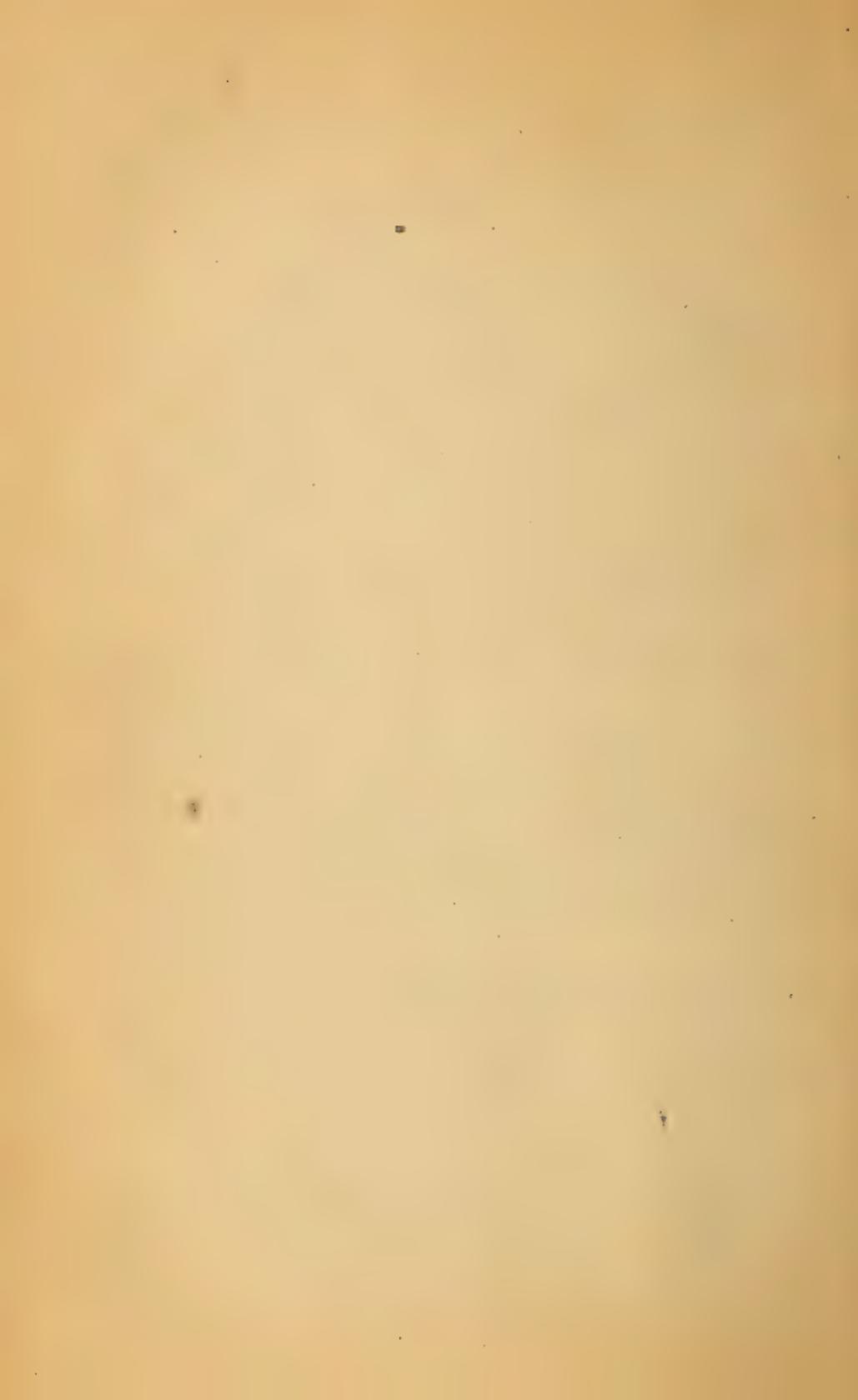
1158. The battalion being in column of fours, left



On the left close column by division. No. 1157.



To the left close column by division. No. 1154.



in front, the movements *to the left, to the right, on the left,* and *on the right*, will be executed the same as when right in front, except that the divisions, after entering the column, form line to the right, and are dressed to the right.

1159. To resume the march in column of fours from close column, the colonel will command:

1. *Column of fours.* 2. *First division right forward, fours right.* 3. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).
4. *Guide left.*

1160. At the second and third commands, which will be repeated by the chief of the first division, that division will execute the *right forward, fours right.*

1161. The chiefs of the other divisions will successively give the same commands in time to follow in column of fours the one preceding. The captains will place themselves at the head of their companies as each division breaks.

1162. Column of fours *left forward, fours left*, will be similarly executed.

1163. The colonel may likewise command:

1. *Column of fours.* 2. *First (or fifth) division.* 3. *Fours right.* 4. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).
5. *Guide left.*

1164. At the fourth command, the division indicated will march by the right flank; the other divisions will follow successively at the commands of their chiefs.

1165. The column of fours may be formed similarly by the left flank of divisions.

*Remarks on ploying the battalion into column.*

1166. In all the ployments and movements in column, where the subdivisions execute the movements successively, such as: to take or close distances, to change directions by the flank of subdivisions, each

chief will cause his men to support arms, after having aligned his subdivision and commanded FRONT.

### ARTICLE THIRD.

*To march in column at half distance or in mass.*

1167. A column at half distance or in mass being at a halt will be put in march, and will be halted by the same commands as at full distance.

1168. A column either at full or half distance or in mass, will be marched by the right or left flank by the commands:

1. *Fours right (or left).*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right (left or centre).*

1169. At the command *march*, each subdivision will wheel by fours to the right or left, the guide in each instance placing himself in front of the file on the marching flank of the leading four. Each chief will place himself on the left or right of his leading guide, according as the movement is by the right or left flank.

1170. At the command *Guide right (left, or centre)*, the head of each subdivision will dress on the right, left, or centre subdivision, each chief preserving his proper distance from the one next toward the guide.

1171. The lieutenant-colonel and senior major will march abreast of the chiefs of subdivisions, six paces outside the column, and will be covered by the adjutant and sergeant-major, who will march abreast with the rear guides. The junior major will follow twelve paces in rear of the color-company or division.

1172. If in column by company, the centre will be the color-company; in column by division the third division will be the centre.

1173. To form again in column, the colonel will command, according as he may wish the column to face:

1. *Fours right* (or *left*).
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

1174. If the subdivisions form line toward the side of the file-closers, they will, at the command *march*, dart through the nearest interval.

1175. The chiefs will place themselves two paces in front of their respective subdivisions.

1176. The column at half distance or in mass will be marched in retreat by the same commands as when at full distance. The guide will be announced toward the side of the field officers.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

*To change direction in column at half distance.*

1177. A column at half distance, being in march, will change direction by the same commands and according to the same principles as a column at full distance; but as the distance between subdivisions is less, the pivot-man in each subdivision will take steps of *fourteen inches*, instead of *nine*, and *seventeen inches* instead of *eleven*, according to the gait, in order to clear in time the wheeling-point; the marching flank will describe the arc of a larger circle the better to facilitate the movement.

#### ARTICLE FIFTH.

*To change direction in column in mass.*

1. *To change direction in marching.*

1178. A column by division in mass, being in march, will always change direction on the principles of wheeling in marching; to this end the colonel will change the guide to the flank opposite the intended change, if not already there, and will then command:

1. *Battalion right wheel.*
2. MARCH.

1179. (*Pl. L.*) At the command *march*, the leading division will wheel as if part of a column at half distance.

1180. The instant that this division commences the wheel, the others will at once conform themselves to the movement; to this end, the left guide of each, advancing slightly the left shoulder, and lengthening a little the step, will incline to the left, observing to gain sufficient ground to the front, to constantly maintain the distance of six paces from the preceding guide; when he shall cover this guide, he will cease to incline, and then march exactly in his trace.

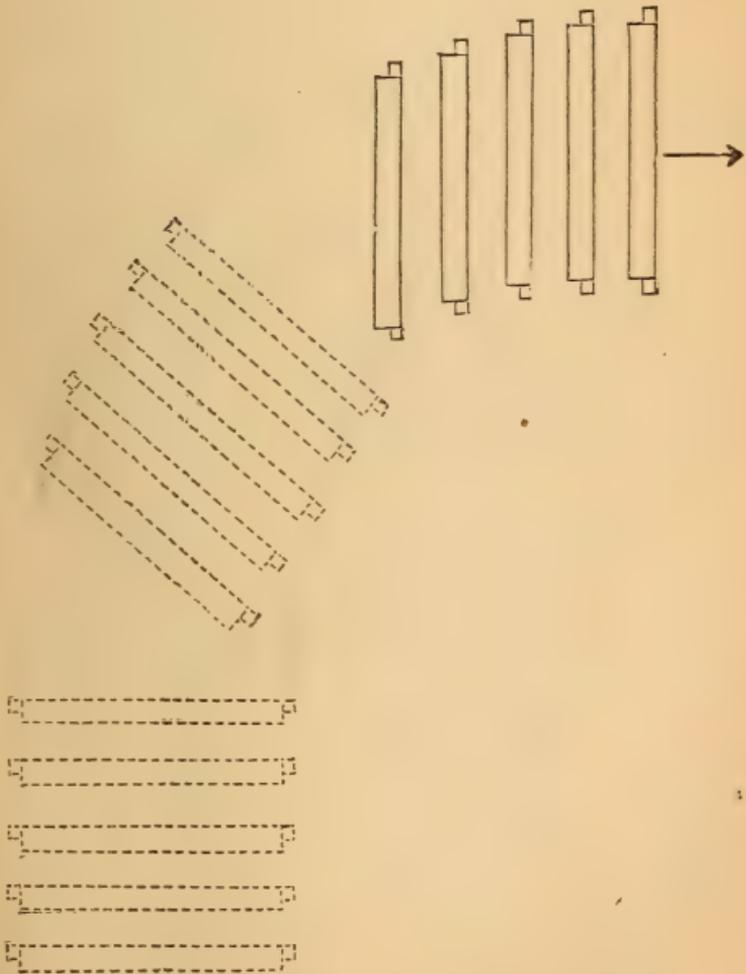
1181. Each division will conform itself to the movement of its guide; the men will feel lightly the elbow toward him, and advance a little the left shoulder the instant the movement commences; each file in inclining will gain ground to the front in proportion to his distance from the pivot; the right guide will gain only so much as may be necessary to maintain his distance of six paces from the front rank of the preceding division, the same which separates the marching flanks.

1182. Each chief of division, turning to it, will regulate its march; see that its alignment continues nearly parallel to that of the preceding division, and that the centre bends only a little to the rear.

1183. During the movement, the colonel will give his attention to the march of the pivot-flank; the field officer at the head of the column will observe the march of the leading guide, and will see that he does not throw himself within the arc he ought to describe; the field officer at the rear will superintend the march of the rear guides, and will see that they conform gradually to the movements of the guides in front.

1184. When the wheel of the first division shall be nearly completed, the colonel will command :

Battalion right wheel. No. 1179.





1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

1185. At the second command, which will be given the instant the first division completes its wheel, it will resume the direct march; the other divisions will resume the direct march at the same point, after which their guides will march in the trace of the preceding guides.

1186. The battalion will change direction to the left by the same means, at the commands:

1. *Battalion left wheel.* 2. MARCH.

1187. When the battalion shall have resumed the direct march, the guide, should it have been changed before the movement, will be returned to its former position.

1188. A column by company, in mass, will change direction in marching, by the same commands and means as a column by division. The pivot-guides will be careful not to diminish the distance of six paces, which should separate them from the preceding guides, thereby avoiding any difficulty which might arise from the pivot-flanks crowding upon one another.

2. *To change direction from a halt.*

1189. A column by company or division being in mass, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to give it a new direction, in which it is to remain, he will cause it to execute the movement by the flank of subdivisions, in the following manner:

1190. The battalion being right in front, when the colonel shall wish it to change direction by the right flank, he will indicate to the field officer in front, the point of direction to the right; this officer will immediately establish on the new direction two markers, distant from each other a little less than the front of the first subdivision, the first marker about three paces in front of the right guide of this subdivision; he will then command:

1. *Change direction by the right flank.*
2. *Fours right.*
3. MARCH.

1191. (*Pl. LI., fig. 1.*) At the first command, each chief will repair to the right of his subdivision, the chief of the first placing himself close to the first marker, and facing in the new direction.

1192. At the third command, each subdivision will wheel by fours to the right, each chief adding: *Forward, guide left.*

1193. The right guide of the first, upon the completion of the wheel, will direct himself a little to the right of the second marker; the chief will stand fast, allow the subdivision to march past him, and when its rear shall approach, he will form it in line to the left, and dress it by the left against the markers.

1194. The other subdivisions will direct their march so as to enter the new direction parallel with the first, and as each arrives directly in rear of the one next preceding, it will be formed in line to the left, and be dressed to the left. Each chief will halt when opposite the left guide of the preceding subdivision, and allow his own to march past him.

1195. (*Pl. LI., fig. 2.*) The change by the left flank will be similarly executed, substituting in the command *left* for *right*. The chiefs will each accompany the leading guide, and when opposite their places they will form line to the right and dress by the left.

1196. If the left be in front, the change of direction will be effected by the same commands, but the subdivisions will, in each instance, be dressed by the right.

1197. The field officer, at the head of the column, will assure the position of the guides, placing himself in their rear as they successively arrive.

1198. The field officer in rear, the junior major, the adjutant, and sergeant-major, will follow the

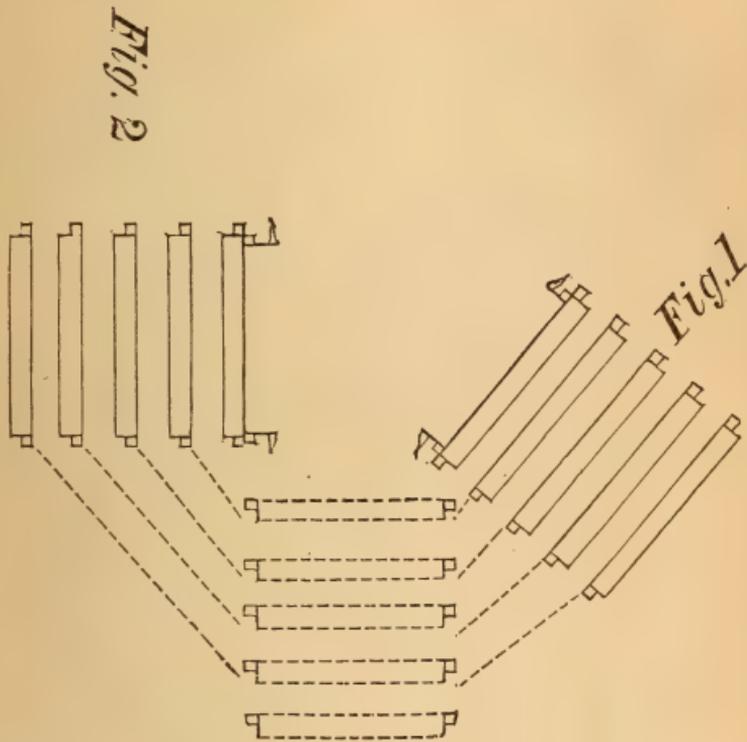


Fig. 1. Change direction by the right flank. No. 1191.

Fig. 2. Change direction by the left flank. No. 1195.



movement, each in rear or front of his own sub-division.

1199. By this method there is no direction that may not be given to a column in mass.

#### ARTICLE SIXTH.

##### *Deployment of column in mass.*

1200. A column in mass may be formed into line of battle:

1. Faced to the front, by deployment.
2. Faced to the rear by wheeling about by fours, and deployment.
3. Faced to the right, or faced to the left, by a change of direction by the flank, or wheeling and deployment.

1201. A column by division being in mass, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the first division, he will command:

1. *On the first division deploy column.*
2. *Fours left.*
3. MARCH.

1202. (*Pl. LII., fig. 1.*) At the first command, the markers will be established three paces in front of the first division, opposite its right and left files.

1203. At the second command, the left guide of the right company of the first division will place himself on the line of markers, and the chief will align the division by the right; the other chiefs will hasten to the left of their divisions.

1204. At the third command, the rear divisions will wheel by fours to the left, each chief adding: FORWARD. *Guide right.*

1205. The chief of the second division will halt opposite the left guide of the first, and when the right of his division shall approach him, he will command:

1. *Second division.*
2. *Fours right.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.
5. *Guide right.*

1206. The third command will be given the instant the front rank of the rear four shall be abreast with the chief; the division having arrived at three paces from the line of battle, the chief will command:

1. *Second division.* 2. HALT.

1207. At the command *halt*, the left guides of both companies will place themselves on the line covering the markers, so as to be opposite one of the three left files of their companies; the chief will at the same time place himself by the side of the front-rank man on the left of the first division; which being done, he will command:

*Right—DRESS.*

1208. The chief and the junior captain will each align the company on his left, and then command, FRONT.

1209. The guides of the third, fourth, and fifth divisions will march abreast and parallel with the second; the chief of the third will halt in his own person at the command *forward* from the chief of the second, and when the right of his division shall approach him he will command: *Third division. Fours right. MARCH. FORWARD. Guide right*, and conduct it to within three paces of the line of battle, when he will halt it, and align it by the right as prescribed for the second.

1210. The chief of the fourth will halt at the command *forward* from the chief of the third, and both the chiefs of the fourth and fifth divisions will conform to what has been explained for the chief of the third.

1211. The movement ended, the colonel will command.

*Guides—POSTS.*

1212. The deployment to the right of the first division will be executed according to the same princi-

ples, the colonel commanding: *Fours right* instead of *fours left*. The right guides will indicate the line of battle, and each division will be dressed to the left.

1213. Should the battalion be in march, at the first command of the colonel the field officer at the head of the column will hasten to the front to establish the markers.

1214. The first division having arrived at three paces from the line of battle, the colonel will command *march*, at which the chief of the first division will halt it, and align it by the right or left, according to the movement.

1215. Should the colonel wish to deploy the column to the left, on the fifth division, he will command:

1. *On the fifth division deploy column.*
2. *Fours left.*
3. MARCH.

1216. (*Pl. LII., fig. 2.*) At the first command, the markers will be established three paces in front of the first division.

1217. At the second command, the general guide at the head of the column will move at a run and place himself, covering the markers, a little beyond the point where the left of the first division shall rest when in line of battle.

1218. At the third command, all the divisions except the fifth will wheel by fours to the left, each chief adding: FORWARD—*Guide right*; the chief of the first division will direct himself three paces within the general guide; the chief of the fourth will halt opposite the left of the fifth, and will command: 1. *Fourth division.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH. 4. HALT, as soon as that division is unmasked.

1219. The chief of the fifth division, when he sees it about unmasked, will command: 1. *Fifth division.* 2. *Forward.* 3. *Guide right.* 4. MARCH, and when at three paces from the line of battle, he will halt it

and align it by the right against the markers. The left guide of the right company, at the command *halt*, will place himself on the line of markers.

1220. The chief of the third division will conform to what has been explained for the chief of the fourth, and each division will be conducted to the line of battle as explained for the fifth. The chief of the first division will dress his division as soon as the second arrives on the line.

1221. Should the colonel desire to deploy the column on an interior division, he will command:

1. *On (such) division deploy column.*
2. *Fours right and left.*
3. MARCH.

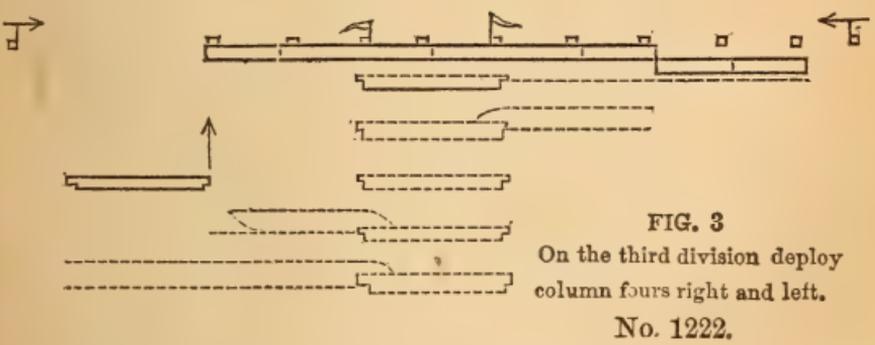
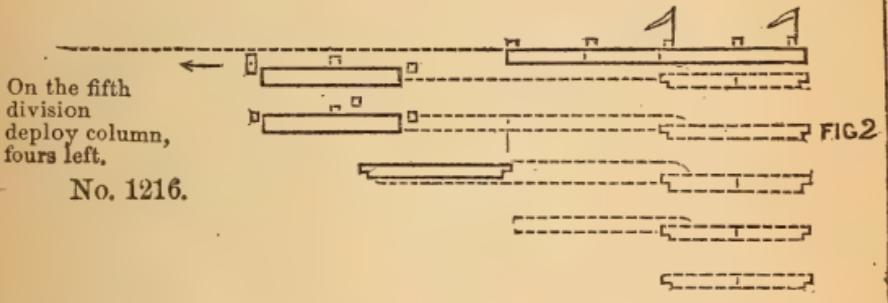
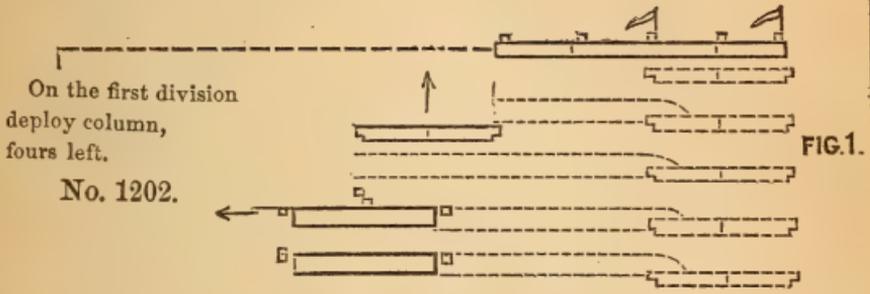
1222. (*Pl. LII., fig. 3.*) At the first command, the markers will be established three paces in front of the first division, and the general guide at the head of the column will go to the point where the right of the first division will rest when in line of battle.

1223. At the command *march*, the divisions in front of the one designated will deploy to the right, as explained for deploying on the fifth division; those in rear will deploy to the left, as if deploying on the first division. The designated division, as soon as unmasked, will be conducted to the line of battle with the guide on the same flank as when in column, toward which flank it will be dressed against the markers; the other divisions will be dressed, those in front to the left; those in rear to the right.

1224. Should the colonel command *Fours left and right*, the leading divisions will deploy to the left, and those in rear to the right.

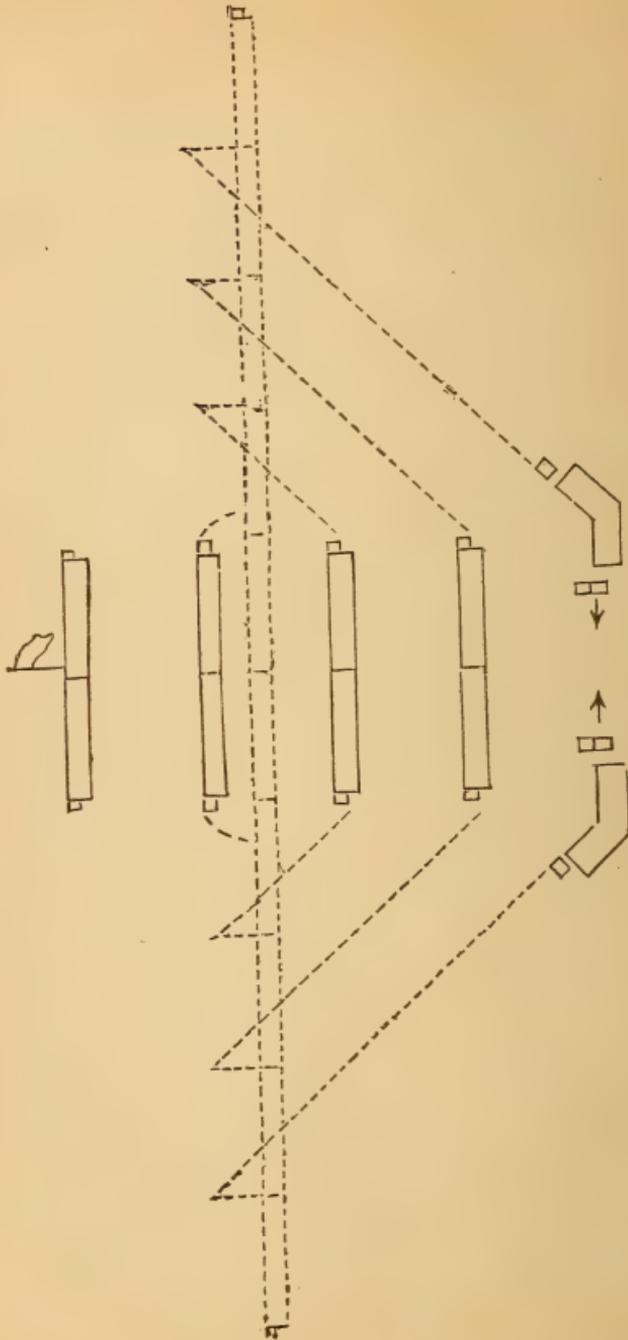
1225. Should the colonel desire to deploy the column faced to the rear, without first causing it to wheel about by fours, he will add to the command *face to the rear* after *deploy column*.

1226. The movement will be executed as already









Double column at half distance. No. 1231.

explained, except that each division will march three paces beyond the line of battle and wheel about by fours, after which it will be dressed toward the point of rest.

*Remarks on the deployment of columns closed in mass.*

1227. Deployments will always be made on lines parallel and perpendicular to the line of battle; the colonel, therefore, having decided in his own mind where the line of battle is to be established, will conduct the column so that the front of each subdivision, when the deployment commences, shall be parallel to that line.

1228. It is of the greatest importance that in all deployments the files should maintain accurately their distances, to which the file-closers will pay especial attention. Should distances be lost, the instant the divisions are formed in line the files will close in toward *the point of rest*, or the side toward which the division is to be dressed. The chief of the next division in rear will hold himself opposite the flank of the preceding division after the files have closed in, so that when his division shall form line it may be conducted squarely to the line of battle.

ARTICLE SEVENTH.

*To ploy the battalion into double column.*

1229. This movement consists in ploying the corresponding companies of the right and left wings into column at company distance, or in mass in rear of the two centre companies of the battalion.

1230. The colonel, wishing to form double column at company distance, the battalion being at a halt, will command :

1. *Double column at half distance.*
2. *Fours left and right.*
3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1231. (*Pl. LIII.*) At the first command, the chief of the centre division will command : 1. *First division.*

2. *Forward*. 3. *Guide right*, and the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies.

1232. At the second command, the captains in the right and left wings will go to the left and right of their respective companies.

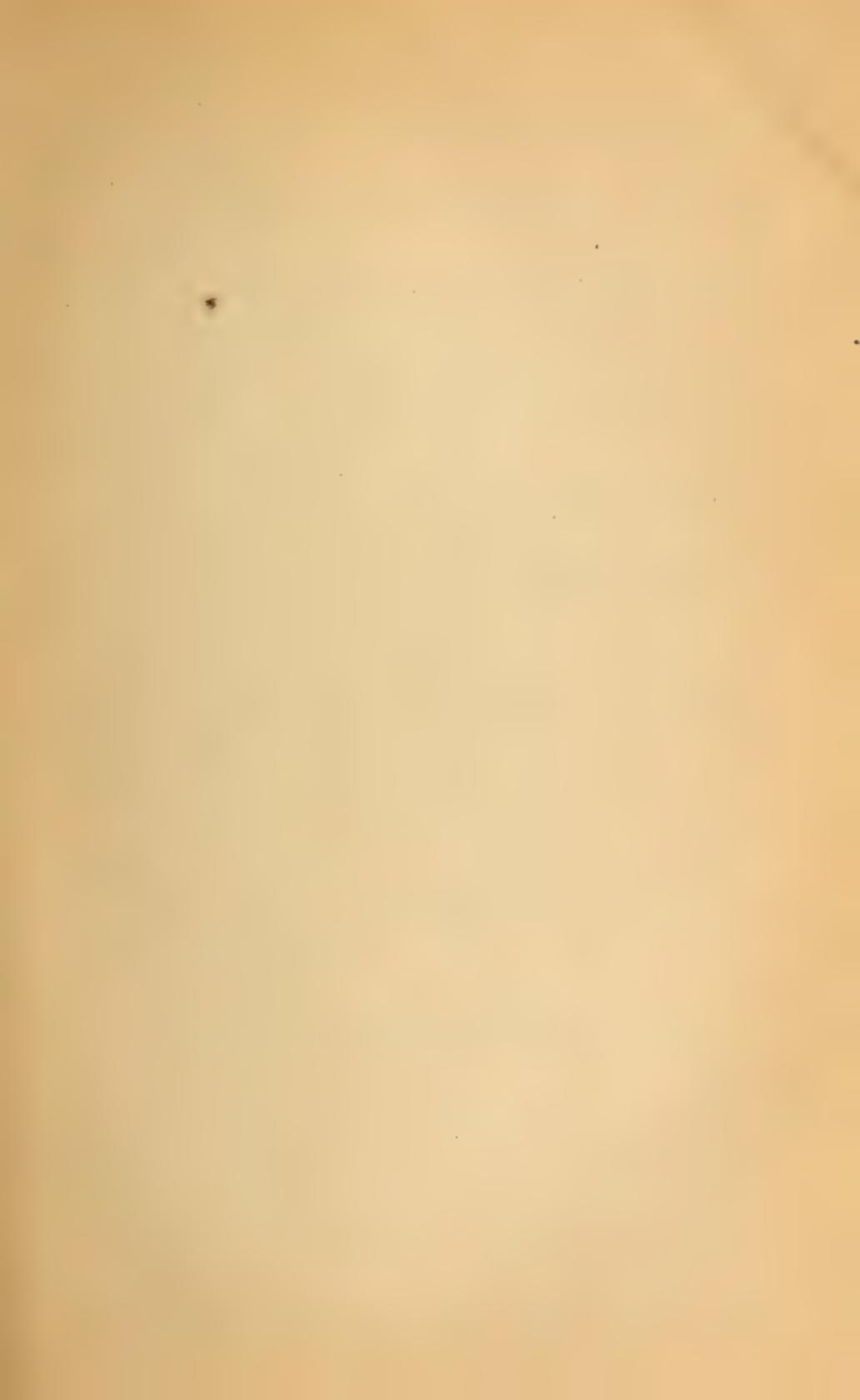
1233. At the third command, the first or color division will march company distance and three paces to the front, at the gait indicated, when it will be halted and dressed to the right; its chief placing himself two paces in front of the centre, after having commanded *Front*.

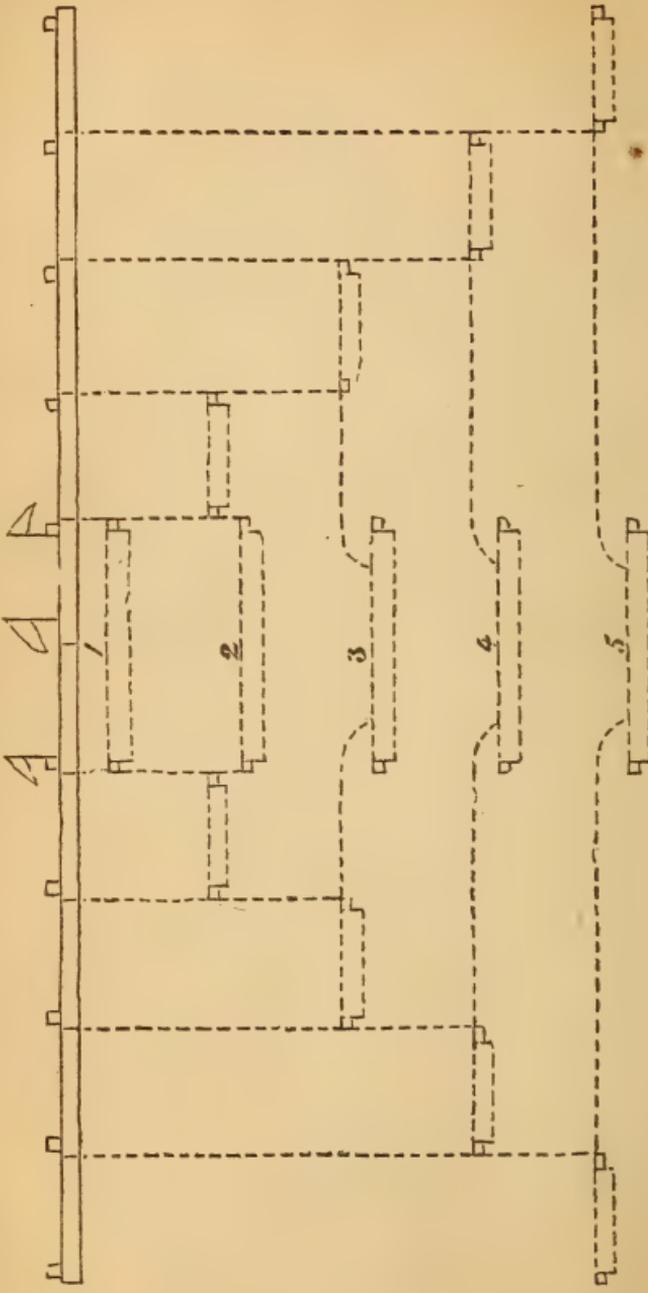
1234. The companies of the right wing will wheel by fours to the left, each captain commanding: 1. FORWARD. 2. *Guide right*, upon the completion of the wheel. The one next to the centre division will march parallel with the line of battle, and will ploy in rear of the right centre company; the others will break to the rear, and each will ploy at company distance in rear of the one next toward the centre of the battalion.

1235. The companies of the left wing will wheel by fours to the right, and ploy similarly in rear of the left centre company.

1236. Each captain will place himself by the side of his leading guide, and when the heads of two corresponding companies are about to unite, the captain of the right company will command: 1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Fours right*. 3. MARCH. 4. HALT; and the captain of the left: 1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Fours left*. 3. MARCH. 4. HALT. The junior captain will then place himself in the interval between the companies, and the senior captain will go to the right of the division, and having established the guide at company distance in rear of the one preceding, will align the division by the right, command FRONT, and place himself before its centre.

1237. The field officer of the right wing will rectify the position of the guides.





Deploy column, fours right and left. No. 1244.

1238. The guide of the double column will habitually be right, and the field officers will take post on its right flank.

1239. To form double column in mass, the colonel will command :

1. *Double column in mass.* 2. *Fours left and right.*
3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1240. The color-division will advance nine paces, and the other companies will ploy each six paces in rear of the one preceding.

1241. If the battalion be in march, at the command *march* from the colonel, the color-division will continue to advance, and will be halted at company distance and three paces, or at nine paces, according as the column is to be formed at half distance or in mass.

1242. The double column being formed, the right marker of the right wing, and the left marker of the left wing, will place themselves in rear of the right and left flanks of the first division.

#### ARTICLE EIGHTH.

*Deployment of the double column, faced to the front.*

1243. The colonel, wishing to deploy the double column, will command :

1. *Deploy column.* 2. *Fours right and left.* 3.
- MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1244. (*Pl. LIV.*) At the first command, the field officer at the head of the column will post the two markers in front of the first division, their left and right arms resting on the breasts of the right and left files; the general guides will at the same time go to the points a little beyond where the right and left of the battalion will rest.

1245. At the command *march* the captains of the

color-division will each align his own company by the right; the captain of the right company will then step into the rear rank, to enable the captain of the company next to the right to align his company by the left.

1246. The other companies of the right wing will deploy by the right flank, and be dressed by the left, the right guides marking the line of battle. The companies of the left wing will deploy by the left flank, and be dressed by the right, the left guides indicating the line of battle.

1247. The movement ended, the colonel will command: *Guides—Posts.*

1248. If the battalion be in march, at the third command of the colonel, the chief of the color-division will halt it; the deployment will be completed as at a halt.

#### ARTICLE NINTH.

*Deployment of the double column to the right or left.*

1249. The double column being at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to deploy it to the right, he will command:

1. *Right into line wheel.*
2. *Left companies on the right into line.*
3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1250. (*Pl. LV.*) At the first command, the captains of the right companies will caution them to wheel to the right; the left guide of the leading right company will place himself on the line of the right guides, facing to them and so as to be opposite one of the three left files of his company; the captains of the left companies will command:

1. (such) *Company forward.*
2. *Guide right.*

1251. At the command *march*, briskly repeated, the right companies will execute *to the right into line*;

Right into line wheel. Left companies on the right into line.  
No. 1250.

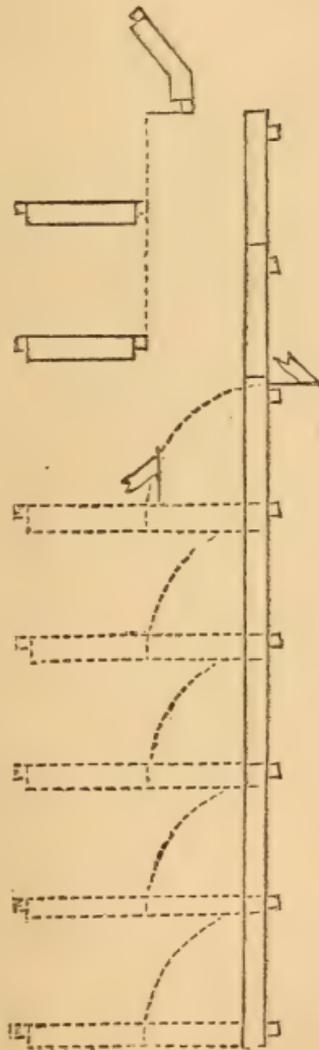






Fig. 1. To half distance close column. No. 1258.

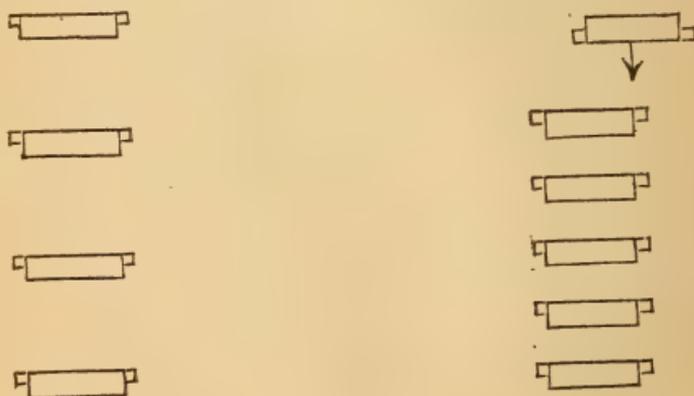
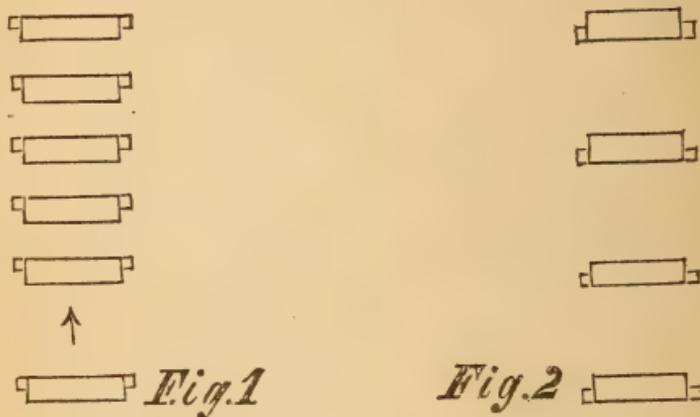


Fig. 2. On rear company to half distance, close column. No. 1271.

the left companies will step off, and as each arrives opposite the right of its interval in line, its captain will command: *Right turn—MARCH.*

1252. Arrived at three paces from the line, the company will be halted and dressed to the right, the left guide indicating the line of battle.

1253. The field officer of the left wing will assure the position of the guides of the left companies.

1254. The movement ended, the colonel will command:

### *Guides—POSTS.*

1255. To form to the left into line, the colonel will first command: *Guide left,* and then

1. *Left into line, wheel.*
2. *Right companies on the left into line.*

1256. In either movement the general guide in rear of the companies which execute *on the right* or *left into line*, will move at a run, and place himself on the line of battle, outside the point where the left or right flank will rest.

## PART FIFTH.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

*To close the column to half distance or in mass.*

1257. A column by company being at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to close it to half distance, he will command:

1. *To half distance close column.*
2. *MARCH (or double time—MARCH).*

1258. (*Pl. LVI., fig. 1.*) At the first command, the captain of the leading company will caution it to stand fast.

1259. At the command *march*, which will be repeated by all of the captains, except the captain of

the leading company, this company will stand fast, and its chief will align it by the left; the file-closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

1260. All the other companies will step off, and as each in succession arrives at half distance from the one which precedes it, its captain will halt it, and having established the guide, will dress it by the left; the file-closers, at the command *halt*, will close to one pace.

1261. The colonel, on the side of the guides, will superintend the movement, observing that each captain halts his company exactly at half distance.

1262. The field officer at the head of the column will assure the position of the guides, placing himself in their rear as they successively arrive.

1263. The rear field officer will follow the movement abreast with the last company.

1264. If the column be in march, it will close in quick time by the same commands; at the command *march*, the leading company will halt and be dressed to the left.

1265. Should the command be *double time*, the leading company will continue the march in quick time; the others will close at double time, each resuming the quick time upon arriving at half distance.

1266. If the battalion be marched in double time, at the first command, the captain of the leading company will command, *quick time*; the chiefs of the other companies will caution them to continue the march.

1267. At the command *march*, the leading company will march in quick time, the others will close at double time, each taking the quick step upon arriving at half distance.

1268. If, during the execution of the movement, the colonel should wish to arrest the march, he will command: 1. *Column*. 2. HALT, at which command only those companies will halt which have arrived at half distance.

1269. If the left be in front, the companies will be dressed by the right, and *generally* on the march the subdivisions will dress toward the side of the guide.

*To close the column on the rearmost company.*

1270. The column being right in front, and at a halt, to close it to half distance on the rear company, the colonel will command :

1. *On rear company—to half distance close column.*
2. *Fours right about.* 3. MARCH. 4. FORWARD.
5. *Guide right.*

1271. (*Pl. LVI., fig. 2.*) At the third command, the captain of the rear company will dress it to the left; the file-closers at the same time will close to one pace.

1272. The other companies will wheel about by fours, and march to the rear with the guide to the right; the guide of the company next to the rear, now leading, will direct himself on the third file from the left to the rear company.

1273. When the company next to the rear arrives precisely at half distance, the captain will command :

1. (such) *Company.* 2. *Fours right about.* 3. MARCH.
4. HALT.

1274. At the command *halt*, the guide will face to the rear, and having been established, the captain will align his company by the left, and resume his place in column.

1275. The other companies will close in the same manner.

1276. The field officer at the rear of the column will assure the position of the guides, placing himself for this purpose in their rear as they successively arrive.

1277. The movement ended, the colonel will command :

*Guides about—FACE.*

1278. The column being in march, will close to half distance on the rear company by the same commands and means; the rear company will halt and be dressed to the left at the command *march*.

1279. If the left be in front, or the guides right, the colonel will command *fours left* instead of *fours right about*.

1280. To close in mass, the colonel will command:

1. *Column close in mass.* 2. MARCH; or, 1. *On rear company (or division), column close in mass.* 2. *Fours right (or left) about.* 3. MARCH. 4. FORWARD. 5. *Guide right (or left).*

1281. The movement will be executed precisely as in closing to half distance, except that the distance between the guides will be six paces.

#### ARTICLE SECOND.

*Being in column at half distance, or in mass, to take distances.*

1282. A column by company, being at half distance or in mass, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to take distances, by the head of the column, and to continue the march, he will command:

1. *By the head of column take wheeling distance.*
2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1283. At the first command, the captain of the leading company will command:

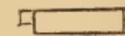
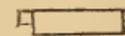
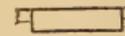
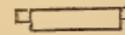
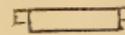
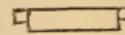
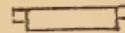
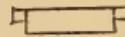
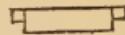
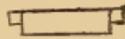
1. (such) *Company forward.* 2. *Guide left.*

1284. At the second command, briskly repeated by the captain of the leading company, this company will put itself in march.

1285. When the company next in rear shall nearly have its distance, its captain will command:

1. (such) *Company forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).





By the head of column take wheeling distance. No. 1291.

1286. At the command *march*, which will be pronounced the instant this company shall have its wheeling distance, it will step off smartly, taking the step from the preceding company. Each of the other companies will execute successively what has just been prescribed for the second.

1287. If the column be marching in quick time, at the command *march* from the colonel, all the companies, except the leading one, will be halted by their captains, and each will again be put in march when it shall have its wheeling distance.

1288. If the column be marching in double time, at the command *march*, the leading company will continue in this gait, the others will take the quick step, and each will resume the double time, as soon as it shall be at wheeling distance.

1289. The colonel will hold himself near the flank of each company as it is about to step off.

1290. The field officer, at the head of the column, will direct the leading guide; the other field officers, the adjutant, and sergeant-major, will follow the movement, each abreast with his own subdivision.

1291. (*Pl. LVII.*) If, instead of continuing the march, the colonel should wish to form line of battle, either to the right or the left, with one flank resting at the point occupied by the right or left file of the rear company, he will change the guide, if not already there, to the flank toward which he may wish to form the line, and then send the general guide at the head of the column, to a point a little beyond where the other extremity of the line will rest; this general guide will place himself facing to and on the exact prolongation of the guides of the column; which being done, the colonel will give the same commands as in the preceding case.

1292. At the command *march*, the leading guide will direct himself upon the general guide, and the

others in succession will follow accurately in his trace.

1293. When the rear company shall nearly have its distance, the colonel will command:

1. *Column.* 2. HALT.

1294. The command *halt* will be given the instant the rear company shall have its distance.

1295. Should the colonel desire to form line of battle with one flank resting near the head of the column, he will first command: 1. *Fours right (or left) about—* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. He will then cause it to take distances by the head of column, as before.

1296. In a column left in front, distances will be taken in the same manner as when right in front, except that the companies will be put in march with the guide to the right.

1297. A column by division, either at half distance or in mass, will take distances by the same commands and means as a column by company. If in mass, and the colonel should wish to take but half distance, his commands will be: 1. *By the head of column take half distance.* 2. MARCH.

1298. The divisions will each be put in march, when they shall be at half distance from the one preceding.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

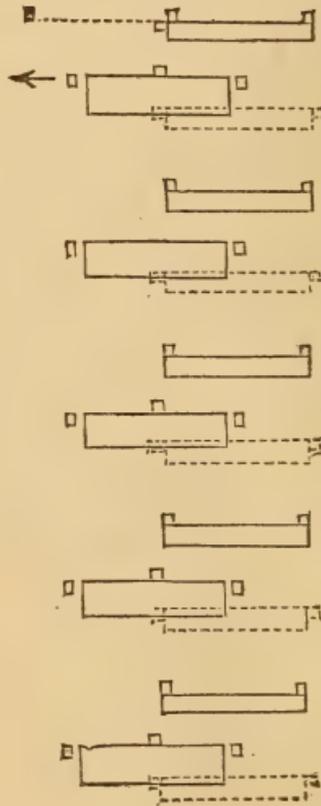
##### *To form line from column at half distance.*

1299. To form the column at half distance to the right or left into line, the colonel will first cause it to take wheeling distance, and then give the same command as when at full distance. A column in mass may be formed into line in the same manner.

1300. A column at half distance will be formed front into line by deployment, the same as a column in mass.



Form divisions, rear companies. Fours left. No. 1302.



## ARTICLE FOURTH.

*Being in column by company, in mass, to form divisions.*

1301. The column being in mass, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form divisions, he will command:

1. *Form divisions.* 2. *Rear companies.* 3. *Fours left.* 4. MARCH.

1302. (*Pl. LVIII.*) At the third command, the captain of each rear company will place himself directly in front of his left guide, facing to the left, so that the files on the marching flank of fours shall graze his left arm in passing. The right and left guides of the front companies will face to the right, and place their right arms lightly against the breasts of the right and left files of their companies.

1303. At the command *march*, the rear companies will wheel by fours to the left, the captains adding: 1. FORWARD. 2. *Guide right*; each captain will stand fast, and when the right file of his company arrives opposite his interval, he will command:

1. (such) *Company.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH. 4. HALT.

1304. At the command *halt*, the left guide will place himself so as to be opposite one of the three left files of his company, and covering the guides of the company in front; the captain will place himself on the left of the front rank of this company, and then command:

1305. 1. *Right—DRESS.* 2. FRONT, and remain in his place.

1306. The colonel seeing the divisions formed, will command:

*Guides—POSTS.*

1307. At this, the guides will return to their places; the guide in the centre, if a first sergeant, will place

himself in the interval between the two companies in the rear rank; if a second sergeant, he will retire to the line of file-closers.

1308. The junior captains will place themselves in the interval between the companies in the front rank, and the senior captains will take post two paces in front of the centre of their divisions. The junior captains, if in the interval, at the command *guides posts*, will step to the front, so as to enable the centre guides to return to their places.

1309. If the left be in front, the rear companies will wheel by fours to the right; the chiefs, as their companies march past them, will command: 1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Fours left*. 3. MARCH. 4. HALT. 5. *Left—DRESS*. 6. FRONT. The guides of the front companies will face to the left.

1310. If the column be at full or half distance, the commands of the colonel will be the same; but each rear company, after having marched past its captain, instead of halting, will be marched to the front with the guide to the right or left, will be halted at the distance of three paces from the front company, and then dressed by the right or left, according to the movement.

1311. Should the column be marching right in front either at full or half distance, to form divisions, the colonel will command:

1. *Form divisions*. 2. *Right oblique*. 3. MARCH.

1312. At the second command, the chiefs of the front companies will caution their companies to oblique to the right; the chiefs of the rear companies caution them to continue the march.

1313. At the command *march*, each leading company will oblique to the right, lengthening the step slightly if at half distance, and shortening it if at full distance; its chief will hold himself opposite the right guide of the rear company, and when the left file of

his company shall have unmasked this guide, he will command :

1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Mark time*. 3. MARCH.

1314. At this, the company will cease to oblique, and will mark time.

1315. In the mean time, the rear companies will have marched straight to the front, and when the companies join, the colonel will command :

1. *Forward*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left*.

1316. If the left be in front, divisions will be formed left oblique by the commands :

1. *Form divisions*. 2. *Left oblique*. 3. MARCH. 4. *Forward*. 5. MARCH. 6. *Guide right*.

1317. In columns in mass, divisions will always be formed from a halt.

#### ARTICLE FIFTH.

*To break from column by division into column by company.*

1318. Being in column by division, at full or half distance, right in front, and on the march, to break into column by company, the colonel will command :

1. *By the right, break into companies*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left*.

1319. At the first command, the chiefs of the right companies will caution them to continue the march ; the captains of the left companies will each command :

1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Mark time*.

1320. At the second command, the right companies will continue to march straight to the front ; the left companies will mark time, and the instant they are disengaged from the right companies will oblique to the right by the commands from their chiefs :

1. *Right oblique*. 2. MARCH.

1321. Each company will oblique to the right till its left guide shall be directly in rear of the guide of the right company, when its captain will command : 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left.*

1322. Should the left be in front, the command will be, *By the left, break into companies* ; the right companies will mark time, and oblique to the left. The guide will be *right.*

1323. In both instances, the companies which oblique will lengthen the step if at half distance, and shorten it if at full distance.

#### ARTICLE SIXTH.

*To pass a defile in retreat by the right or left flank.*

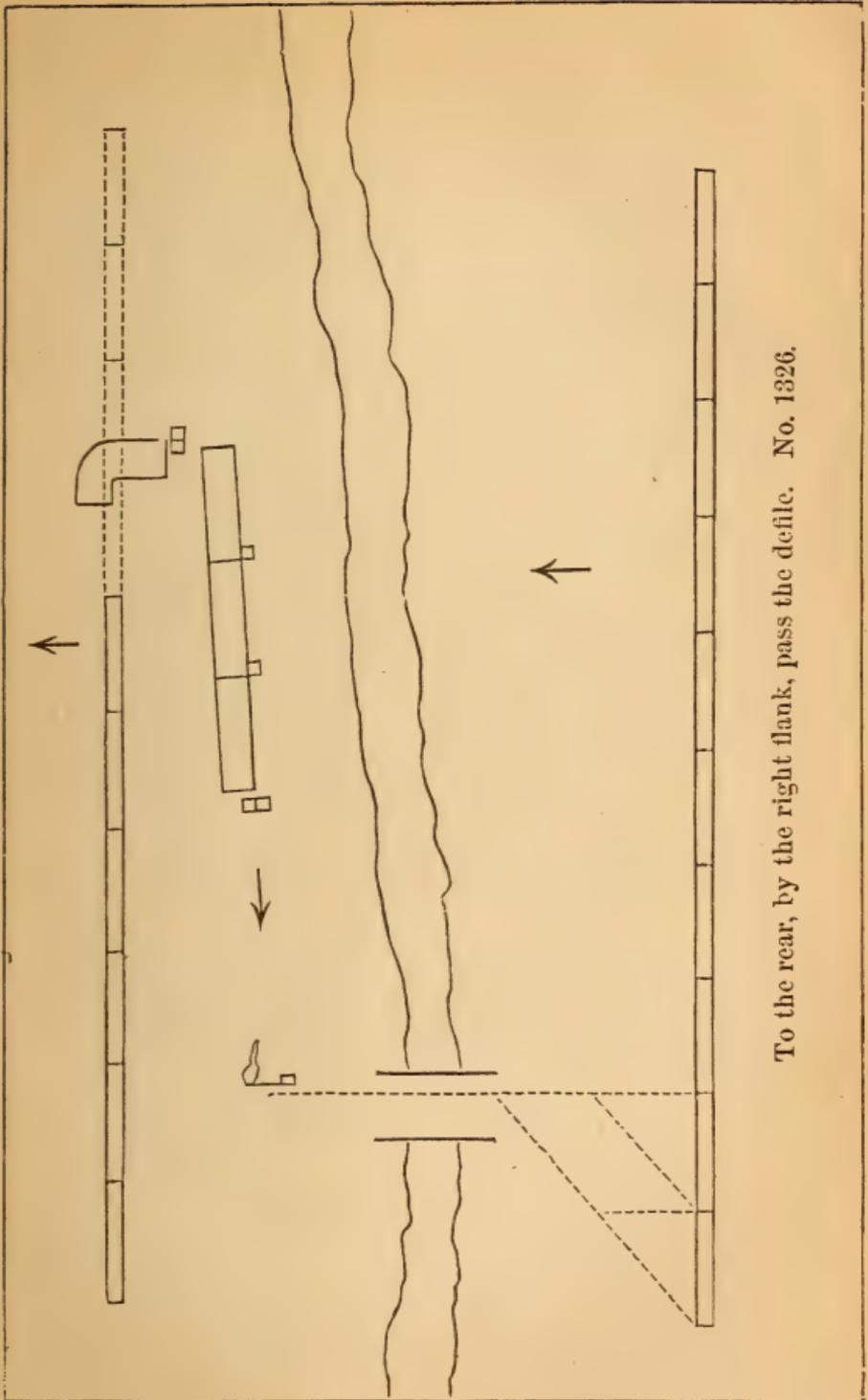
1324. When a battalion, retreating in line, shall encounter a defile which it must pass, the colonel will cause the battalion to wheel about by fours, and halt.

1325. It will be supposed that the defile is in rear of the left flank ; a marker will be stationed by the colonel fifteen or twenty paces in rear of the file-closers, to indicate the point of entrance to the defile. The colonel will then command :

*To the rear by the right flank, pass the defile.*

1326. (*Pl. LIX*). The captain of the right company will immediately command : 1 (such) *Company.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH. 4. FORWARD. 5. *Guide left.* 6. *Column right.* 7. MARCH, and placing himself by the side of his leading guide, will conduct his company three paces to the rear of the line of file-closers, and, changing direction to the right, will direct himself upon the marker, at which point he will change direction to the left and enter the defile.

1327. The captain of the second company will give the same commands as the captain of the first, the command *march* being given so that the leading four may follow immediately in the rear of the first company.



To the rear, by the right flank, pass the defile. No. 1326.



1328. The other companies will successively conform to what has been explained for the second.

1329. Should the battalion be firing, the companies will cease firing successively, each in time to follow the one next on its right.

1330. The field officer of the right wing will accompany the leading company.

1331. The colonel will remain with the left wing till all but two or three companies have commenced the movement; he will then move rapidly to the front of his battalion.

1332. The field officer of the left wing will remain with the rear company.

1333. The head of the battalion having cleared the defile, the colonel will command: 1. *Column left.* 2. MARCH; and as soon as the battalion has entered on the new direction, he will cause it to face the enemy by the commands: 1. *Fours left.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.

1334. Should but part of the battalion have entered upon the new direction, he will form it into line facing the enemy by the commands:

1. *Fours left.* 2. *Rear companies right front into line—face to the rear.* 3. MARCH.

1335. The movement will be executed by the left wing by the command: *To the rear by the left flank, pass the defile.* The captain of the left company and the others in succession will command: 1. (such) *Company.* 2. *Fours left.* 3. MARCH. 4. FORWARD. 5. *Guide right.* 6. *Column left.* 7. MARCH.

#### ARTICLE SEVENTH.

##### *Change of front.*

1336. The battalion being in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to change front forward on the right company, he will command:

1. *Change front forward on right company.* 2. *By company right half wheel.* 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*). 4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH. 6. *Guide right.*

1337. (*Pl. LX.*) At the first command, the markers will be established on a line perpendicular to the line of battle, and company distance to the right of the right company.

1338. At the second command, the captain of the right company will command: (such) *Company, right wheel*; the other captains will caution their companies, *right half wheel.*

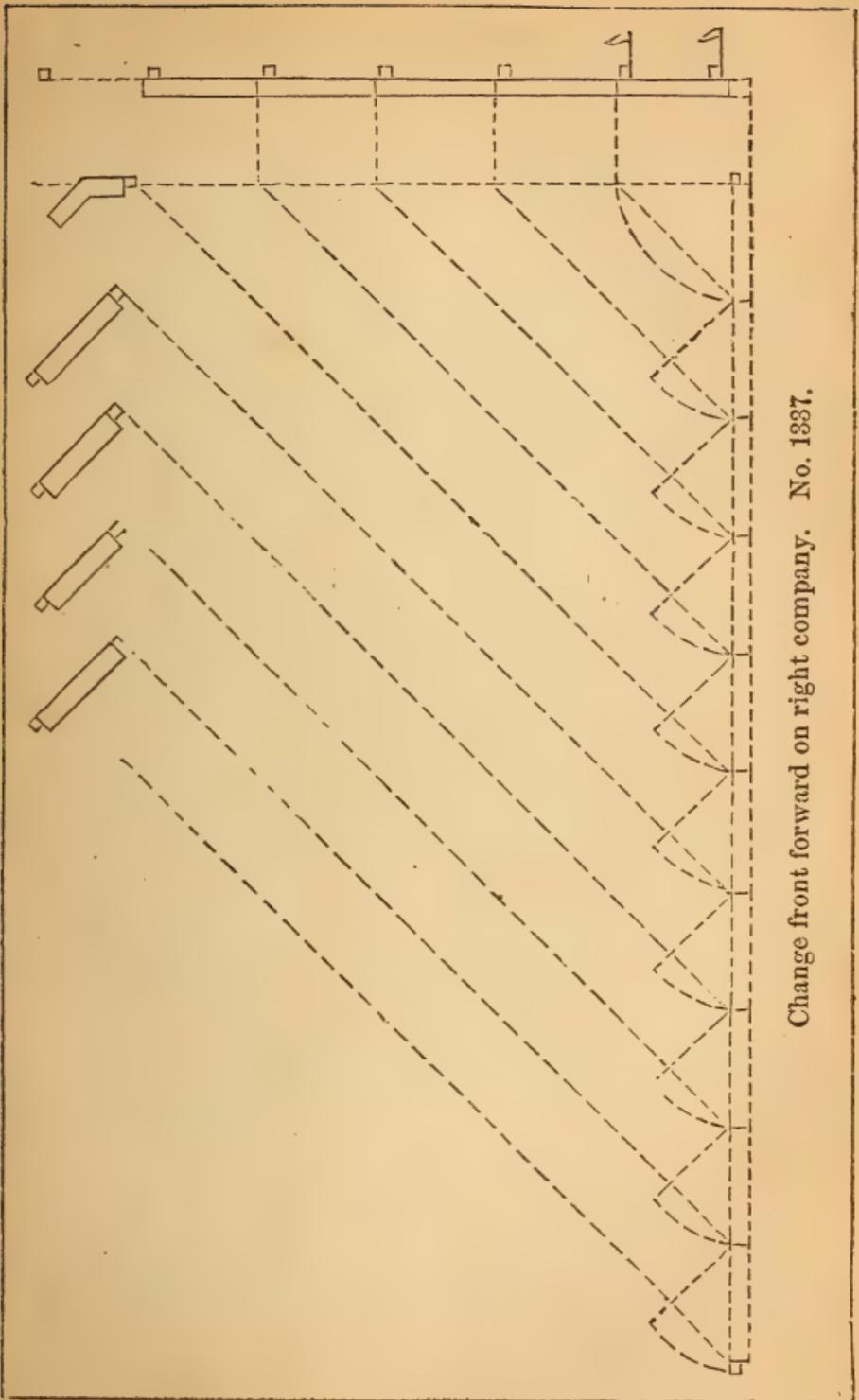
1339. At the command *march*, the right company will wheel to the right, upon the completion of which the captain will command: 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right*; the company having arrived at three paces from the line of battle, the captain will halt it and dress it to the right against the markers; at the command *halt*, the second sergeant, if the left guide, will return to the line of file-closers.

1340. The other companies will make a half wheel to the right, the second sergeant of each, if its left guide, placing himself on the left flank of the company as soon as he can pass.

1341. At the fifth command, given the instant the half wheel shall be completed, the companies will cease to wheel, and the right guides will march straight to the front.

1342. As the right of each company arrives opposite its place in line, its captain will cause it to turn to the right, and when at three paces from the line of battle he will halt and dress it to the right; the left guide, at the command *halt*, will place himself opposite one of the three left files covering the markers; the second sergeant, if the right guide, will, at the same command, return to the line of file-closers.

1343. The movement ended, the colonel will command: *Guides—Posts.*



Change front forward on right company. No. 1337.



1344. The change of front forward on the left company will be executed upon the same principles at the commands:

1. *Change front forward on left company.* 2. *By company, left half wheel.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH. 6. *Guide left.*

1345. If the battalion be in march, the same commands will be given, and the movement will be executed as at a halt.

1346. Should the colonel desire to change front forward on the right (or left) company, and to face to the left (or right), he will add, *Face to the left (or right)* to the command *Change front forward on right (or left) company.*

1347. The movement will be executed as already explained, except that the captains will not halt their companies till they shall have marched three paces beyond the line of battle; all the files having arrived in line, the captains will cause their companies to wheel by fours to the right (or left) about and halt, and will then dress them by the left (or right). The guides on the right (or left) of the companies, after having wheeled about, will indicate the line of battle.

1348. Should the colonel desire to change front to the rear of the line of battle, he will cause the battalion to wheel about by fours, and then give the commands for change of front forward.

1349. In all changes of front, each captain will command *support arms*, after the one next following commands *front*.

#### ARTICLE EIGHTH.

##### *To advance by the flank of subdivisions.*

1350. The battalion being in line of battle, either at a halt or marching, when the colonel shall wish to advance by the right of companies (or divisions), he will command:

1. *By company* (or *division*).
2. *Right forward*.
3. *Fours right*.
4. MARCH.
5. *Guide right* (*left* or *centre*).

1351. At the command *march*, each company (or division) will execute the *right forward*, *fours right*; the right guides placing themselves in front of the file on the marching flank of the leading four, the captains (or chiefs of division) on their left.

1352. At the fifth command, the guides of companies will dress toward the right, left, or color-company (or division), taking care to preserve the interval necessary to form front into line.

1353. *Left forward*, *fours left*, will be similarly executed.

1354. To retire by the flank of subdivisions, the colonel will first cause the battalion to wheel about by fours, and then give the commands for advancing.

1355. In the march by the flank of subdivisions, the lieutenant-colonel and senior major will march six paces outside the column, abreast with the chiefs of subdivision; they will be covered by the adjutant and sergeant-major, who will march abreast with the rear guides; the junior major will follow twelve paces in rear of the color-company (or division).

1356. The colonel will give his attention to the interval between guides, and will go wherever his presence may be necessary.

1357. The battalion advancing by the flank of companies (or divisions) will be formed in line by the commands:

1. *By company* (or *division*).
2. *Right* (or *left*) *front into line*.
3. MARCH.
4. *Guide centre*.

1358. At the command *march*, each company (or division) will execute the front into line.

1359. At the command *guide centre*, the color and general guides will advance six paces and the captains

will place themselves on the flank of their companies most remote from the centre of the battalion.

1360. The battalion marching by the flank of companies (or divisions) may be formed in column by company (or division) by the commands :

1. *Fours right* (or *left*).
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

1361. The battalion, marching in column of fours, to march by the flank of companies (or divisions) to the right (or left), the colonel will command :

1. *By company* (or *division*).
2. *Column right* (or *left*).
3. MARCH.
4. *Guide right* (*left* or *centre*).

1362. To resume the march in column of fours to the right (or left), the colonel will command :

1. *By company* (or *division*).
2. *Column right* (or *left*).
3. MARCH.

1363. If by division, each captain will go to the head of his own company as soon as the divisions unite.

1364. The colonel may cause the battalion to advance by the right or left of wings, and re-form the line as explained for companies, substituting in the command *wing* for *company*.

1365. In executing the front into line by wing, the companies will execute the movement as explained for the battalion ; the leading company of each wing, at the command *march*, will advance company distance and halt ; the movement completed, the colonel will give a general alignment if necessary.

1366. The advance by the flank of subdivisions is of great utility in wooded countries, and will be frequently practised in battalion drill.

#### ARTICLE NINTH.

##### *Formation of squares.*

1367. Squares will habitually be formed from column by division, at half distance. The colonel, there-

fore, when he desires to form square, will cause the battalion, if in line of battle, to ploy into column by division at half distance; or, if in column, he will cause divisions to be formed, and half distance to be taken.

1368. The battalion being in column by division at half distance, and at a halt, to form square, the colonel will command :

1. *Form square.* 2. *Right and left into line, wheel.*
3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1369. (*Pl. LXI.*) At the first command, the field officer at the head of the column will place himself in front of the guide of the first division; the one at the rear will place himself in front of the guide on the opposite flank; they will then assure the positions of the right and left guides upon the guides of the fourth division, who will hold their pieces inverted between the eyes; the file-closers of the fifth division will at the same time place themselves in its front, passing by the flanks.

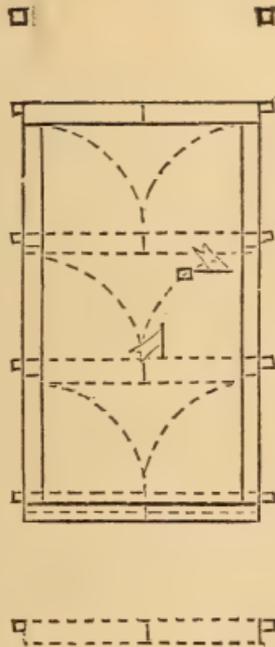
1370. At the second command, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast; the right companies of the second, third, and fourth divisions will be cautioned to wheel to the right, the left companies to the left; the chief of the fifth division will command :

1. *Fifth division forward.* 2. *Guide left.*

1371. At the command *march*, the chief of the first division will align it by the left; the files on the right and left flanks will face outward.

1372. The right and left companies of the second, third, and fourth divisions will wheel to the right and left into line, and will be dressed by the left and right.

1373. The fifth division will be put in march, and when the division shall have closed to the flanks of the companies of the fourth, it will be halted by its chief,



Form square. No. 1369.



faced about, and dressed by the right; the junior captain will place himself in the rear, now become the front rank, and will be covered by the first sergeant in the front, now become the rear rank. The division being aligned, the outer files will face outward.

1374. The movement ended, the colonel will command :

*Guides—Posts.*

1375. At this command, the field officers, the adjutant and sergeant-major, the guides, the chief of the first and fifth, and also the captains of the second, third, and fourth divisions, will enter the square. The intervals between the companies of the second and third, and third and fourth divisions will be filled by first sergeants in the front, and second sergeants in the rear rank; the color-bearer will fall back to the line of file-closers, and his place will be occupied by the color-corporal in the rear rank.

1376. If the column be in march, the square will be formed by the same commands; the leading division will halt at the command *march*; the file-closers of the fifth will pass around its flanks, and the division will be halted upon closing to its place and faced about as before.

*Oblique squares.*

1377. The battalion being in column, to form oblique square, the colonel will cause the markers to be posted for the first division on a line making an angle of forty-five degrees with its front, the first marker being opposite the right or left file of the division, according as the movement is to be made by the right or left flank. He will then cause the battalion to change direction, by the flank, after which he will form square as already explained.

1378. The battalion being in line of battle, to form oblique square on the first division, the colonel will

cause markers to be posted on a line to the right and rear making an angle of forty-five degrees with its front, the first marker being posted three paces to the right of the right file; he will then command:

1. *To form oblique square.* 2. *Column at half distance by division.* 3. *On first division, right in front.* 4. *Fours right.* 5. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

1379. (*Pl. LXII.*) At the command *march*, all the divisions will wheel by fours to the right, the first division will incline to the right at an angle of forty-five degrees; its chief will stand fast, and when the left of the division shall arrive opposite him, he will form line to the left, and dress it by the left against the markers.

1380. The other divisions will ploy at half distance in rear of the first.

1381. The ployment completed, the colonel will give the commands for forming square.

*To form square forward on the centre.*

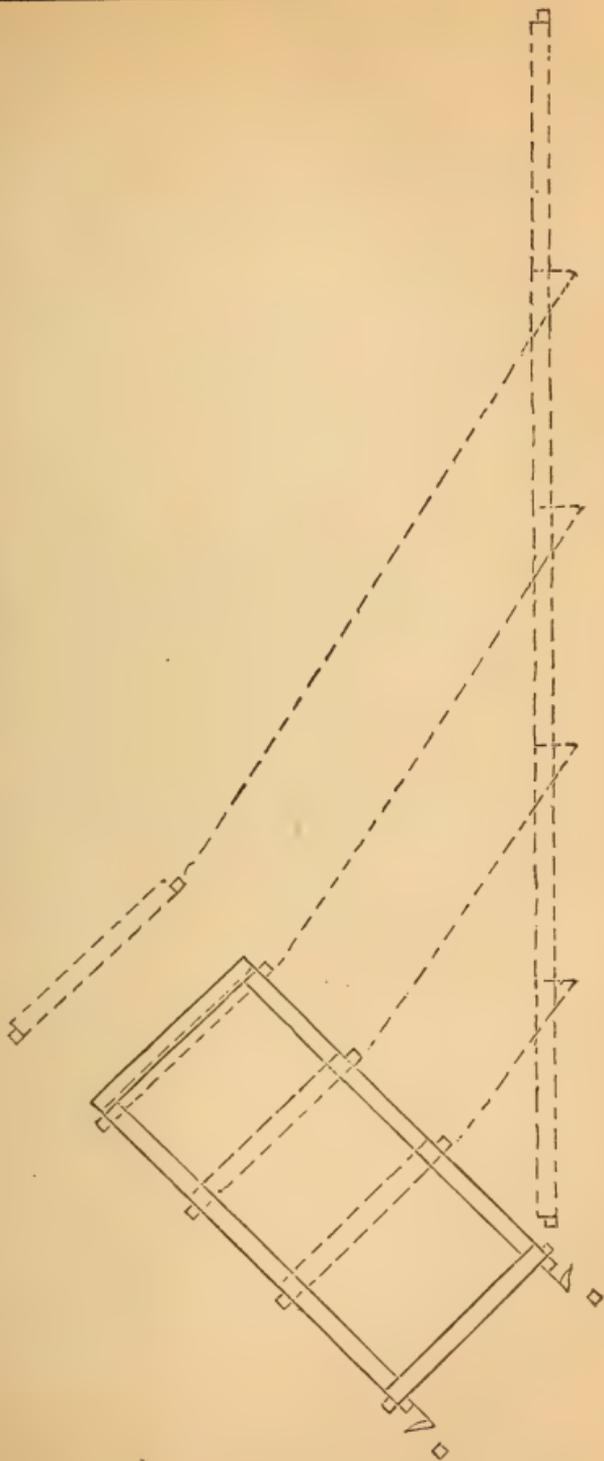
1382. The battalion being in line of battle, and at a halt, to form square forward on the centre, the colonel will command:

1. *Forward on the centre, form square.* 2. *Fours left and right.* 3. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

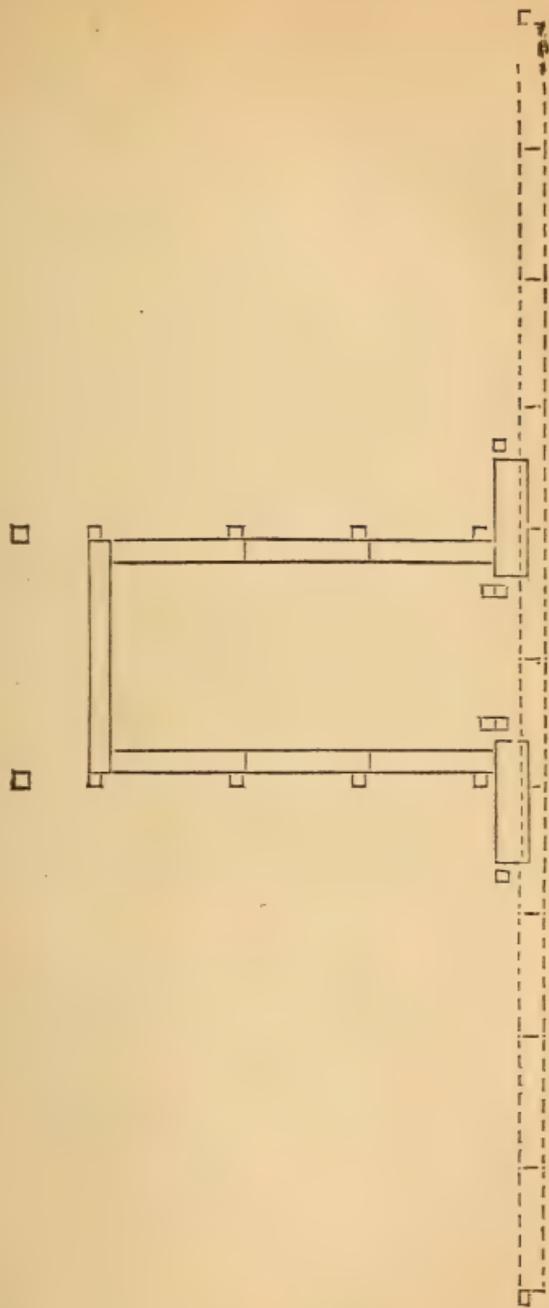
1383. (*Pl. LXIII.*) At the first command, the chief of the centre division will command: 1. *First division, forward.* 2. *Guide left.*

1384. At the third command, the centre division will march to the front; the three companies to the right will wheel by fours to the left, and will follow in column of fours in rear of its right; the three companies to its left will wheel by fours to the right, and follow in rear of its left; the two flank companies will march in column of fours toward the centre of the battalion.

Oblique square. No. 1379.







Forward on the centre, form square. No. 1883.



1385. When the rear of the third companies to the right and left of the color-division are about to enter the direction perpendicular to the line of battle, the colonel will command: 1. *Battalion*. 2. HALT.

1386. At the first command, the captains of the three companies to the right will command: (such) *Company, Fours right*; and the three to the left: (such) *Company, Fours left*.

1387. At the command *halt*, the centre division will halt and be dressed by the left; the captains of the three companies to the right and left will command *march* and *halt*, and align their companies by the left and right.

1388. The two flank companies will continue to approach each other along the line of battle; the file-closers will change to the opposite flanks, passing by the nearest interval, and when the companies are about to unite, the captain of the right will command: 1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Fours right*. 3. MARCH. 4. HALT. 5. *Company—ABOUT*. 6. FACE; and the captain of the left: 1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Fours left*. 3. MARCH. 4. HALT. 5. *Company—ABOUT*. 6. FACE; the senior captain will then align the division by the right.

1389. The movement ended, the colonel will command:

#### *Guides—Posts.*

1390. The battalion being in square, the first division will constitute the *first front*; the companies which have wheeled to the right, the *second front*; those to the left the *third front*; the fifth division will constitute the *fourth front*. The second and third fronts will be commanded by the senior captains, who will place themselves in rear of the centre of their respective fronts.

#### *To reduce square.*

1391. The colonel, wishing to reduce the square, will command:

1. *Reduce square.* 2. MARCH.

1392. (*Pl. LXIV.*) At the first command, the chief of the first division will command: 1. *First front forward.* 2. *Guide left*; the chief of the second front will command: 1. *Second front.* 2. *Fours left*; the chief of the third front will command: 1. *Third front.* 2. *Fours right.*

1393. At the command *march*, the chief of the first front will march his division company distance, and three paces to the front, halt and align it by the left.

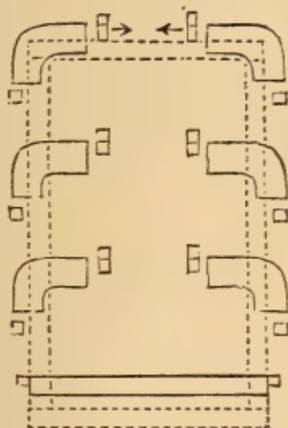
1394. The companies of the second front will change direction to the left; those in the third front to the right; the captains will conduct the heads of the companies, and, when about to unite, will command, those of the right companies: 1. (such) *Company.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH. 4. HALT; those of the left: 1. (such) *Company.* 2. *Fours left.* 3. MARCH. 4. HALT. The senior captain will then align the division by the left, and the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the companies.

1395. The chief of the fifth division will command: 1. *Fifth division*—ABOUT. 2. FACE, and align it by the left. The file-closers, at the command *face*, will pass around the flanks, and resume their places in rear of their companies. The junior captain will return to the front rank.

*Remarks on squares.*

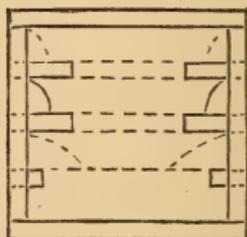
1396. For the sake of uniformity in forming square, the first division will always be dressed to the left, and the fifth, after facing about, to the right; in reducing square, all the divisions will be dressed to the left. The field officers will place themselves on the same flank of the column as before the square was formed, and the column will be put in march with the guide on that flank.

Reduce square. No. 1392.









Column against cavalry. No. 1402.

1397. In reducing the square formed forward on the centre, the field officers will place themselves on the right flank of the column.

1398. The battalion being in square, the several fronts at the commands of their chiefs will execute the fire *by front*, *by rank*, and *by file*.

1399. Before forming square, the colonel will cause bayonets to be fixed. After the square is reduced, bayonets may be unfixcd.

*Column against cavalry.*

1400. Should a battalion, in column by division in mass, be suddenly threatened by cavalry, and not have time to form square in the usual manner, it will be formed as follows :

1401. The colonel will command :

1. *Column against cavalry.* 2. MARCH.

1402. (*Pl. LXV.*) At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast, and pass behind the rear rank. In the interior divisions each captain will promptly designate the number of files necessary to close the interval between his company and the one in front of it. The captains of the division next to the one in rear, in addition to closing the interval in front, will also close up the interval which separates this division from the last. The chief of the fifth division will caution it to face about, and its file-closers will pass briskly before the front rank.

1403. At the command *march*, the guides of each division will place themselves rapidly in the line of file-closers. The first division will stand fast; the fifth will face about and the outer files of each will face outward; in the other divisions the files designated for closing intervals will form to the right and left into line; but in the division next to the rear one, the first files that come into line will close to the

right or left until they join the rear division. The files of each company which remain in column will close on their outer files formed into line, in order to leave a vacant space in the middle of the column.

1404. If the column be in march, the *column against cavalry* will be formed by the same commands and means. At the command *march*, the first and fifth divisions will halt, and the latter will face about. The interior divisions will conform to what has been prescribed above.

1405. The battalion being no longer threatened by cavalry, the colonel will command:

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH.

1406. At the command *march*, the files in column will close to the left and right to make room for those in line, who will take their places in column by stepping backward, except those closing the interval between the two rear divisions, who will close in by a side step to the left or right. The fifth division will face about, and the guides will resume their places.

1407. In the movement, should bayonets be unfixed, the men will fix them without command, at the cautionary command, *column against cavalry*, and unfix them at the command, *form column*.

#### ARTICLE TENTH.

##### *The rally.*

1408. The battalion being in line of battle, the colonel will sometimes cause the disperse to be sounded, at which signal the battalion will break and disperse.

1409. When the colonel shall wish to rally the battalion, he will cause *to the color* to be sounded, and at the same time place two markers and the color-bearer on the direction he may wish to give the battalion.

1410. Each captain will rally his company about

six paces in rear of its place in line of battle, and will then cause it to count fours.

1411. The colonel will cause the color-company to be aligned against the markers, after which the other companies will be aligned successively toward it. The right guides in the right wing and the left guides in the left will indicate the line of battle.

## PART SIXTH.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

*The battalion being in line of battle, to form it from double into single rank.*

1412. The battalion being in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to form it in single rank by the right flank, he will command:

1. *Form single rank.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH  
(or *double time—MARCH*).

1413. At the command, the battalion will wheel by fours to the right; the front rank of the leading four, conducted by the right guide of the right company, will march in prolongation of the line of battle; the other ranks will halt, and successively resume the march when at wheeling distance from the rank preceding. The rearmost rank of four having gained its distance, the colonel will command:

4. *Fours left.* 5. MARCH. 6. HALT.

1414. Single rank will be formed similarly by the left flank.

1415. Should the battalion be marching in column of fours and the colonel desire to form it in single rank, he will command:

1. *Form single rank.* 2. MARCH.

1416. At the second command the leading rank of four will continue the march; the others will halt

and successively resume the march when at wheeling distance from the rank preceding; the rearmost rank of four having its distance, the colonel will command: 3. *Fours right* (or *left*). 4. MARCH. 5. HALT.

1417. To form single rank by both flanks, the colonel will cause the battalion to wheel by fours to the right, and halt; he will then cause the left wing to face about, and give the command:

1. *Form single rank.* 2. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

1418. At the command *march*, the leading rank of four in each wing will step off, and will be followed by the other ranks successively as soon as they shall have wheeling distance.

1419. The colonel will command: 1. *Battalion.* 2. HALT, the instant single-rank distance shall have been gained; he will then cause the left wing to face about, and will form line by the commands:

3. *Fours left.* 4. MARCH. 5. HALT.

1420. The movement may be similarly executed by forming column of fours to the left, and causing the right wing to face about.

1421. Should the battalion be marching in column of fours, in quick time, and the colonel wish to take single-rank distance without forming in line, he will command:

1. *Single-rank distance.* 2. MARCH.

1422. At which the leading rank of four will continue the march; the other ranks will halt and successively resume the march when at wheeling distance.

1423. Should the battalion be marching in double time, or in quick time and the command be double time, the leading rank of four will continue or take up that gait; the other ranks will march in quick time, and take the double time when at wheeling distance.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*The battalion being in column, to form it from double into single rank.*

1424. The battalion being in column by company, right in front, to form it from double into single rank, the colonel will command:

1. *Form single rank.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH.

1425. At the third command, the companies will wheel by fours to the right, and the captains will go to the left; the front rank of each right four, upon the completion of the wheel, will continue the march; the other ranks will halt and successively resume the march when at seventy-six inches, or wheeling distance, from the rank preceding; the rearmost rank of each company having its distance, the captain will command:

1. (such) *Company.* 2. *Fours left.* 3. MARCH.  
4. HALT.

1426. The left guide will then be established, covering the guides in front, and the company will be aligned by the left.

1427. The field officer at the head of the column will see that the guides cover, and will place himself for this purpose in front of the left guide of the leading company.

1428. Should the left be in front, the colonel will command: *Fours left*, instead of *Fours right*; the companies having gained single-rank distance, will be formed in line to the right and be dressed to the right.

1429. The column by division will be formed in single rank by the same commands as the column by company; the chiefs of division giving the commands explained for captains of companies.

## ARTICLE THIRD.

*To form the column of fours in double ranks front into line in single rank.*

1430. The battalion being in column of fours, in double ranks, to form it right front into line, in single rank, the colonel will command:

1. *In single rank.* 2. *Right front into line.* 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1431. At the second command, the captain of the leading company will command: 1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Single-rank distance*; the other captains will command: 1. *Column half right.* 2. (such) *Company*. 3. *Single-rank distance.*

1432. At the command *march*, the leading company will take single-rank distance, upon the completion of which the captain will command: 1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Right front into line.* 3. MARCH; the markers will be established at company distance from the head of the company, after it shall have taken its single-rank distance.

1433. The other companies will each break to the right, and take single-rank distance, the movement being completed as in double ranks.

1434. Single rank left front into line will be similarly executed.

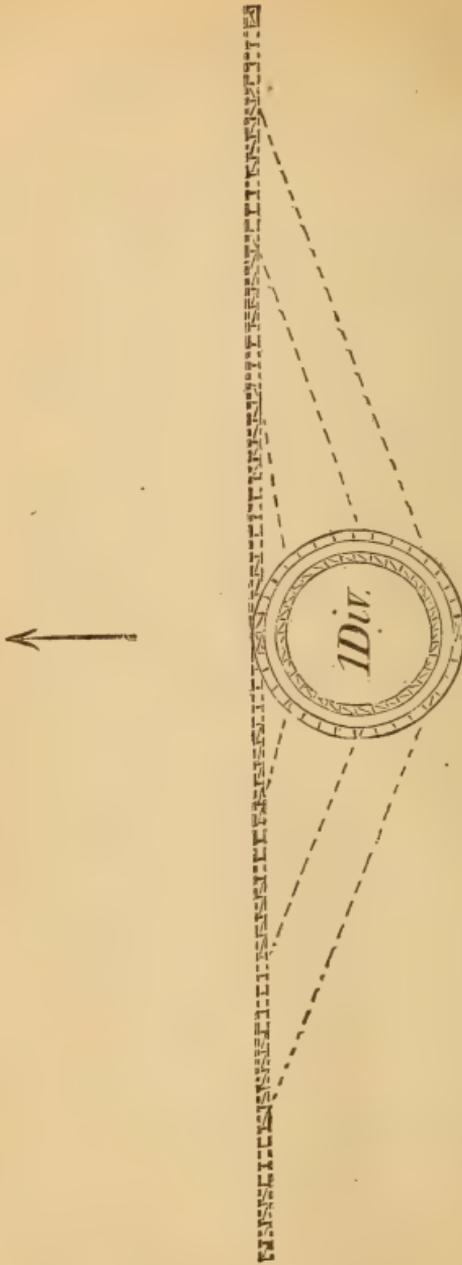
1435. Should the colonel desire the line to face to the rear, he will add to the command, *face to the rear*, after *front into line*.

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

*Movements of the battalion in single rank.*

1436. The battalion being in single rank, will operate offensively or defensively, and will execute all the movements explained for double ranks by the same commands and means.





Rally by divisions, No. 1439.

1437. In the march by the flank, the file-closers will give their constant attention to the preservation of wheeling distance between the ranks of four, which is of the utmost importance to maintain.

1438. The battalion being in line of battle, and threatened by cavalry, the colonel will command:

*Rally by divisions.*

1439. (*Pl. LXVI.*) At this command, the right company of each division will face to the left; the left company to the right, and will close in quick time on the centre, forming a circle to the rear, in two ranks, the front-rank men in front.

1440. In firing, the officers will use every precaution to prevent the men on the opposite arcs of adjacent circles from firing into each other.

1441. To re-form the line, the colonel will command:

*Form divisions.* MARCH.

1442. At the second command, the companies of each division will wheel to the left and right respectively, and, extending by the right and left flanks, the ranks of four will place themselves, in the same order as before the rally.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

*The battalion being in line of battle, in single rank, to form double ranks.*

1443. The battalion being in line of battle, in single rank, with the front-rank men on the right of the rear-rank men, to form double ranks, the colonel will command:

1. *Form double ranks.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH.  
(or *double time*—MARCH).

1444. At the command *march*, the battalion will wheel by fours to the right; the leading rank of four

will halt, and the others will close successively to thirty-two inches. The rearmost rank of four having closed to its distance, the colonel will command :

4. *Fours left.* 5. MARCH. 6. HALT.

1445. Should the colonel desire to execute the movement on the centre, he will cause the battalion to wheel by fours to the right, and halt; he will then face the right wing about, and command :

*Form double ranks.* MARCH.

1446. At the command *march*, the leading rank of four in each wing will stand fast; the others will step off and close to thirty-two inches.

1447. The right wing having closed, the colonel will cause it to face about, and will then form line as already explained.

1448. Should the front-rank men be on the left of the rear-rank men, the movement will be similarly executed, the column of fours being formed to the left instead of the right.

1449. Should the battalion be marching in column of fours in single rank, and the colonel desire to form double ranks, he will command :

1. *Form double ranks.* 2. MARCH.

1450. At the second command, the leading rank of four will halt; the other ranks will close and halt successively at thirty-two inches; the rearmost rank having gained its distance, the colonel will command :

3. *Fours right (or left).* 4. MARCH. 5. HALT.

1451. Should the column of fours in single rank be marching in quick time, and the colonel desire to take double-rank distance, he will command :

1. *Double-rank distance.* 2. *Double time.*  
3. MARCH.

1452. At the third command, the leading rank of four will continue in quick time; the other ranks will take the double time, and resume the quick time upon closing to thirty-two inches.

1453. If the column be marching in double time, the command *double time* will be omitted; the leading rank, at the command *march*, will take the quick step, as will also the other ranks upon closing to thirty-two inches.

#### ARTICLE SIXTH.

*The battalion being in column, in single rank, to form double ranks.*

1454. The battalion being in column by company, in single rank, with the front-rank men on the right of the rear-rank men, to form double ranks, the colonel will command:

1. *Form double ranks.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH  
(or *double time—MARCH*).

1455. At the third command, each company will wheel to the right by fours and close to double-rank distance on the leading rank, which will halt upon the completion of the wheel; the distance being gained, the captain will command: 1. (such) *Company.* 2. *Fours left.* 3. MARCH. 4. HALT; and, having established his right guide, will align the company by the right.

1456. The field officer, at the head of the column, will see that the guides cover, and will place himself for this purpose in front of the right guide of the leading division.

1457. Should the front-rank men be on the left of the rear-rank men, the colonel will command *Fours left*, instead of *Fours right*. The companies will form line to the right and be dressed to the left.

1458. In column by division, the chiefs of division

will give the commands explained for captains of companies.

1459. Having formed double ranks, should the column be at double distance, the colonel will cause it to close to such distance as he may desire.

---

ADDENDUM TO ¶ 1142.

In column of fours, the file-closers may be passed from one flank of the column to the other, by the command: *File-closers on (such) flank of the column.* At which the file-closers, captains, guides, and field-officers will change positions, the file-closers darting through the column, the field-officers passing by the head and rear. If the file-closers pass from the right to the left flank, the right in front will become left in front, and the reverse.

END OF THE SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

## TITLE SIXTH.

### EVOLUTIONS OF A BRIGADE.

#### GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR THE EVOLUTIONS OF A BRIGADE.

1460. THE School of the Battalion, comprehending the principles and details of all the movements that ought, in any case, to be made by a single battalion, these principles will now be applied to a brigade.

1461. In this instruction, a brigade of four battalions will be supposed; but the rules herein prescribed are applicable to a less or greater number of battalions.

1462. The brigade will be posted in one or two lines, with an interval of twenty-four paces between battalions.

1463. The distance between the lines will vary, both with the nature of the ground and the state of the action. If on the offensive, the second line will be held at close supporting distance; if on the defensive, it will be held at sufficient distance in the rear to enable the first line to re-form behind it, and to prevent the enemy from passing over it with the first line should that line be driven back.

1464. Battalions will be designated from the right in line, and the head in column, *first battalion*, *second battalion*, and so on. They will interchange designations whenever by wheeling about by fours the left of the line becomes the right, and the rear the head of the column.

1465. If in two lines, the battalions of the front

line will be designated from the right, *first* and *second*, those of the rear, *third* and *fourth*.

1466. If in two columns, the battalions of the front line will be designated from the head, *first* and *second*; those of the rear, *third* and *fourth*.

1467. In all brigade evolutions, except breaking by company or division to the right or left into column, and the advance or retreat in line, the men will march in the uncadenced step, with arms at will; they will, however, preserve silence.

*Posts of the Brigadier-General in line, and in column.*

1468. In line of battle, composed of several brigades, the generals of brigade will place themselves about seventy paces in rear of the centre of their brigades.

1469. In column, they will hold themselves at the head of their brigades.

1470. If a brigade be acting by itself, its brigadier-general will take such position as he may judge necessary.

1471. The brigadier-general will look to the exact and regular execution of all signals, notifications, or commands of the major-general of the division to which he may belong; accordingly, he may repair to any point within his brigade wherever he may judge his presence necessary.

*General rules for commands.*

1472. The general (by which term, in these evolutions, will be understood the brigadier-general in command) will habitually give his orders to his brigade by word of command.

1473. When the general shall wish to cause a movement to be executed, he will give the general commands relative thereto. The colonels will always successively repeat with the greatest rapidity, on their

reaching them, these general commands, unless the general has given or sent orders to the contrary.

1474. The colonels having repeated the general commands, as just prescribed, will immediately command and cause to be executed, without waiting for each other, the preparatory movements which in their battalions ought to precede the execution of the general movement.

1475. The general will look to the prompt execution of these preparatory movements in his brigade, and rectify every error that may be committed by the colonels.

1476. The final command, or that which determines the execution of the general movement, will always be given by the general.

1477. The lieutenant-colonels and majors will repeat the general commands, whether of caution or execution, as often as the wind or noise of arms may prevent them from being easily heard from one battalion to another.

1478. In column, commands will be extended by repetition according to the same principles.

1479. When a brigade is formed in two lines, the second line, in all manœuvres, will preserve its relative position to the first, and conform to its movements. The chiefs of the battalions of the second line are charged with the preservation of the proper distances. If the movement is to be executed by only one of the lines, the cautionary command of the general will be preceded by the words, *first line* or *second line*.

#### *Division of evolutions of the brigade.*

1480. The evolutions of the brigade will be divided into seven parts.

1481. The first will embrace :

1. Opening and closing ranks.
2. Manual of arms.

3. Firings.
  4. March in line of battle.
  5. March in retreat in line of battle.
  6. To halt the line and to align it.
1482. The second will embrace :
1. March by the flank.
  2. To march the column of fours in retreat.
  3. Column of fours to the right or left into line.
  4. Manner of determining the line of battle, and principles of successive formations.
  5. Column of fours front into line.
  6. Column of fours front into line on the head of an interior battalion.
  7. Formation of column of fours into line by two movements.
  8. By battalion on the right or left into line.
  9. Formation in two lines.
1483. The third will embrace :
1. To break to the right (or left) into column, and to break from the right (or left) to march to the left (or right).
  2. To break to the rear by the right or left into column.
  3. March in column at full distance.
  4. Column in route.
  5. Change of direction in column.
  6. To halt the column.
  7. To form to the right or left into line of battle.
  8. Column at full distance front into line of battle.
  9. Column at full distance front into line of battle on the head of an interior battalion.
  10. Formation of column at full distance into line by two movements.
1484. The fourth will embrace :
1. Ployment of the line into column of masses.

2. Column of fours to or on the right into column of masses.
  3. To march in column of masses.
  4. Change of direction in column of masses.
  5. Deployment of column of masses.
1485. The fifth will embrace :
1. Formation of line of masses.
  2. Movements executed in line of masses.
  3. Formation of line of masses into column of masses.
  4. Formation of column of masses into line of masses.
1486. The sixth will embrace :
1. To close distances.
  2. To take distances.
  3. March in column at half distance.
  4. To form the column at half distance into line.
  5. To form divisions and to break into companies.
  6. Change of direction marching in line of battle.
  7. Change of front.
  8. Advance by flank of subdivisions.
  9. Order in echelon.
  10. Passage of defile to the front.
  11. Passage of defile in retreat.
  12. Passage of lines.
  13. Dispositions against cavalry.
  14. Movements by battalion.
1487. The seventh will embrace :
1. To pass from double ranks to single rank.
  2. Movements in single rank.
  3. To pass from single rank to double ranks.

## PART FIRST.

## ARTICLE FIRST.

*To open and close ranks.*

1488. The general, wishing to cause ranks to be opened, will command :

1. *Prepare to open ranks.*

1489. This having been repeated, the colonels will immediately command : *Rear open order.* The general will then add :

## 2. MARCH.

1490. At which command, briskly repeated, the movement will be executed in each battalion.

1491. To close ranks, the general will command :

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*Manual of arms.*

1492. The manual of arms will seldom be executed in line.

## ARTICLE THIRD.

*Loading at will and the firings.*

1493. In line, only loading at will, will be executed.

1494. The general, wishing arms to be loaded, will command :

1. *Prepare to load.*

1495. Which having been repeated, he will add :

## 2. LOAD.

1496. The general, wishing to cause the fires to be executed, will command :

1. *Fire by battalion (or rank, or wing, or company).*

1497. Which having been repeated, he will add:

2. COMMENCE FIRING.

1498. At the second command, the colonels will give the necessary commands for the fire indicated.

1499. If the fire be by battalion, the odd battalions will fire first. The colonels of the even battalions will not give their first command till some of the pieces in the odd battalion to their right are brought to a ready. In the second fire, the colonels of the odd battalions will observe the same rule in regard to the even, thereby maintaining an alternate fire.

1500. To fire by file, the general will command:

1. *Fire by file.*

1501. This having been repeated, the colonels will command: 1. *Battalion.* 2. READY. The general will then add:

2. COMMENCE FIRING.

1502. The general will cause each of the foregoing fires to cease by a very short roll or bugle-sound, which will be repeated by the drums or bugles of each battalion the moment it is heard. As soon as each battalion reloads, its colonel will give the signal for the tap on the drum or note on the bugle, for the return of the captains and covering sergeants to their places in line of battle.

*Remarks on firing.*

1503. In the presence of the enemy, the kind of fire will be determined by the character of the ground and the state of the action; and while cover should always be sought for the men, it should ever give place to efficacy of fire, which is of the first importance.

1504. Second in importance to efficacy of fire is the judicious and economical expenditure of ammunition, which can alone be controlled by the officers, to

which they should give their constant and unremitting attention.

1505. In action, colonels may suspend the fire temporarily whenever the men appear to be laboring under unnecessary excitement; calmness will thereby be restored, and the fire will be rendered far more destructive upon its renewal.

*To rest.*

1506. The general wishing to give relaxation to the line, will command:

1. *Prepare to rest.*

1507. This having been repeated, the colonels will command: *Order—ARMS*, and the general will add:

2. *In place—REST*; or,

2. *Stack—ARMS.* 3. *Break ranks.* 4. *MARCH.*

1508. Wishing to terminate the relaxation, the general will cause a short roll or bugle-sound to be given, which will be repeated along the line.

1509. The roll having ceased, the men will assume the position of order arms; or if arms be stacked, the general will cause the stacks to be broken, after which he will command:

1. *Carry.* 2. *ARMS.*

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

*To advance in line of battle deployed.*

1510. The general wishing to advance in line of battle, will select a central battalion, say the third, as that of direction; he will then send an aide three or four hundred yards to the front, whom he will establish on the perpendicular to the line of battle, passing between the heels of the color-bearer of this battalion. This being done, he will command:

1. *The third, the battalion of direction.*
2. *Battalions forward.*

1511. The second command being repeated, the colonels will add: *Guide centre*, at which the color-bearers and general guides will advance six paces to the front; the color-bearers being assured by the colonels, will each select points by which to direct their march, the color-bearer of the third battalion taking the staff officer as the most remote point. The general will then command:

### 3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1512. At the command *march*, all the battalions will step off, the color-bearer of the third directing himself on the staff officer.

1513. The third battalion being the guide for the others, its colonel will superintend its march with great care, seeing that the color-bearer preserves accurately the direction, length, and cadence of the step.

1514. The other battalions will each observe the principles of marching in line, keeping as nearly as possible abreast with the third, without, however, shortening or lengthening the step, or marking or quickening the time, unless absolutely necessary to preserve the general formation of the line.

1515. Each colonel will watch the point of direction of his color-bearer, causing him to change it to the right or left, if his line of march be not parallel with that of the color-bearer of the directing battalion.

1516. The two general guides of each battalion will conform themselves steadily to the direction of the color-bearer, and will hold themselves abreast with him, without reference to the colors and general guides of the other battalions.

1517. The march of the directing battalion having become assured, its color-bearer will select points in advance of the staff officer, who, upon the approach of the line, will retire.

## ARTICLE FIFTH.

*To march in retreat in line of battle.*

1518. The line being at a halt, when the general shall wish it to march in retreat, he will first command: 1. *Face to the rear.* Which being repeated, each colonel will command: *Fours left about.* The general will then command:

## 2. MARCH.

1519. At which each battalion will wheel by fours to the left about, each colonel adding: HALT.

1520. The line having faced to the rear, will be put in march as already explained.

1521. Should the line be advancing, the general will command:

1. *In retreat.*

1522. Which being repeated, each colonel will immediately add: *Fours left about*; the general will then command:

## 2. MARCH.

3. *The second (or third) the battalion of direction.*

1523. At the second command, the battalions will wheel about by fours, the colonels adding: 1. FORWARD. 2. *Guide centre.*

## ARTICLE SIXTH.

*To halt the line and to align it.*

1524. The line being in march, when the general shall wish to halt it, he will command:

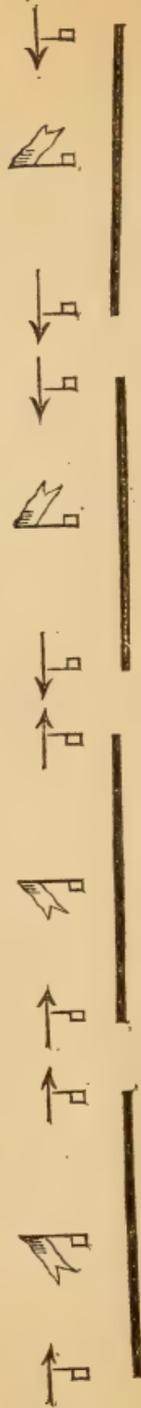
*Battalions.*

1525. Which having been repeated, he will add:

## HALT.

1526. This having been repeated with the utmost





General alignment. No. 1528.

rapidity, the line will halt. The colors and general guides will remain in front.

1527. The line being halted, should the general desire to give it a general alignment, he will establish the color and general guides of the directing battalion on the desired direction, and then command:

*Colors and general guides*—ON THE LINE.

1528. (*Pl. LXVII.*) This having been repeated, the colors and general guides of all the battalions will face to the color of the directing battalion, and will be established on the line. The color-bearers will carry their lances between their eyes.

1529. These dispositions being made, the general will command:

*Guides on the line.*

1530. This having been repeated, the right guides of the right wing and the left guides of the left wing of each battalion will be established on the line facing the color. The general will then command:

*On the centre*—DRESS.

1531. The battalions being aligned, the general will command:

*Colors and guides*—POSTS.

1532. If the new direction should throw one or more battalions back from the position occupied at halting, the colonels of these battalions, as soon as they perceive the necessity by the direction of the colors, will cause their battalions to march to the rear till they shall have passed the new line.

## PART SECOND.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

*To march by the flank.*

1533. The general, desiring the line to march by the right flank, will command:

1. *By the right flank.*

1534. Which having been repeated, each colonel will add: *Fours right*; the general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1535. At the command *march*, all the battalions will wheel by fours to the right, the colonels adding: FORWARD—*Guide left*.

1536. The march by the left flank will be similarly executed.

1537. Should the general desire to break from the right in column of fours, to march to the left, he will command:

1. *Column of fours.* 2. *Break from the right to march to the left.* 3. MARCH.

1538. At the command *march*, the first battalion will execute the movement, the leading guide directing his march parallel with the line of battle; the others will follow successively at the commands of their colonels, each twenty-four paces in rear of the one next on the right.

1539. Breaking from the left to march to the right, in column of fours, will be similarly executed.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*To march the column of fours in retreat.*

1540. To march the column of fours in retreat, the general will command:

1. *In retreat.*

1541. Which having been repeated, each colonel will add: *Fours left* or *right about*, according as the right or left is in front; the general will then command:

## 2. MARCH.

1542. At the command *march*, all the battalions





Manner of determining the line of battle. No. 1547.

will wheel about by fours, each colonel adding: FORWARD—*Guide right or left.*

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

*Column of fours to the right or left into line.*

1543. To form the column of fours to the right into line, the general will command :

1. *By the right flank.*

1544. Which having been repeated, each colonel will add: *Fours right*; the general will then command :

2. MARCH. 3. (such) *the battalion of direction.*

1545. At the command *march*, all the battalions will wheel to the right by fours, each colonel adding: FORWARD—*Guide centre.*

1546. Should the general desire the line to halt, he will give the command HALT immediately after the command *march*; he will then cause a general alignment if necessary.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

*Manner of determining the line of battle and principles of successive formations.*

*Manner of determining the line of battle.*

1547. (*Pl. LXVIII.*) In brigade evolutions, the line of battle will be determined by staff officers, three in number, in the following manner: The first officer, at the preparatory command of the general, will post himself at the *point of rest* for the first battalion, facing in the direction the line is to extend; the second will post himself, facing the first, at the *point of rest* for the second battalion; the third will post himself, covering the other two, at the *point of rest* for the third battalion; the first will then move at a gallop and post himself for the fourth battalion.

1548. Should there be more than four battalions, the staff officer for the second, as soon as the head of this battalion shall arrive, will hasten to mark the point for the fifth, and so on.

*Successive formations.*

1549. In the successive formations, the field officer at the head of each battalion will always precede it on the line of battle with two markers, whom he will post for the leading subdivision. These markers will face toward the *point of rest* of the general line, the first being twenty-four paces from the flank of the battalion next preceding his own. After establishing the markers, the field officer will assure the position of the guides by placing himself successively in their rear.

1550. In all successive formations the color-bearer of each battalion, as soon as his company shall arrive on the line, will step to the front and cover the guides, holding the lance between his eyes.

1551. Each colonel will bring his battalion to the order arms as soon as it shall be formed, and as soon as two colors are established on the line, he will command: *Guides—Posts*. The color-bearers will remain in front, facing the *point of rest*, till the entire line shall be formed, when the general will command:

*Colors—Posts.*

ARTICLE FIFTH.

*Column of fours front into line of battle.*

1552. The general, wishing to form the column of fours right front into line, will command:

1. *Right front into line.*

1553. (*Pl. LXIX., fig. 1.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the second battalion will com-



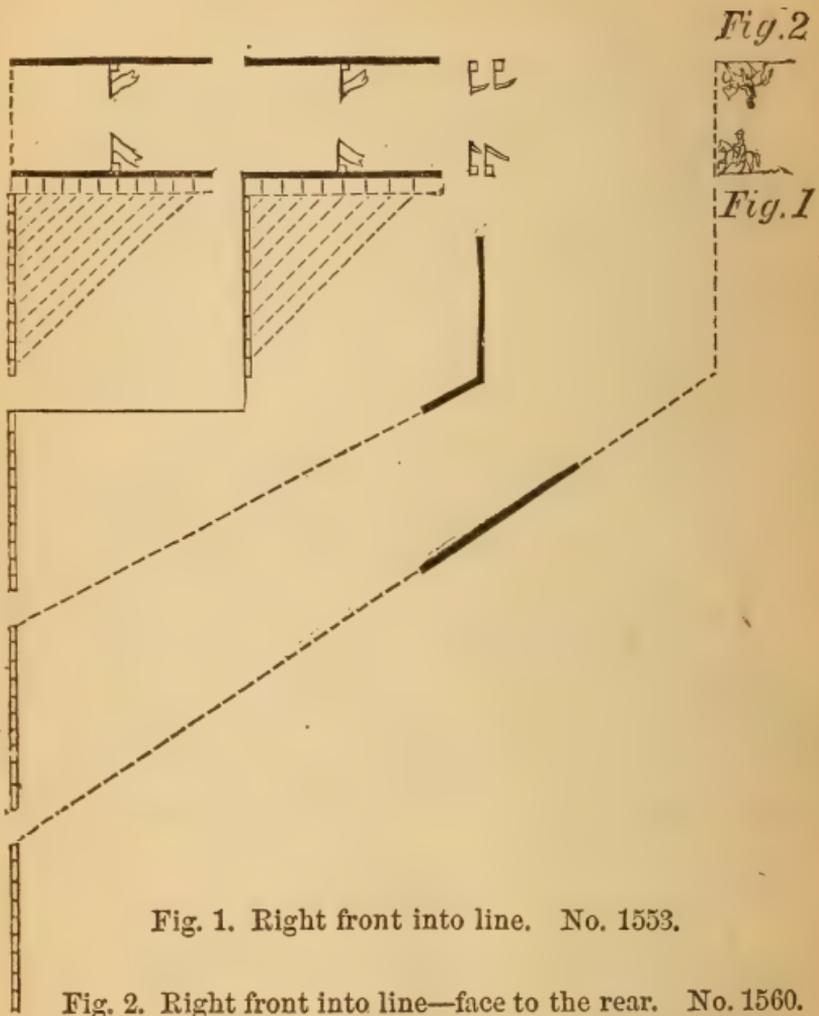


Fig. 1. Right front into line. No. 1553.

Fig. 2. Right front into line—face to the rear. No. 1560.

mand: *Column right*; the colonels in rear: *Column half right*.

1554. The general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1555. At this command, the first battalion will execute the *right front into line*.

1556. The second will march parallel with the line of battle till opposite its *point of rest*, when it will change direction to the left, the colonel giving the command, *Right front into line*, when at company distance from the markers.

1557. The third and fourth battalions will execute the movement in the same manner as the second, each colonel conducting his battalion, so that when the head shall arrive opposite the *point of rest*, it shall be at a distance from it equal to its depth in column of fours.

1558. The movement ended, the general will command:

*Colors—Posts.*

1559. Left front into line will be similarly executed.

1560. (*Pl. LXIX., fig. 2.*) Should the general desire to face to the rear after forming front into line, he will command:

*Right front into line—face to the rear.*

1561. The battalions will be conducted to their points of rest, as in the last case, and will then form, *Right front into line—face to the rear*.

1562. *The front into line* may be executed on the rear of the column, facing either way, by first wheeling about by fours, and then employing the means already explained.

## ARTICLE SIXTH.

*To form the column of fours front into line on the head of an interior battalion.*

1563. Should the general desire to form front into line on the head of an interior battalion, say the third, he will command :

1. *On the third battalion.* 2. *Right front into line.*

1564. These commands having been repeated, the colonel of the second battalion will command, *Fours left*; the colonel of the first, *Fours right* (or *left*) *about*; the general will then add :

3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1565. At the command *march*, the third and fourth battalions will execute the *right front into line* as previously explained.

1566. The second battalion will march by the left flank twenty-four paces, when the colonel will cause it to break into column of fours to the left, and immediately after command: *Right front into line—face to the rear.*

1567. The first battalion will wheel about by fours, upon the completion of which, the colonel will add: FORWARD, *Guide left* (or *right*), and then command: 1. *Column right.* 2. MARCH; he will then conduct the head of his battalion to a point in front of its *point of rest*, a distance equal to its depth in column of fours; arrived at this point, he will change direction to the left, and upon approaching the markers, will give the command: *Right front into line—face to the rear.*

1568. The movement ended, the general will command :

*Colors—Posts.*

1569. Left front into line on the third battalion will be similarly executed.

## ARTICLE SEVENTH.

*Formation of column of fours into line by two movements.*

1570. The column of fours having partly changed direction to the right, should the general desire to form line to the left, he will command :

1. *By the left flank.* 2. *Rear battalions—left front into line.* 3. MARCH.

1571. At the command *march*, the battalions which have changed direction to the right will form line to the left and halt ; the battalions in rear will execute the *left front into line*.

1572. Should the general desire to form to the right, he will command :

1. *By the right flank.* 2. *Rear battalions left front into line—face to the rear.* 3. MARCH.

1573. At the command *march*, the battalions which have changed direction will form line to the right and halt ; the battalions in rear will execute *left front into line—face to the rear*.

1574. The column, having partly changed direction to the left, will be formed *to the right and right front into line*, or *to the left and right front into line—face to the rear*, by similar commands and means.

1575. The general, in each case, will give his commands as the head of a battalion is about to change direction.

1576. As troops in wooded countries, or countries with narrow roads, habitually march in column of fours, the movements explained for forming line on the head or rear of the column, faced either to the front or the rear, should be frequently practised, and made perfectly familiar to both officers and men.

1577. Should troops, marching in column of fours, be suddenly attacked in front, the formation on the

rear of the column may often be of great advantage, as a few skirmishers will suffice to check the advance of the enemy, and give the line time to form calmly in the rear; it will likewise give the general an opportunity to study the ground, and to make such disposition as he may deem necessary to receive the attack.

#### ARTICLE EIGHTH.

*By battalion on the right or left into line.*

1578. Should the general desire to form the column of fours into line of battle to the right by a successive formation, he will command :

1. *By battalion on the right into line.*

1579. This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: *Fours right*; the general will then add :

#### 2. MARCH.

1580. (*Pl. LXX.*) At the command *march*, the first battalion will wheel by fours to the right, and advance ten paces, when the colonel will halt it and give it a general alignment, the color and general guides facing to the right.

1581. The other battalions will continue the march, and when the rear of the second shall be at twenty-four paces from the left of the first, its colonel will march it by the right flank toward the line of battle, and will halt it and dress it as explained for the colonel of the first.

1582. The third battalion will form beyond the second, and the fourth beyond the third, each approaching the line of battle and being dressed as explained for the second.

#### ARTICLE NINTH.

*Formation in two lines.*

1583. Should the general desire to form the column

By battalion on the right into line. No. 1580.





of fours into two lines, he will preface the command for forming single line by the command:

*In two lines at (so many) paces' distance.*

1584. The two leading battalions will execute the movement as explained for the two leading battalions in the preceding movements; the two rear battalions (the third and fourth) will follow the same rule when the head of the third shall arrive at the prescribed distance from the first line.

1585. In the formations to the right or left, at the command *march*, the heads of the third and fourth battalions will each incline to the left or right till they shall gain the distance specified in the command, when they will resume the original direction, the third battalion at the proper time forming behind the first, and the fourth behind the second.

## PART THIRD.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

*To break to the right or left into column.*

1586. The general, wishing to cause the line to break by company or division to the right or left, will command:

1. *By company (or division) right (or left) wheel.*

1587. This having been repeated, he will command:

2. MARCH.

1588. Should he desire the column to move forward without halting upon the completion of the wheel, he will caution before the first command, *Continue the march*, which will be repeated by the colonels. Each colonel will give the commands: 1. *Forward*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left (or right)*, the instant his companies shall have completed the wheel, and the guides will gradually gain the trace of the one at the head of the column.

1589. The general, wishing to cause the line to break by company from the right to march to the left, will command :

1. *By company break from the right to march to the left.*

1590. Which, having been repeated by the colonels, he will add :

### 2. MARCH. .

1591. At the command *march*, the right battalion will execute the movement; the leading guide, after turning, directing himself parallel with the line of battle.

1592. The colonels of the other battalions will give the commands for breaking from the right to march to the left, so that their columns may follow the one next on their right, at subdivision distance and twenty-four paces.

### ARTICLE SECOND.

*To break to the rear by the right or left into column.*

1593. The line being either at a halt or marching, when the general shall wish to cause it to break to the rear into column by company or division, he will command :

1. *By the right (or left) of companies (or divisions) to the rear into column.*

1594. The colonels having repeated this command, will add : *Fours right (or left).*

1595. The general will then command :

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1596. At which command, each battalion will execute the movement.

### ARTICLE THIRD.

*To march in column at full distance.*

1597. The general, wishing to put the column in

march, will indicate to the leading guide the point of direction, and will then command :

1. *Column forward.*

1598. Which, having been repeated, the colonels will add: *Guide left* (or *right*), according as the right or left is in front; the general will then command :

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1599. At the command *march*, each battalion will step off; the leading guide will move upon the point indicated, and the others will follow in his trace, gaining it gradually if not already in it.

1600. The field officer at the head of each battalion will see that the leading guide preserves subdivision distance and twenty-four paces from the rear of the battalion next in front.

1601. To march the column in retreat, the general will command :

1. *In retreat.*

1602. This having been repeated, the colonels will add: *Fours left* (or *right*) *about*; the general will then command :

2. MARCH.

1603. At which, each battalion will wheel about by fours, the colonels adding: 1. FORWARD. 2. *Guide right* (or *left*).

1604. The fours will always wheel about toward the side of the guide, and the guide will be so announced that the field officers will not have to shift to the opposite flank of the column.

1605. Should the general desire the column to face to the rear without marching in retreat, he will command :

*Face to the rear.*

1606. Which, being repeated, the colonels will command: *Fours left* (or *right*) *about*; the general will then add: MARCH.

1607. At which, each battalion will wheel about by fours, the colonels adding: HALT.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

##### *Column in route.*

1608. The column of fours will be the habitual column of route for brigades and larger bodies of troops.

1609. To put the brigade in the route step, the general will command :

1. *By the right (or left) flank.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Route step.* 4. MARCH.

1610. To resume the cadenced step, he will command :

##### ATTENTION.

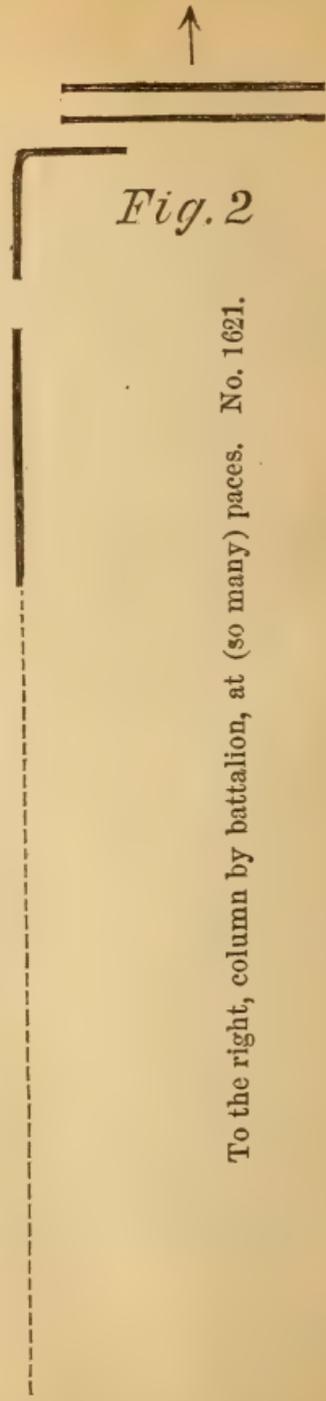
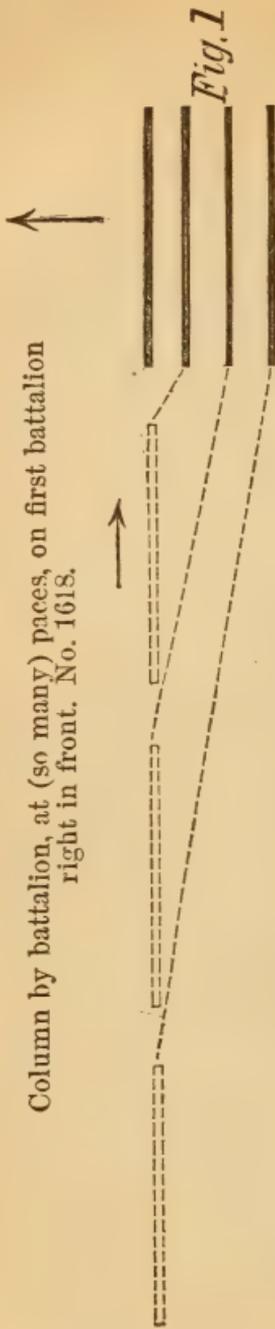
1611. On campaign, each brigade should be provided with a corps of pioneers, under charge of a commissioned officer, the duty of which, on the march, should be to remove obstacles, build bridges, and prepare the way for the troops.

1612. Whenever fences, hedges, walls, ditches, or small streams are encountered, a passage-way should be made wide enough for *four men to march abreast* without obstruction, which will prevent the column from lengthening out, and avoid the fatigue and delay of regaining distances.

1613. As a general rule, and especially on long marches, troops will be halted ten minutes every hour. The careful observance of this rule will enable commanders at all times to bring their troops into camp or on to the field of battle, cheerful, in good condition, and without stragglers.

1614. The contrary rule, and especially where troops are marched for a considerable distance at double time before engaging the enemy, is liable to lead to disaster, as many of the men will have been unable to keep





To the right, column by battalion, at (so many) paces. No. 1621.

in their places, and as fatigue or exhaustion will make the best of soldiers indifferent.

1615. In route marches, regiments will alternate daily in leading the brigade; in like manner, brigades will alternate in divisions, and divisions in corps.

1616. Whenever, from delays in front, it becomes necessary for the rear of the column to close up, brigade commanders will form column by battalion in the following manner:

1617. To form column by battalion on the first battalion, the general will command:

*Column by battalion—at (so many) paces—on first battalion—right (or left) in front.*

1618. (*Pl. LXXI., fig. 1.*) At this command, the first battalion will form line to the left, halt, and stack arms.

1619. The other battalions will incline to the right (or left), and enter the column parallel with, and at the prescribed distance from the one in front, each being formed in line as prescribed for the first when its left flank shall be directly opposite that of the battalion next preceding.

1620. The general may form to the right or on the right column by battalion by the command:

1. *To the right (or on the right) column by battalion --at (so many) paces.* 2. MARCH.

1621. (*Pl. LXXI., fig. 2.*) At the command *march*, the leading battalion will change direction to the right, its left flank having cleared the column by ten paces, the colonel will form line to the left, halt, and stack arms. The other battalions will enter the column at the prescribed number of paces in rear or beyond where the battalion next preceding entered, and will be formed in line as prescribed for the first.

1622. The column of fours, left in front, will form column by battalion, according to the same principles as when right in front.

1623. In resuming the march, the battalions will break stacks successively, and then follow the one next preceding at the distance of twenty-four paces.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

*To change direction in column at full distance.*

1624. The general, wishing to change direction, will command:

1. *Column right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH.

1625. At the command *march*, the leading subdivision will wheel to the right (or left).

1626. The other subdivisions of the column will change direction on the same ground.

1627. The marker of the leading battalion, as soon as its rear shall have passed him, will be relieved by a marker from the second, who in turn will be relieved by one from the third, and so on.

ARTICLE SIXTH.

*To halt the column.*

1628. The general, wishing to halt the column, will command:

1. *Column.*

629. This having been repeated, he will add:

2. HALT.

1630. This will be repeated with the greatest rapidity.

ARTICLE SEVENTH.

*To form the column at full distance to the right or left into line of battle.*

1631. The column being halted, if the general shall wish to form it *to the right* or *left into line of battle*, and the guides require to be assured on the direction,

he will first change the guide to the side toward which the line is to be formed, if not already there, and then placing himself in front of the leading guide of the column, will establish him and the one following on the direction ; he will then command :

*Guides—COVER.*

1632. At this, repeated by the colonels, the guides of each battalion will place themselves on the line, being assured by the field officer at the rear. The leading guide of each rear battalion will be careful to take subdivision distance and twenty-four paces from the rear guide of the battalion in his front.

1633. The guides being established, the colonels, without waiting for each other, will command : *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS ; and each chief after aligning his subdivision will command : FRONT.

1634. The guides being assured, the general will command :

1. *Right* (or *left*) *into line, wheel.*

1635. Which having been repeated by the colonels, he will add :

2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1636. At the command *march*, the column will form to the right or left into line of battle, which being done, the general will command :

*Guides—POSTS.*

ARTICLE EIGHTH.

*Column at full distance front into line of battle.*

1637. The column being at full distance, either at a halt or marching, when the general shall wish to form it front into line of battle, he will command :

1. *Right* (or *left*) *front into line.*

1638. (*Pl. LXXII., fig. 1.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the leading battalion will command: *By company right (or left) half wheel*; the colonel of the second battalion will command: *Column right (or left)*; the other colonels, *Column half right (or left)*.

1639. The general will then command :

## 2. MARCH.

1640. At the command *march*, the leading battalion will at once execute *front into line*.

1641. The second battalion will break from the column, and march, with the guide to the left (or right) parallel with the line of battle; arrived opposite its *point of rest*, the colonel will cause it to change direction to the left (or right), and, when at subdivision distance from the markers, will give the commands for forming right (or left) front into line.

1642. The other battalions will each, after breaking from the column, march diagonally forward so as to arrive in rear of its *point of rest*, a distance equal to its depth in column; it will then change direction toward the line of battle and complete the movement as explained for the second.

1643. The movement ended, the general will command :

## *Colors—Posts.*

1644. (*Pl. LXXII., fig. 2.*) Should the general desire to form front into line and to face to the rear, he will add to the command, *face to the rear*, after *right (or left) front into line*, as will also each colonel, when his battalion shall approach the markers.

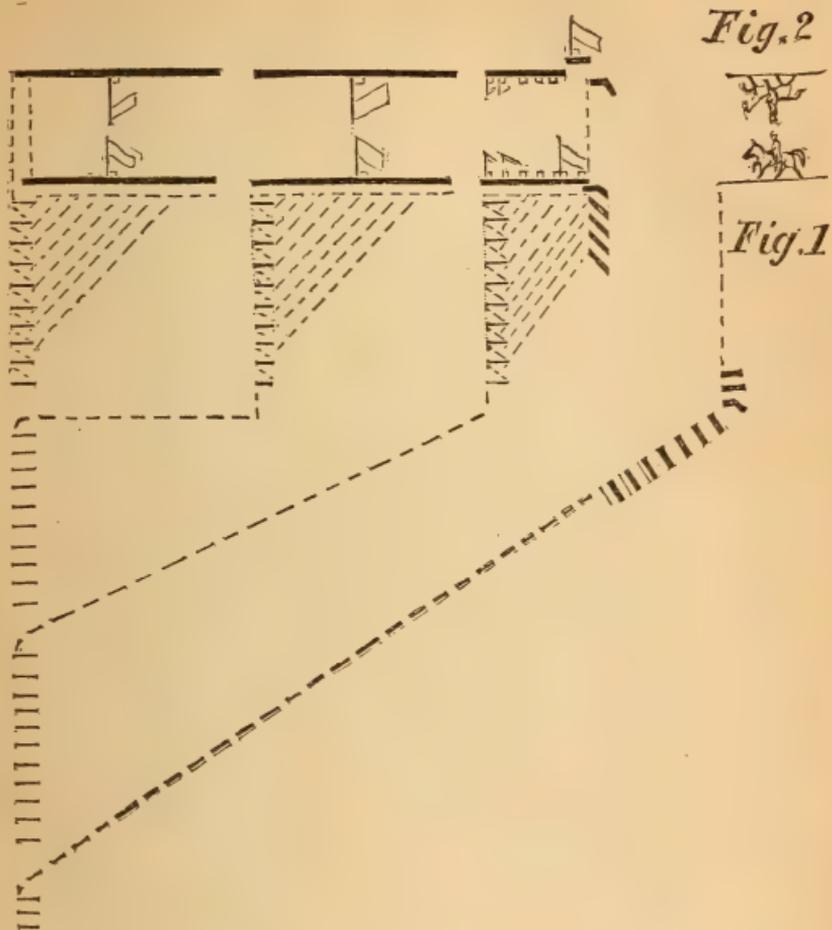
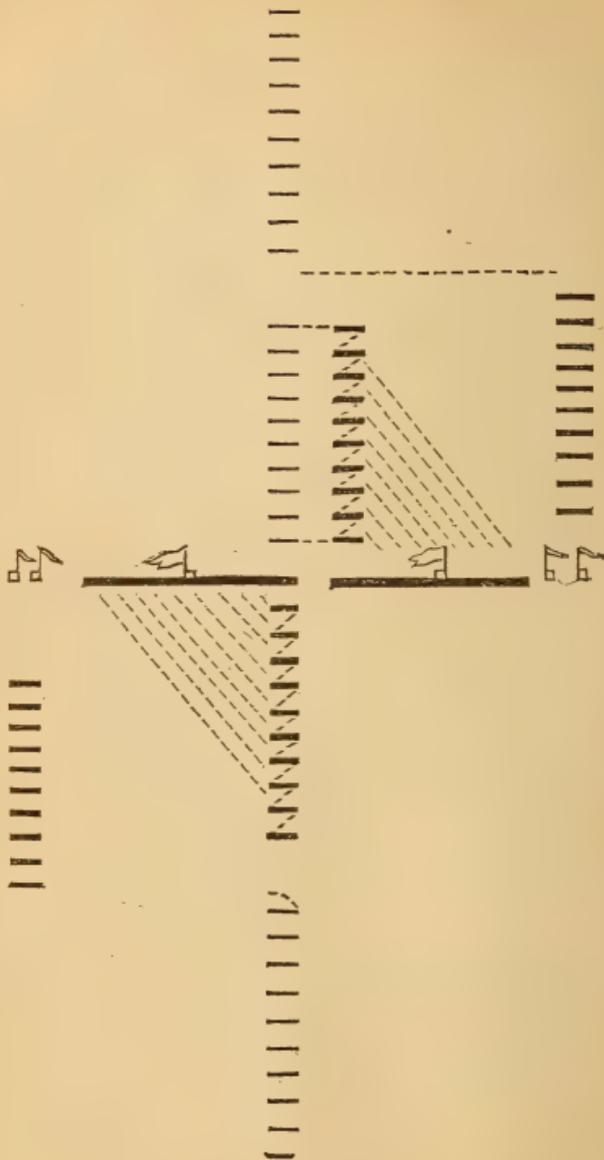


Fig. 1. Right front into line. No. 1638.

Fig. 2. Right front into line—face to the rear. No. 1644.







On the third battalion, left front into line. No. 1646.

## ARTICLE NINTH

*Column at full distance, front into line on the head of an interior battalion.*

1645. The general, wishing to form the column at full distance left front into line, on the first company or division of the third battalion, will command :

1. *On the third battalion left front into line.*

1646. (*Pl. LXXIII.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the third will command: *By company, left half wheel*; the colonel of the fourth: *Column left*; the colonel of the second: *Fours right*; the colonel of the first: *Fours right (or left) about.*

1647. The general will then command :

## 2. MARCH.

1648. At this command, the third and fourth battalions will execute the front into line as previously explained.

1649. The colonel of the second will march his battalion by the right flank, with the guide to the right, till he shall have unmasked the third by twenty-four paces, when he will command: *Fours right.* MARCH. FORWARD; and immediately afterward give the commands for forming *left front into line—face to the rear.*

1650. The first battalion will wheel about by fours, upon the completion of which, the colonel will add: FORWARD, *Guide right*, and immediately command: 1. *Column left.* 2. MARCH; he will then conduct the head of the battalion to a point in front of its *point of rest*, a distance equal to the depth of the column; arrived at this point, he will command: *Column right*—MARCH, and when at subdivision distance from the markers, will give the commands for forming *left front into line—face to the rear.*

1651. Right front into line upon an interior battalion will be similarly executed.

## ARTICLE TENTH.

*Formation of column at full distance into line of battle by two movements.*

1652. The column at full distance having partly changed direction to the right, should the general desire to form it into line to the left, he will command :

1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. *Rear battalions, left front into line.* 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1653. At the command *march*, the battalions which have changed direction to the right, will execute *left into line, wheel*; the rear battalions will execute *left front into line*.

1654. Should the column have changed direction to the left, the general will command :

1. *Right into line, wheel.* 2. *Rear battalions, right front into line.*

1655. The column, at full distance, may be formed by battalion on the right (or left) into line upon the same principles as a column of fours. The leading battalion, at the command *march*, will wheel to the right (or left) into line, and advance ten paces, when it will be halted and aligned, the color and general guides facing to the right (or left); the other battalions will be wheeled into line each at the instant its rear subdivision shall have advanced twenty-four paces beyond the left (or right) flank of the battalion preceding, and will be aligned as explained for the first.

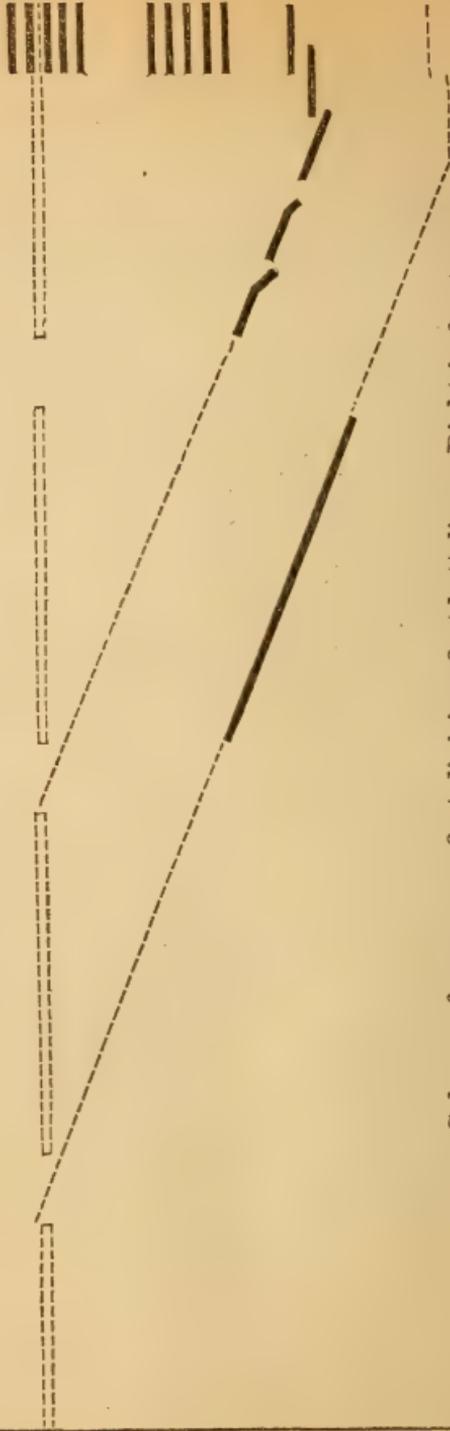
## PART FOURTH.

## ARTICLE FIRST.

*To ploy the line into column of masses.*

1656. In column of masses, the distance between the rear guide of one battalion and the leading guide





Column of masses on first division, first battalion. Right in front.  
No. 1661.

of the succeeding battalion will always be equal to the front of a division of the latter battalion. The same distance will be preserved in column at half distance.

1657. The general wishing to ploy the line into column of masses, in rear of the first division of the first battalion, will command :

1. *Column of masses.* 2. *On first division—first battalion—right in front.*

1658. These commands having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will add: 1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On first division—right in front.* 3. *Fours right.*

1659. The other colonels will command: *Fours right.*

1660. The general will then command :

3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1661. (*Pl. LXXIV*). At the command *march*, the first battalion will ploy into close column in rear of its first division.

1662. The other battalions will wheel by fours to the right, upon the completion of which, the leading division of each will incline to the right and be conducted by the field officer at the head of the column so as to enter the column at division distance and six paces in rear of the rear division of the preceding battalion; the first division having arrived opposite its place in column, the colonel will command: 1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On first division—right in front.* 3. MARCH.

1663. At the command *march*, the leading division will form line to the left and advance six paces, when it will be halted and dressed to the left, the left guide covering the left guides of the preceding battalion; the other divisions will ploy in rear of the first.

1664. The general, or staff-officer, charged with the

execution of his orders, will place himself in front of the guide of the directing division, and see that the guides of the other divisions accurately cover. *This rule is general* for all ployments, whatever the division on which they may be executed.

1665. The line may be ployed in front of the first division, first battalion, by the same commands, substituting *left* for *right in front*.

1666. The first battalion will ploy on its first division, left in front.

1667. The other battalions, after wheeling by fours to the right, will incline to the left, and the leading divisions will be conducted so as to enter the column at division distance in front of the leading division of the battalion which was next on the right; the leading division of each battalion having arrived opposite its place, the battalion will be ployed into close column, left in front; the divisions will be dressed to the right, and the right guides will face to the rear.

1668. The last division of each battalion being aligned, the colonel will command: *Guides—ABOUT FACE*.

1669. To ploy the line into column of masses in rear (or front) of the fifth division of the fourth battalion, the general will command:

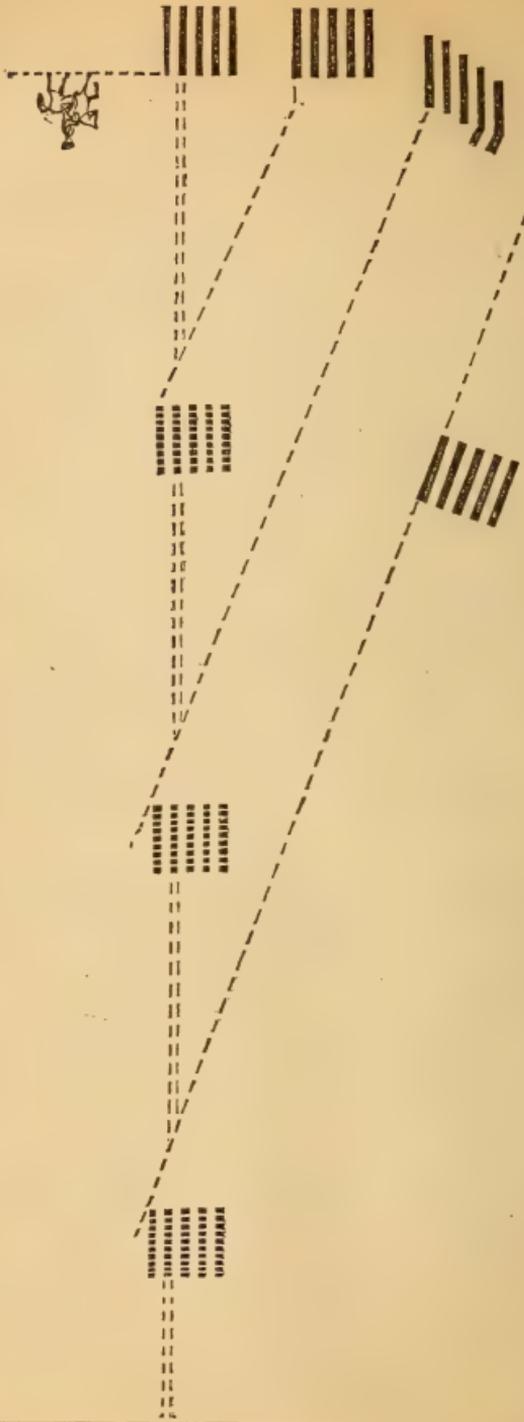
1. *Column of masses.* 2. *On the fifth division—fourth battalion—left (or right) in front.* 3. *MARCH (or double time—MARCH).*

1670. The fourth battalion will ploy into close column on its fifth division, left (or right) in front.

1671. The other battalions will wheel by fours to the left, incline to the left (or right), and upon entering the column be ployed into close column on the first division, left (or right) in front.

1672. To ploy the line into column of masses on an interior battalion, say the third, the general will command:





Column of masses. No. 1678.

1. *Column of masses.* 2. *On first (or fifth) division—third battalion—right (or left) in front.* 3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1673. The directing battalion will ploy into close column upon its first (or fifth) division, right or left in front according to the command.

1674. If the right is to be in front, the battalions to the right will wheel by fours to the left and ploy with the right in front, in front of the directing battalion, the left battalions will wheel by fours to the right and ploy with the right in front in rear of the directing battalion.

1675. If the left is to be in front, the right battalions will wheel by fours to the left and ploy with the left in front, in rear of the directing battalion, the left battalions will wheel by fours to the right and ploy with the left in front, in front of the directing battalion.

1676. Should the brigade be marching in column of fours, the general will form column of masses on the first division, first battalion, with the right or left in front by the same commands and means as when in line of battle, the colonels omitting the commands *Fours right or left*.

1677. The colonels will observe that in all the foregoing ployments, whenever the right is to be in front, the heads of battalions incline to the right; when the left is to be in front, the heads of battalions incline to the left.

1678. (*Pl. LXXV.*) In open country, or in the presence of cavalry, the ployment from line into column of masses may be executed by first ploying all the battalions into close column; each colonel, as soon as his battalion shall have finished its ployment, will march it by the flank to its place in the general column.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*Column of fours to or on the right or left into column of masses.*

1679. The brigade being in column of fours, to form column of masses to the right (or left) the general will command:

1. *To the right (or left).*
2. *Column of masses.*

1680. These commands having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: 1. *To the right (or left).* 2. *Close column by division*; the general will then command:

## 3. MARCH.

1681. (*Pl. LXXVI., figs. 1, 2.*) At which the leading battalions will execute to the right (or left) close column by division.

1682. The other battalions will execute the same movement successively, each colonel giving the command so that his leading division shall enter the column at division distance in rear of the point where the rear division of the preceding battalion entered it.

1683. Should the general desire to form the column of fours on the right or left into column of masses, he will command:

1. *On the right (or left).*
2. *Column of masses.*

1684. Which being repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will add: 1. *On the right (or left).* 2. *Close column by division*; the general will then command:

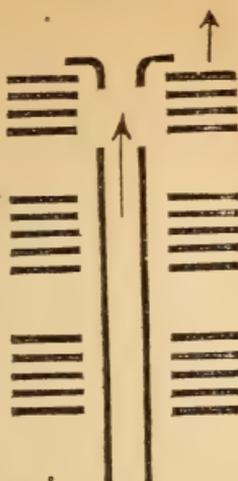
## 3. MARCH.

1685. (*Pl. LXXVI., figs. 3, 4.*) At which the leading battalion will execute on the right (or left) close column by division.

1686. The other battalions will execute the same movement successively, each colonel giving the command so that his leading division shall enter the col-

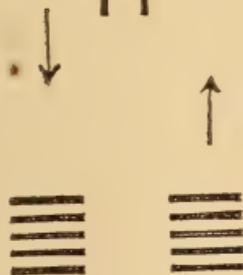
On the left,  
column of  
masses.  
No. 1635.

*Fig. 4*



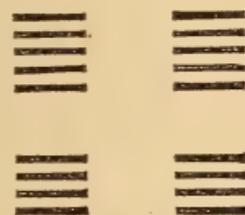
On the right,  
column of  
masses.  
No. 1635.

*Fig. 3*



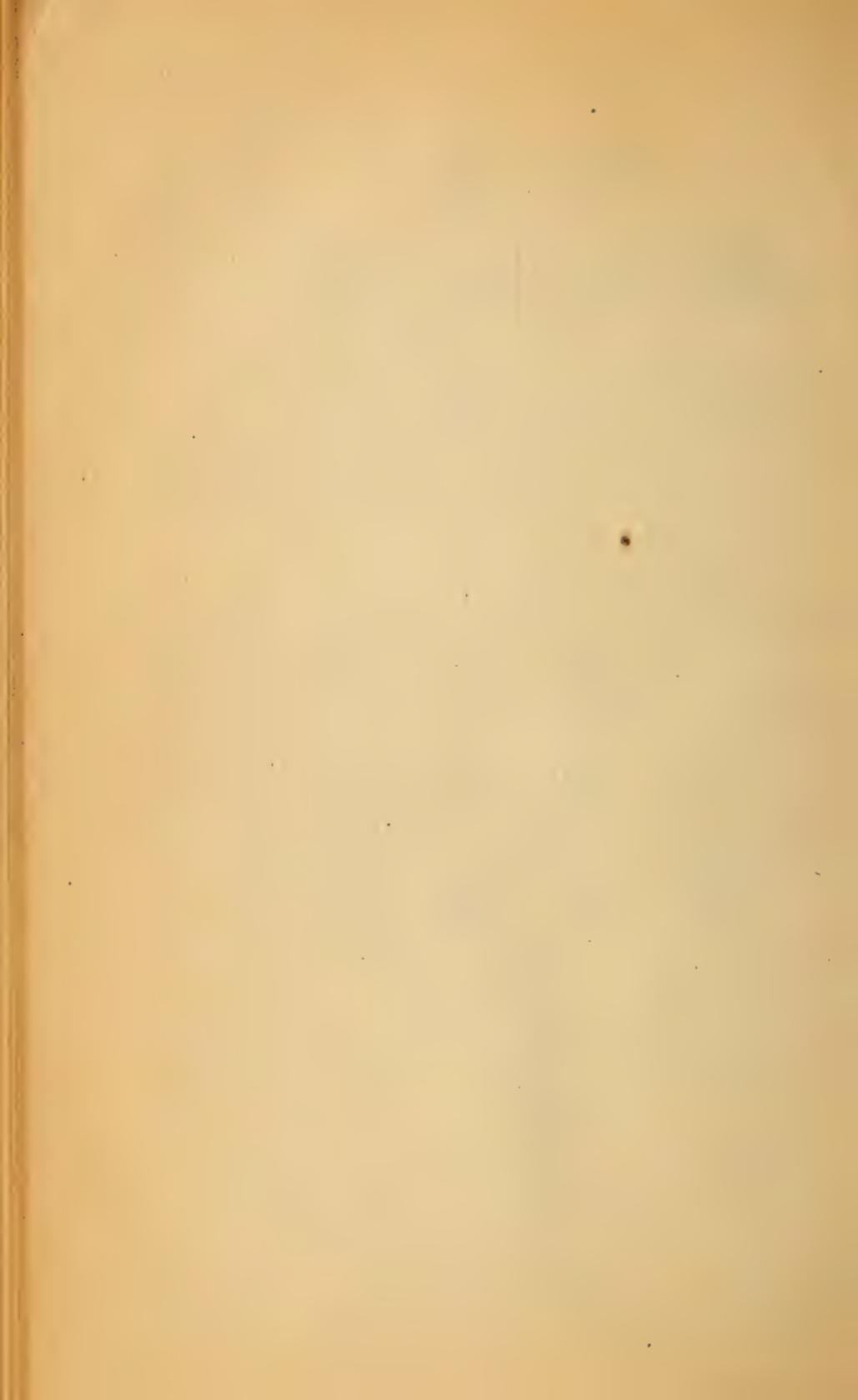
*Fig. 2*

To the left,  
column of  
masses.  
No. 1681.



*Fig. 1*

To the right,  
column of  
masses.  
No. 1681.



umn at division distance beyond the point where the rear division of the preceding battalion entered it.

1687. The staff officer, charged with the general direction of the guides will see that they are posted on a line parallel with the direction of the column, and ten paces from it.

1688. The brigade, being in line, may be formed in column of masses, facing either to the right or left, by breaking by division to the right or left and then closing in mass.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

##### *To march in column in mass.*

1689. The column in mass will be put in march, and will be halted by the same commands as when at full distance.

1690. The means of direction will likewise be the same, and the guides will be assured in like manner after halting.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

##### *To change direction in column in mass.*

##### 1st. *In marching.*

1691. The column of masses being in march, will change direction by the commands:

1. *Column right* (or *left*).
2. MARCH.

1692. At the first command, the colonel of the leading battalion will order the guide (if not already there) to the side opposite the change of direction; he will then command: 1. *Battalion right* (or *left*) *wheel*.

1693. At the command *march*, the leading battalion will wheel to the right (or left), the subdivisions wheeling as at half distance. The colonel, as soon as the first division shall have completed the wheel, will

command: *Forward*—MARCH, and order the guide to the original flank.

1694. The other battalions will wheel on the same ground as the first, and by the same commands. The marker of the first battalion will be relieved by one from the second, and so on to the rear of the column.

2d. *To change direction from a halt.*

1695. The column of masses right in front being at a halt, when the general shall wish to place it facing to the left, without the intention of immediately advancing, he will cause a staff officer to post two markers at right angles to the front, and opposite the right of the first subdivision, and will then command:

1. *Change direction by the right flank.*

1696. This having been repeated, each colonel will command: *Fours right*. The general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1697. (*Pl. LXXVII.*) At the command *march*, the leading battalion will change direction by the right flank.

1698. The other battalions will each wheel by fours to the right, and will be conducted with the guide to the left by a circular movement to their position in the new column.

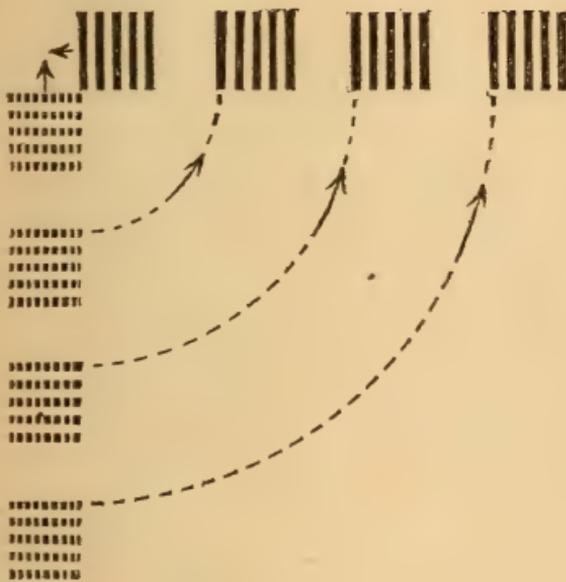
1699. The column may be placed facing to the right by changing direction by the left flank.

1700. The staff officer charged with the direction of the guides will post himself in front of the guide of the first subdivision, facing to the rear.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

*To deploy the column of masses.*

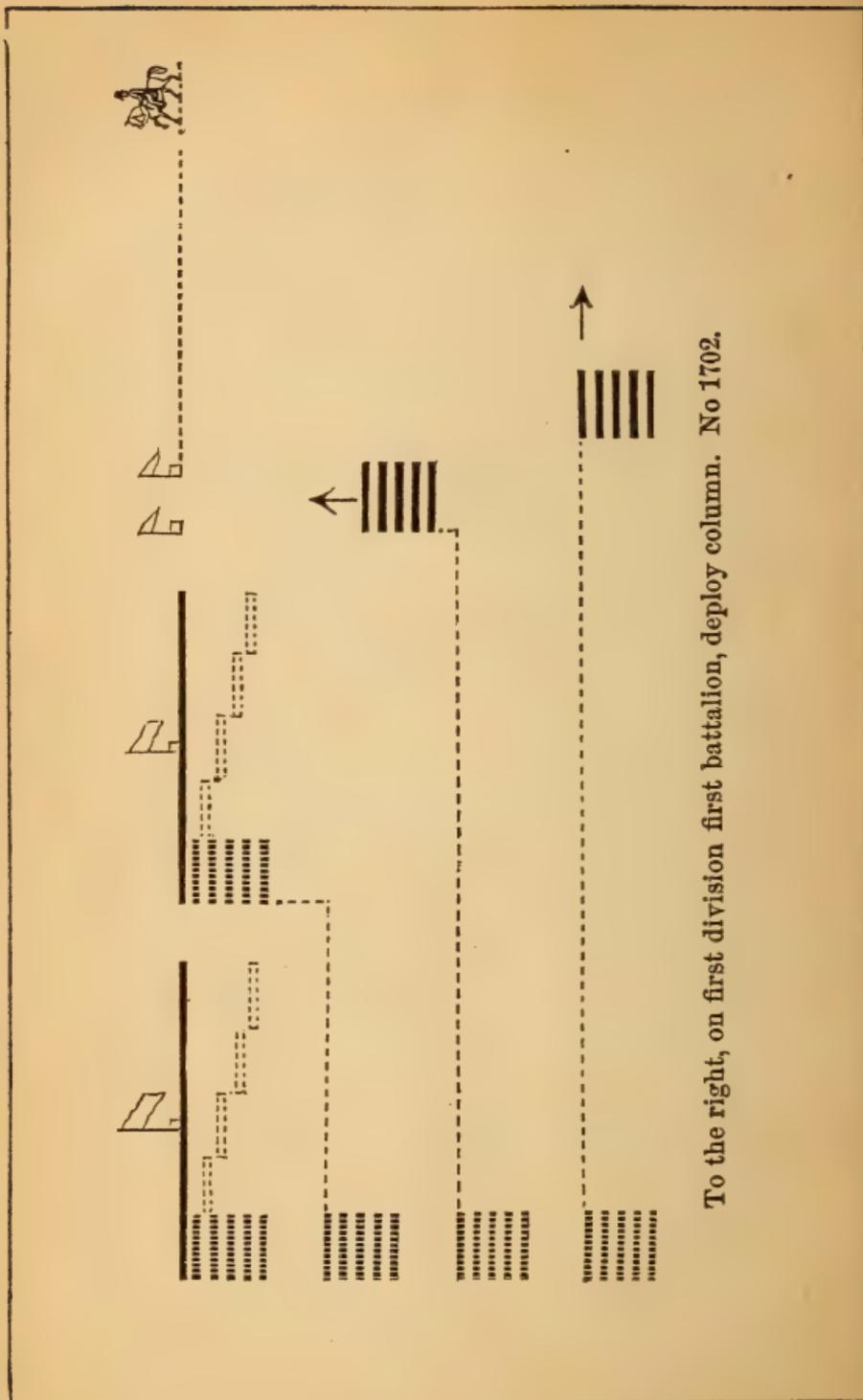
1701. The general, wishing to deploy the column of masses to the right, on the first division, first battalion, will command:



Change direction by the right flank. No. 1697.







To the right, on first division first battalion, deploy column. No 1702.

1. *To the right.* 2. *On the first division, first battalion—deploy column.*

1702. (*Pl. LXXVIII.*) This command having been repeated, the colonels will add: *Fours right.*

1703. The general will then command:

MARCH.

1704. At the command *march*, the first battalion will deploy to the right on its first division.

1705. The other battalions will move by the right flank, each colonel adding: *Forward—Guide left*, the instant the fours shall have wheeled to the right.

1706. The first division, second battalion, having arrived opposite its interval, the colonel will move the battalion by the left flank with the guide to the left, giving the commands: 1. *On the first division, deploy column.* 2. *Fours right.* 3. MARCH, when at three paces from the markers.

1707. Each of the other battalions, when opposite its *point of rest*, will move by the left flank by the commands: 1. *Fours left.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide left*, and will deploy as explained for the second.

1708. The deployment will be made to the left on the first division, first battalion, according to the same principles; the general commanding: *To the left*, instead of *To the right*. The colonels adding: *Fours left.*

1709. The leading battalion will deploy by the left flank, the others will move by the left flank, each colonel giving the commands: 1. *Fours right.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide right*, when opposite his *point of rest*, and afterward the commands for deploying by the left flank on the first division.

1710. Should the general desire the line to face to the rear after the deployment, he will add to the command, *face to the rear*, after *deploy column*. Each battalion will execute, *on the first division, deploy column—face to the rear.*

1711. To form line at the rear of the column, facing either to the front or the rear, the general will first command :

1. *Face to the rear.*

1712. Which having been repeated, the colonels will add : *Fours right* (or *left*) *about*, according to the guide; the general will then add :

2. MARCH.

1713. The line having faced to the rear, will be deployed by the means already explained.

*To deploy the column of masses on the head of an interior battalion.*

1714. To deploy the column of masses to the left on the first division of the third battalion, the general will command :

1. *To the left on the first division, third battalion, deploy column.*

1715. (*Pl. LXXIX.*) This having been repeated, the colonels of the third and fourth battalions will command : *Fours left*; the colonels of the first and second, *Fours right*.

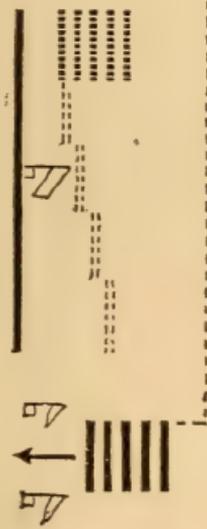
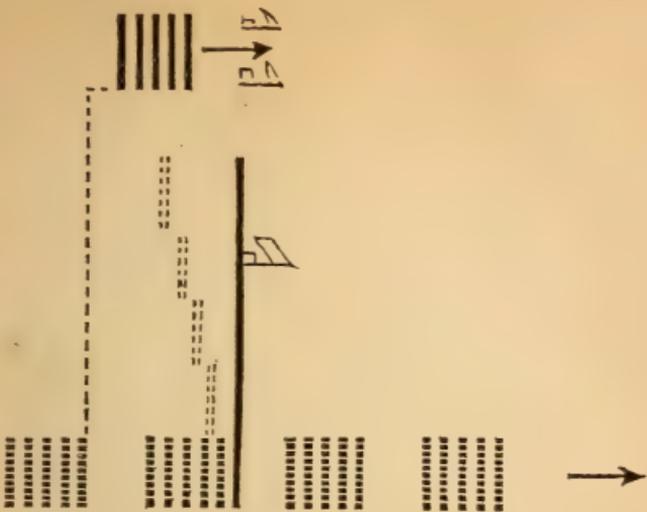
1716. The general will then add :

2. MARCH.

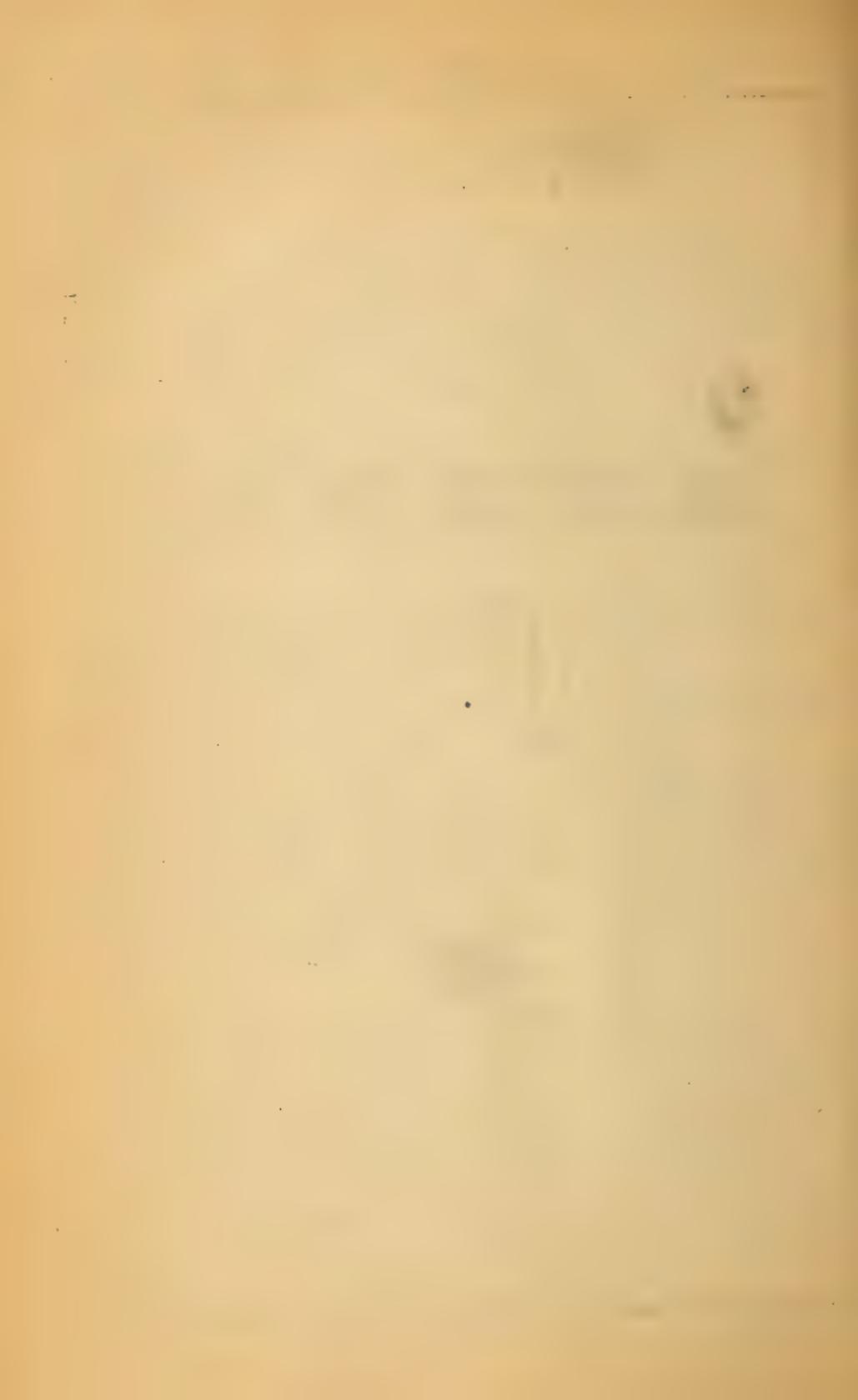
1717. At this command, the third and fourth battalions will each deploy as previously explained.

1718. The first and second will each march by the right flank till opposite its *point of rest*, when they will approach the line of battle by the commands : 1. *Fours right*. 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide right*. As they shall approach the markers, the colonels will command : 1. *On first division, deploy column—face to the rear*. 2. *Fours left*. 3. MARCH.

1719. The markers will be posted as in column at full distance, so as to permit the first or leading divi-



To the left on first division third battalion,  
 deploy column. No. 1715.







Line of masses on first division, first battalion. No. 1724.

sion to pass between them, three paces beyond the line of battle.

1720. The column may be deployed to the right on an interior battalion, according to the same principles, the leading battalions moving to the left.

## PART FIFTH.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

#### *Formation of line of masses.*

1721. The brigade being in line of battle, to form line of masses on the first division, first battalion, the general will command:

1. *Line of masses on first division, first battalion.*

1722. This command having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: 1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On first division right in front.* 3. *Fours right*; the other colonels will add: *Fours right.*

1723. The general will then command:

### 2. MARCH.

1724. (*Pl. LXXX.*) At this command, the first battalion will form in close column on its first division, right in front.

1725. The other battalions will march by the right flank, and when the head of each shall arrive at twenty-four paces from the flank of the second division of the battalion preceding, it will be formed in close column on its first division, right in front; the colonel giving the same command as the colonel of the first, omitting *fours right.*

1726. The markers for the rear battalions will be posted covering those established for the first; and the divisions will all be dressed to the right.

1727. The movement ended, the general will com-

mand: *Guides*—Posts, at which the markers will retire.

1728. Line of masses will be formed on the fifth division, fifth battalion, according to the same principles, each battalion wheeling by fours to the left, and forming close column left in front, the divisions being dressed to the left.

1729. (*Pl. LXXXI.*) Line of masses may also be formed on the first division of an interior battalion, in which case the designated battalion will ploy right in front, as will also, at the proper time, the battalions to its left, the divisions being dressed to the right; the battalions to the right will each ploy left in front, the divisions being dressed to the left.

1730. The brigade being in column of fours, to form line of masses on the first division, first battalion, the general will give the same command as in line of battle, and the movement will be executed in the same manner, except that the colonel of the first battalion will omit the command, *Fours right* (or *left*). The battalion will ploy right or left in front, according as the column of fours is right or left in front.

*Being in column of fours, to form line of masses to the front.*

1731. Being in column of fours, right in front, to form line of masses to the left and front, on the first division, first battalion, the general will command:

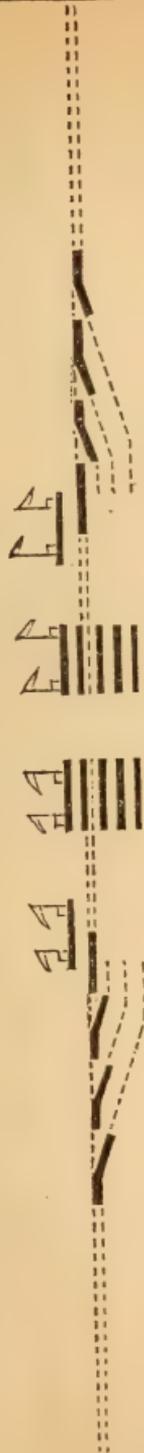
1. *Left front into line of masses.*

1732. (*Pl. LXXXII., fig. 1.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: *To the right, close column by division*; the other colonels will command: *Column half left.*

1733. The general will then command:

2. MARCH.

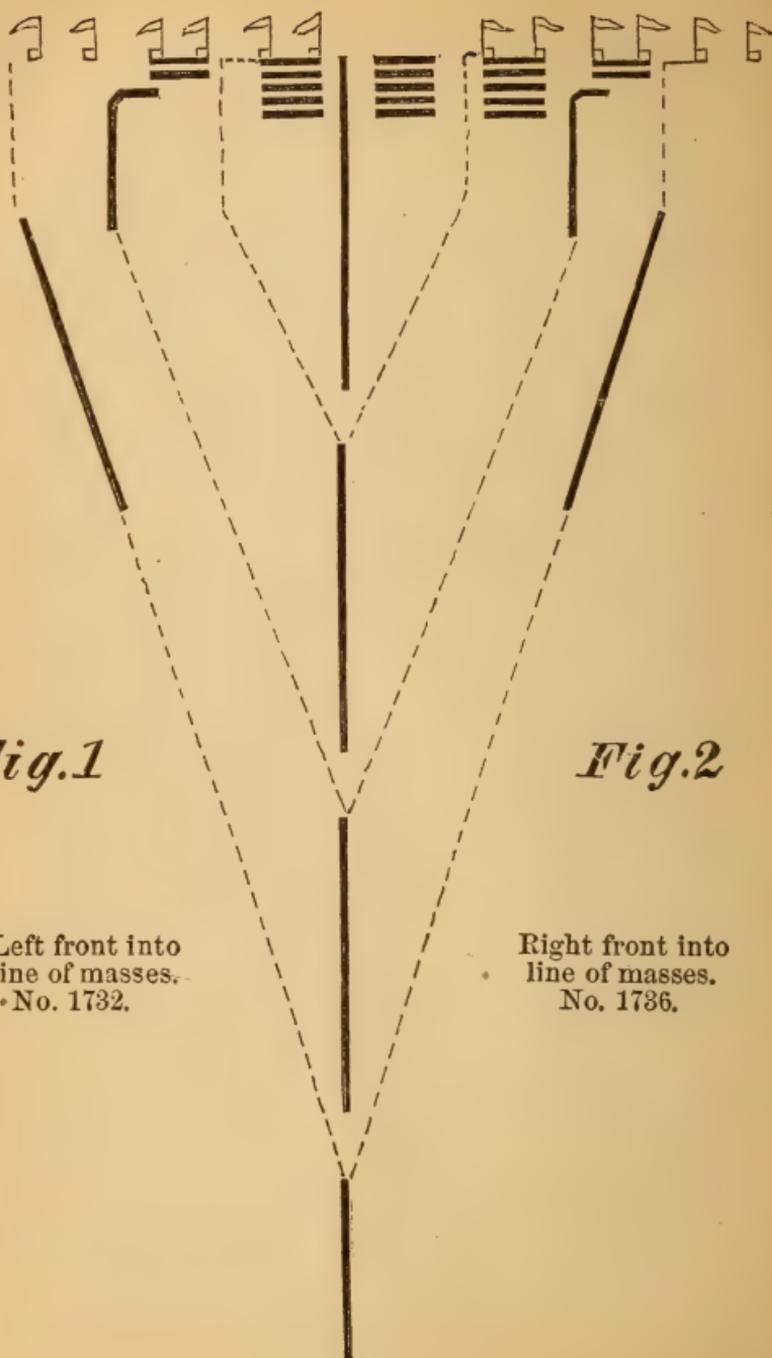
1734. At this command the first battalion will form close column to the right, the divisions being aligned to the right.



Line of masses on first division, third battalion. No. 1729.







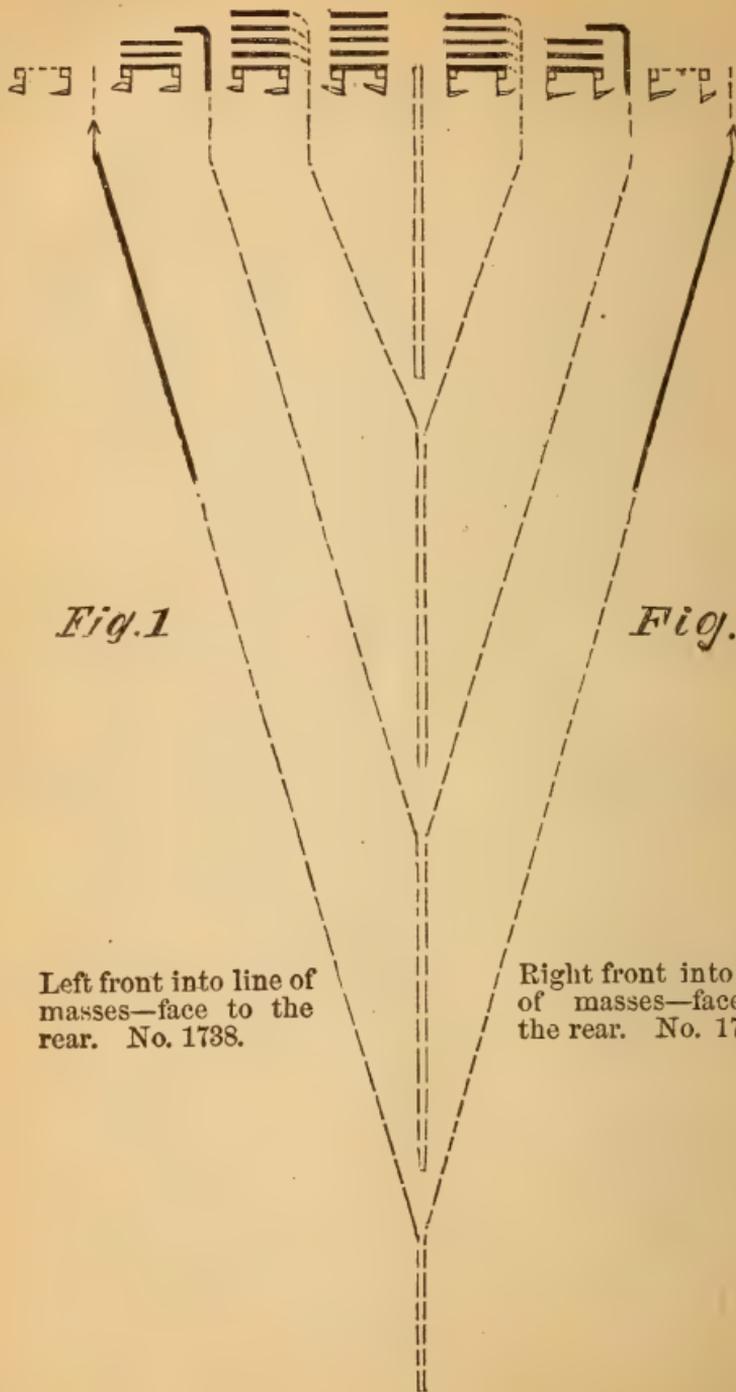
*Fig. 1*

Left front into  
line of masses.  
• No. 1732.

*Fig. 2*

Right front into  
line of masses.  
• No. 1736.





*Fig. 1*

*Fig. 2*

Left front into line of masses—face to the rear. No. 1738.

Right front into line of masses—face to the rear. No. 1742.

1735. The other colonels will each conduct the head of his battalion sufficiently far to the left to execute to the right close column by division, leaving the interval of twenty-four paces between the flank of his battalion and the one next in front; the divisions will be dressed by the right.

1736. (*Pl. LXXXII., fig. 2.*) To the right front into line of masses will be similarly executed, except that the rear battalions will break to the right, and the divisions will be dressed by the left.

1737. To form the line of masses to the left front, and facing to the rear, the general will command:

1. *Left front into line of masses—face to the rear.*

1738. (*Pl. LXXXIII., fig. 1.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: *On the left, close column by division*; the other colonels will command: *Column half left.*

1739. The general will then command:

## 2. MARCH.

1740. At this command, the leading battalion will execute on the left close column by division, the divisions being aligned by the left.

1741. The colonels of the other battalions will each conduct the head of his battalion sufficiently far to the left to enable him to execute on the left close column by division, and leave an interval of twenty-four paces between his battalion and the one preceding. The divisions will be aligned by the left.

1742. (*Pl. LXXXIII., fig. 2.*) *Right front into line of masses—face to the rear*, will be similarly executed, except that the rear battalions will break to the right, and the divisions will be dressed by the right.

1743. If the column of fours be left in front, line of masses will be formed in a similar manner.

1744. If the line be formed to the front, the bat-

talions will execute *to the left close column*, instead of *to the right*, as when right in front. If to the rear, they will execute *on the right*, instead of *on the left*.

1745. In each of these movements for forming line of masses, the field officer at the head of each battalion will establish the markers for the leading division; the markers will retire at the command: *Guides—Posts*, from the general.

1746. In line of masses, the colonel, lieutenant-colonel, majors, adjutant and sergeant-major will take their places as in column, on the side of the guides.

#### ARTICLE SECOND.

*Movements which may be executed by a line of masses.*

##### 1st. *The advance in line.*

1747. The general, wishing to advance in line of masses, will send a staff officer three or four hundred paces to the front, and having established him in front of the guides of the directing battalion (the second will here be supposed), he will command:

1. *The second, the battalion of direction.*

2. *Battalions forward.*

1748. These commands having been repeated, the colonels of the first and second battalions will add: *Guide left*; those of the third and fourth: *Guide right*.

1749. The general will then command:

3. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1750. At the command *march*, all the battalions will step off. The leading guide of the second will direct himself on the staff officer, and the others will march abreast with him, preserving the interval of twenty-four paces from the battalion next toward the one of direction. The chiefs of the leading divisions,

as well as the colonels on the side of the guides, will enforce the observance of this rule.

1751. The march of the line having become steady the directing guide will select points beyond the staff officer, who will then retire.

2d. *To march the line in retreat.*

1752. The general, wishing to march the line in retreat, will command :

1. *In retreat.*

1753. This having been repeated, the colonels will add: *Fours left about.* The general will then command :

2. MARCH.

1754. At this command all the battalions will wheel about by fours, each colonel commanding, FORWARD, and announcing the guide *right* or *left*, according as in the advance it was left or right. The second battalion, now the third, will remain the battalion of direction.

1755. Should the general desire the line to face to the rear, without marching in retreat, he will command :

1. *Face to the rear.*

1756. The colonels will immediately command: *Fours left about.* The general will then command: 2. MARCH, the colonels adding, HALT, upon the completion of the *about.*

1757. For the sake of uniformity, whether in line of masses or in line of battle, to march in retreat, or to face to the rear, the colonels will always command: *Fours left about.*

3d. *To halt the line of masses.*

1758. The general, wishing to halt the line of masses, will command :

1. *Battalions.* 2. HALT.

1759. At the second command, the line will halt.

1760. Should it be necessary to rectify the line, the general will assure the markers of the right or left battalion on the desired direction, and then command:

*Guides on the line.*

1761. At this command, the field officer at the head of each battalion will post the two markers covering and facing those established by the general, which being done, the colonels will command: *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS, according as the *point of rest* is to the right or left.

1762. At the command *dress*, the leading division of each battalion will dress up against the markers; the other divisions will dress upon their guides as soon as established at the distance of six paces. Each chief having aligned his division, will command: FRONT.

1763. The alignment ended, the general will command: *Guides*—POSTS, at which the markers will retire.

4th. *To change direction marching in line of masses.*

1764. The line of masses being in march, to change direction to the right, the general will command:

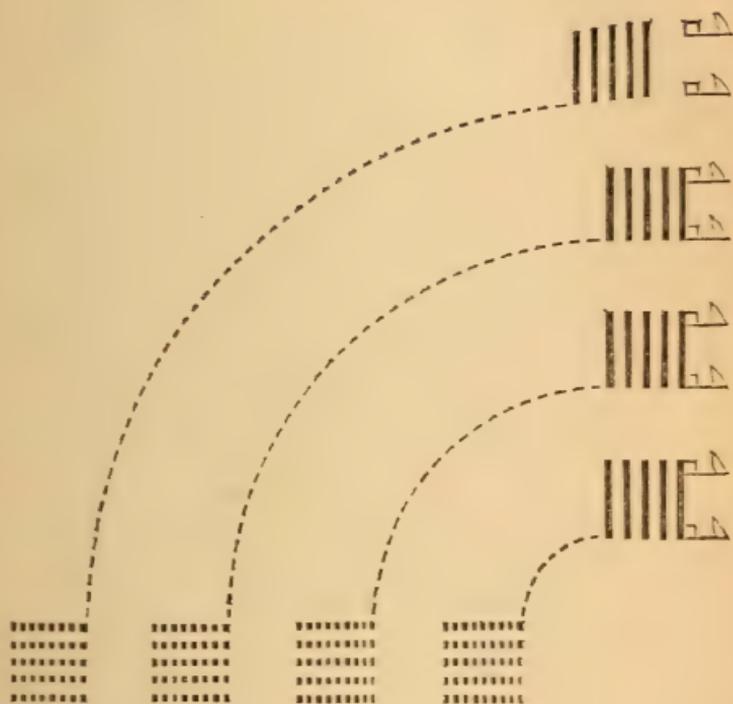
1. *Change direction to the right.*

1765. (*Pl. LXXXIV.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the right battalion will command: *Battalion right wheel*; the other colonels will command: *Guide right.*

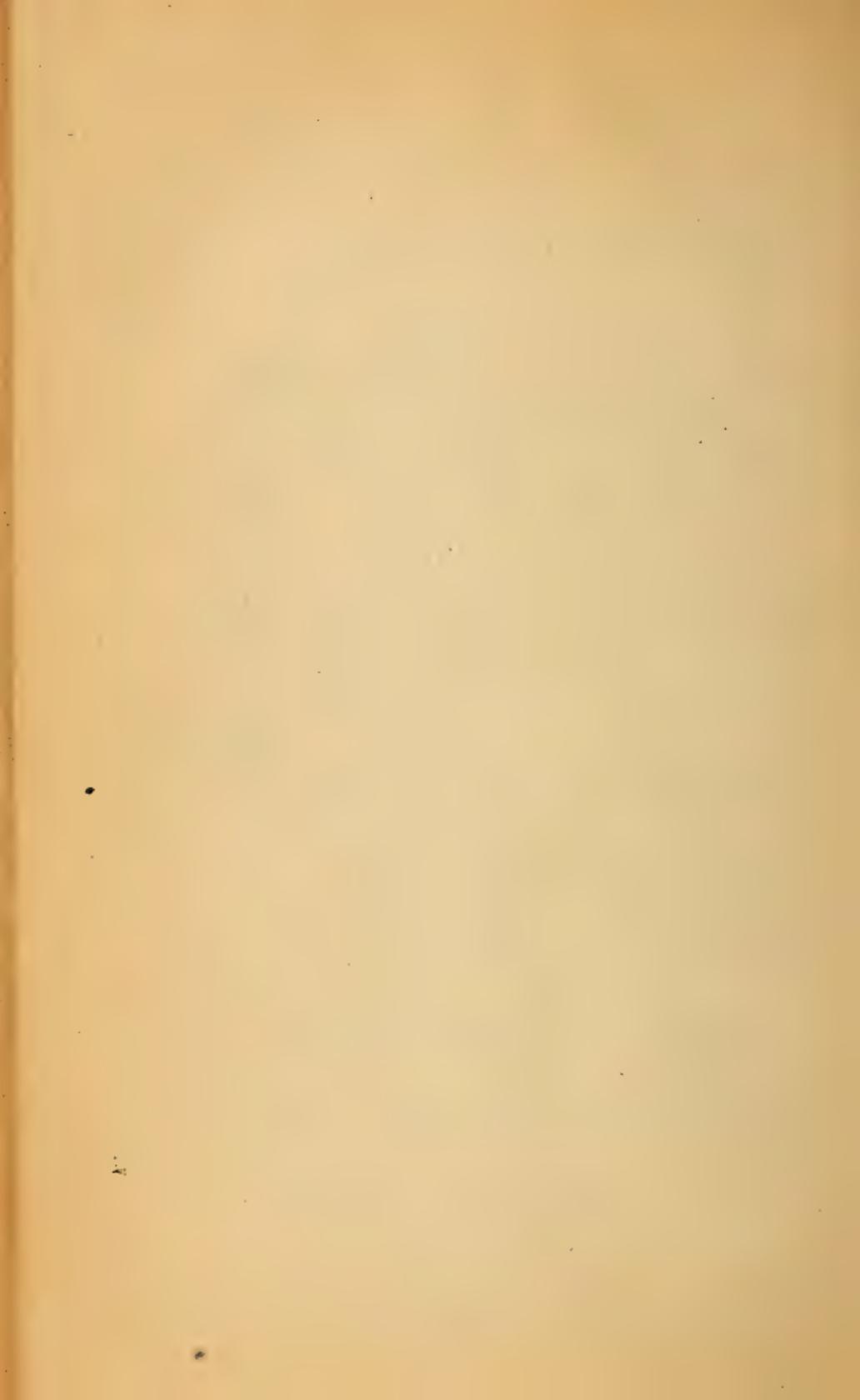
1766. The general will then add:

## 2. MARCH.

1767. At this command, the right battalion will wheel to the right; the colonel will command: *For-*



Change direction to the right. No. 1765.



*ward.* MARCH, when the first division shall have completed the wheel; and as soon as the rear division shall have completed its change of direction he will command: *Column.* HALT.

1768. At the command *halt*, the field officer at the head of the column will establish the two markers three paces in front of the first division, which being done, the colonel will command: *Right—DRESS.*

1769. The other battalions will direct themselves circularly to the right, the leading guides advancing slightly the left-shoulder, so that the leading division of each, when at twenty-four paces from the line established by the markers of the right battalion, shall be parallel with it; arrived at three paces from the markers established by the field officer at the head of the column, each colonel will command: 1. *Column.* 2. HALT. 3. *Right—DRESS.*

1770. The movement ended, the general will command:

*Guides—Posts.*

1771. If the line of masses be at a halt, at the first command of the general, the colonel of the right battalion will command: 1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. *Battalion right wheel;* the other colonels will command: 1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide right.*

1772. At the command *march*, the change of direction will be executed as already explained.

1773. The change of direction to the left will be similarly executed.

1774. The staff officer charged with the direction will see that the markers of the first battalion are established on the true line, and that the markers of the other battalions accurately cover them.

5th. *To march the line of masses by the flank.*

1775. The general, wishing to march the line of masses by the right flank, will command:

1. *By the right flank.*

1776. This having been repeated, the colonels will add: *Fours right.*

1777. The general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1778. At the command *march*, each battalion will wheel by fours to the right, the colonels giving the commands: FORWARD. *Guide left.*

1779. The left division of each battalion will be the guide, and will preserve the distance of twenty-four paces from the corresponding division of the preceding battalion.

1780. The march by the left flank will be similarly executed, the guide of each battalion being right.

6th. *The line of masses marching by the flank, to change direction.*

1781. To change direction marching by the flank, either to the right or left, the general will command:

*Change direction to the right (or left).*

1782. This having been repeated, he will command:

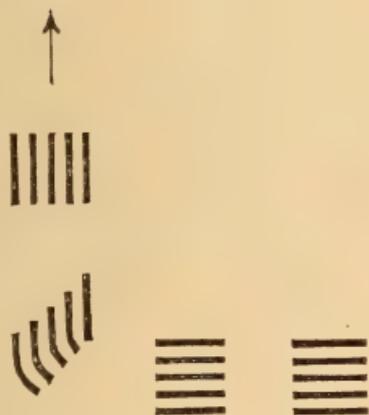
MARCH.

1783. (*Pl. LXXXV.*) At the command *march*, the right (or left) division of the leading battalion will change direction to the right (or left) as if alone; the other divisions will increase the gait till the head of each arrives abreast with that of the right (or left), marching in the new direction.

1784. The other battalions will change direction on the same ground as the first.

7th. *Marching by the flank in line of masses, to form line to the left or right.*

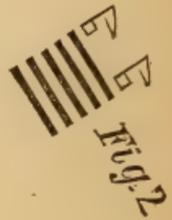
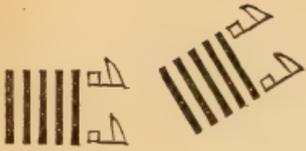
1785. The line of masses marching by the flank, to form line to the left, and continue the march, the general will command:



Change direction to the right. No. 1783.







Take deploying intervals. No. 1792-1801.

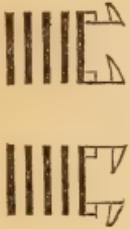


Fig. 1

1. *By the left flank.*

1786. Which having been repeated, the colonels will add: *Fours left.*

1787. The general will then command:

2. MARCH. 3. *The second, the battalion of direction.*

1788. At the command *march*, the battalions will wheel by fours to the left, each colonel adding: FORWARD. *Guide left (or right).*

1789. Should the general not desire the line to advance, he will give the command: HALT, immediately after the command *march.*

1790. The line will be formed to the right by similar commands and means.

8th. *Being in line of masses, to take deploying intervals.*

1791. The general, wishing to take deploying intervals, will send two aides to mark the points where the right and left battalions will rest, and then command:

*On (such) battalion take deploying intervals.*

1792. (*Pl. LXXXVI., fig. 1.*) This having been repeated, the field officer at the head of the battalion designated, and the one on its left, will establish the markers three paces in front of the first division; the colonels of these battalions will caution them to stand fast; the colonels to the right will command: *Fours right*; those to the left, *Fours left.*

1793. The general will then command:

MARCH.

1794. At this command, the colonel of the designated battalion will command: *Left—DRESS*; the one on his left will command: *Right—DRESS.*

1795. The battalions to the right will move by the right flank, the colonels adding: FORWARD—*Guide left*; those to the left will move by the left flank, with the guide right.

1796. When the battalion next to the right shall have marched a distance equal to the front of four divisions of the battalion of direction, the colonel will command: 1. *Fours left*. 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. *Left—DRESS*; the first division being aligned against the markers.

1797. Should there be two battalions to the right, the second will march, after the first shall halt, a distance equal to the front of four divisions of the first.

1798. The same rule will obtain with the left battalions, the colonels commanding, when at their intervals: 1. *Fours right*. 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. *Right—DRESS*.

1799. The movement ended, the general will command:

#### *Guides—Posts.*

1800. Should the position, which the general may wish the line of battle to occupy, be in advance of that occupied by the line of masses, he will cause a staff-officer to establish in advance the marker for the directing battalion, and then command:

*Forward on (such) battalion, take deploying intervals.*

1801. (*Pl. LXXXVI., fig. 2.*) At this command, the directing battalion will be put in march with the guide left, and will direct itself upon its markers; the battalion on its left, will move, with the guide to the right, so as to arrive on the line twenty-four paces to its left; the other battalions will be conducted to the line, taking the same interval as in executing the movement by the flank.

#### 9th. *To deploy masses.*

1802. Wishing to deploy masses, the general will command:

#### 1. *Deploy masses.*

1803. This having been repeated, the colonel of the directing battalion and those to its right will com-

mand: 1. *On the first division, deploy column.* 2. *Fours right*; those to the left will command: 1. *On the first division, deploy column.* 2. *Fours left.*

1804. The general will then command:

## 2. MARCH.

1805. At which all the battalions will deploy, each colonel commanding: *Guides—Posts*, as soon as the deployment is finished.

10th. *The masses being at deploying intervals, to close intervals.*

1806. The general, wishing to close intervals, will command:

1. *On (such) battalion, close intervals.*

1807. At this command, the markers of the designated battalion will be posted three paces in front of its first division, and the colonel will caution it to stand fast; the colonels to the right will command: *Fours left*; those to the left, excepting the colonel of the battalion next to the one designated, should it be already at twenty-four paces, will command: *Fours right.*

1808. The general will then add:

2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1809. At this command, the battalions will close to twenty-four paces' interval on the designated battalion; those to its right dressing by the left; those to the left by the right.

1810. The movement ended, the general will command:

*Guides—Posts.*

## ARTICLE THIRD.

*Formation of line of masses into column of masses.*

1st. *Column of masses to the right or left.*

1811. The general, wishing to form column of masses facing to the right, will command:

1. *To the right, column of masses.*

1812. (*Pl. LXXXVII., fig. 1.*) This having been repeated, the field officer at the head of each battalion will post the markers for changing direction by the left flank; the colonels will command: 1. *Change direction by the left flank.* 2. *Fours left.*

1813. The general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1814. At which each battalion will execute, independently, the change of direction by the left flank.

1815. To the left column of masses will be similarly executed, the battalions changing direction by the right flank.

2d. *Column of masses to the front or rear.*

1816. To form column of masses to the front, the general will command:

1. *Column of masses—on (such) battalion—right in front.*

1817. (*Pl. LXXXVII., fig. 2.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the designated battalion will caution it to stand fast; the colonels to the right will command: *Column forward—Guide left*; those to the left: 1. *Fours left about.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. *Column forward.* 5. *Guide left.*

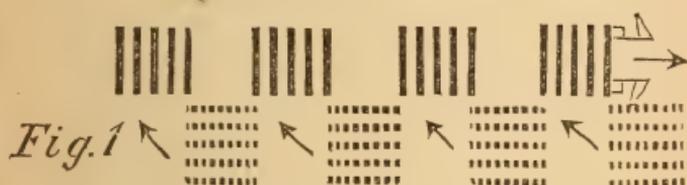
1818. The general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

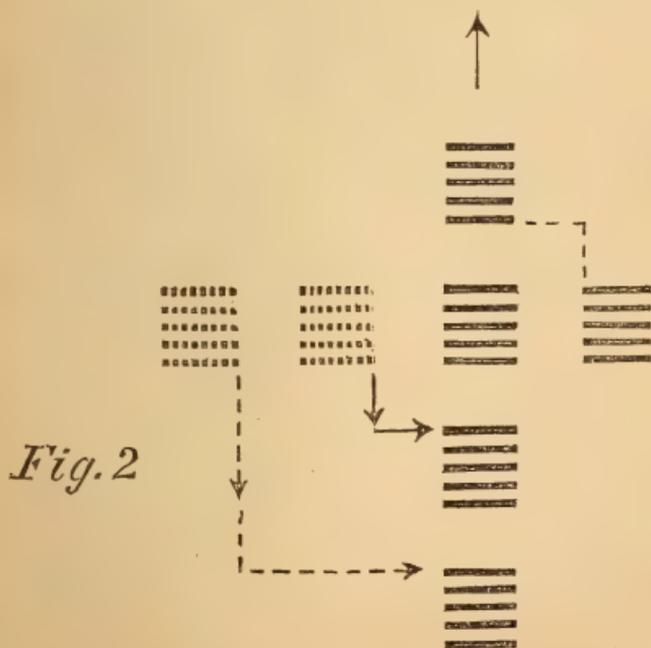
1819. At the command *march*, the colonel of the directing battalion will command: *Left—DRESS*; and will see that the guides are perpendicular to the line of masses.

1820. The right battalions will march to the front, each colonel giving the command: 1. *Fours left.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide left*, when his rear division shall have advanced beyond the leading division of the battalion next on the left, a distance equal to the front of a division of that battalion less

To the right, column of masses. No. 1812.



Column of masses, on second battalion, right in front. No. 1817.





three paces. Arrived at three paces from the line of the guides of the column, the colonels will command: 1. *Fours right*. 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.

1821. At the command *halt*, the guides will be established facing to the rear; which being done, the colonels will command: *Left—DRESS*; and afterward: *Guides about—FACE*.

1822. The left battalions will each march to the rear, till opposite its place in column, when the colonel will command: 1. *Fours left*. 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide left*. Arrived on the line of guides, the chiefs of division will halt, and when the rear of their divisions shall approach them, the colonel will command: 1. *Fours left*. 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. *Left—DRESS*.

1823. The field officer at the head of each battalion will move in advance to indicate the point where the battalion will move by the flank, in order to enter the column.

1824. A staff officer will attend to the guides in front of the battalion indicated.

1825. Should the general command *left* in front, the same principles will be observed; the right battalions will march to the rear; the left battalions to the front. The divisions will be dressed by the right.

1826. To form column of masses to the rear, the general will first cause the battalions to face to the rear, and then give the same commands as for forming to the front.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

*Formation from column of masses into line of masses.*

1st. *Line of masses to the right or left.*

1827. The general, wishing to form line of masses, facing either to the right or the left, will first cause the guides to cover, and the battalions to be dressed toward that flank by which the movement is to be executed; if to the right, he will command:

*To the right, line of masses.*

1828. (*Pl. LXXXVIII., fig. 1.*) This having been repeated, the field officer at the head of each battalion will post the markers for changing direction by the left flank. The colonels will each command:

1. *Change direction by the left flank.* 2. *Fours left.*

1829. The general will then command:

MARCH.

1830. This having been repeated, each battalion will change direction by the left flank.

1831. To the left line of masses will be similarly executed, each battalion changing direction by the right flank.

*2d. Line of masses to the front.*

1832. The general, wishing to deploy the column of masses into line of masses to the left front, on the first battalion, will command: *To the left, line of masses on first battalion.*

1833. (*Pl. LXXXVIII., fig. 2.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will caution it to stand fast; the colonels of the other battalions will command: *Fours left.*

1834. The general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1835. At this, the colonel of the first battalion will command: *Right*—DRESS, the first division moving forward three paces and dressing upon the markers.

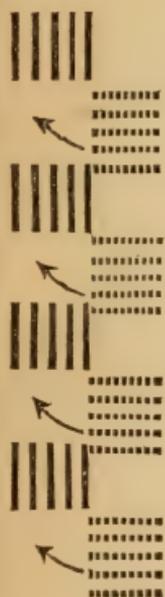
1836. The other battalions will move by the left flank till opposite their intervals in line, when they will move by the right flank, with the guide to the right. Arrived at three paces from the markers, each colonel will halt his battalion and dress it by the right.

1837. The movement ended, the general will command:

*Guides*—POSTS.

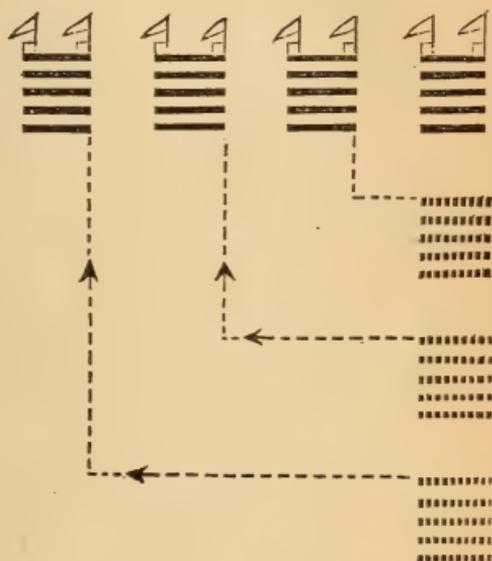
1838. At which the markers will retire.

*Fig 1*



To the right, line of masses. No. 1828.

*Fig. 2*



To the left, line of masses, on first battalion. No. 1833.



1839. To the right front line of masses on the first battalion will be similarly executed, the battalions moving by the right flank and being dressed by the left.

1840. Should the general command to the left front line of masses, on the fourth battalion, the fourth battalion, at the command *march*, will stand fast, and as soon as unmasked, will be put in march to the front. Arrived near the line, it will be halted and dressed by the right against the markers established three paces in front of the first division, first battalion.

1841. The front battalions will move by the left flank, each being halted when opposite its interval, then marched to the line of battle when unmasked, as explained for the fourth.

1842. To the right front line of masses on the fourth battalion will be similarly executed. The battalions will move by the right flank and be dressed to the left.

1843. The column may be deployed on any interior battalion, the general commanding:

1. *Line of masses on (such) battalion.* 2. *Front battalions, to the right (or left).*

1844. This having been repeated, the colonel of the designated battalion will caution it to stand fast. The colonels in front will command: 1. *Fours right (or left)*; those in the rear: *Fours left (or right)*.

1845. The general will then command:

3. MARCH (OR *double time*—MARCH).

1846. At this command, the designated battalion will stand fast till unmasked, when it will march forward to the line, with the guide to the right. The battalions in front will deploy as explained on the fourth battalion; those in the rear as on the first.

1847. To deploy the column of masses into line of masses on an interior battalion, standing fast, the general will command:

1. *Line of masses on (such) battalion standing fast.*
2. *Front battalions to the right (or left).*

1848. This having been repeated, the colonel of the designated battalion will caution it to stand fast; the colonels in front will command, *Fours right (or left)*; those in rear, *Fours left (or right)*.

1849. The general will then command:

MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1850. At the command *march*, the designated battalion will be dressed by the left. The battalions in rear will deploy by the left as on the first battalion.

1851. The front battalions will each move by the right flank till opposite its interval in the line of masses, when the colonel will move it by the right flank, with the guide to the right; cross the line of battle, wheel about by fours, and dress it by the left.

1852. The field officers who establish the markers for the front battalions will place them sufficiently far apart to permit the divisions to pass between them. The rear division having crossed the line, the rear marker will close in so as to be opposite one of its right files.

1853. The same principles will be observed if the front battalions are ordered to the left.

1854. A staff officer, in the deployments from column to line of masses, will place himself at the *point of rest*, and see that the markers are posted covering those first established.

1855. The formation of troops from line of battle or column of fours into line of masses or column of masses, the movements incident to line of masses and column of masses, and the deployment of troops from line of masses or column of masses into line of battle, involve nearly all the principles of GRAND TACTICS, and should be made not only thoroughly familiar to the colonels, but the general, by frequent practice, should enable himself to concentrate his troops in any

position, and to form his line facing in any direction, with the utmost celerity. He should likewise note the time required for the various movements, so that in the presence of the enemy he may command with composure, and cause all movements to be executed with calmness both by the officers and men.

## PART SIXTH.

### ARTICLE FIRST.

*To close column to half distance or in mass.*

1856. In column at half distance, the distance between battalions will be equal to the front of a subdivision, the same as in column of masses.

1st. *To close the column on the leading company.*

1857. A column by company at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the general shall wish to close it to half distance, he will command:

1. *To half distance close column.*

1858. Which having been repeated, he will add:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1859. At the command *march*, the leading company will stand fast, and will be aligned by the left.

1860. All the other companies will step off, the leading battalion closing at once to half distance.

1861. The other battalions will each close successively upon its leading company, when it shall arrive at subdivision distance from the rear of the battalion next preceding. The field officer at the head of the column will move in advance to designate this point, and afterward will assure the guides, placing himself in their rear as they successively arrive.

1862. The staff officer, charged with the general direction of the guides, will place himself in front of the leading guide of the column and face to the rear.

1863. If the column be in march, the commands of the general will be the same; if in quick time, the leading company will halt; if in double time, or in quick time, and the command be double time, it will march in quick time, and the other companies will take this gait successively as they close to half distance.

2d. *To close column on the rearmost company.*

1864. To close column to half distance on the rearmost company, the general will command:

1. *On rear company fourth battalion.* 2. *To half distance close column.*

1865. This having been repeated, the colonels will add: *Fours right about.*

1866. The general will then command:

3. MARCH.

1867. At the command *march*, all the companies of the column, except the rearmost, will wheel about by fours, upon the completion of which the colonels will command: 1. FORWARD. 2. *Guide right.*

1868. The rearmost company will stand fast, and be dressed by the left; the other companies of the fourth battalion will close successively upon the rear, each wheeling by fours to the right about, and being dressed by the left upon arriving at its distance.

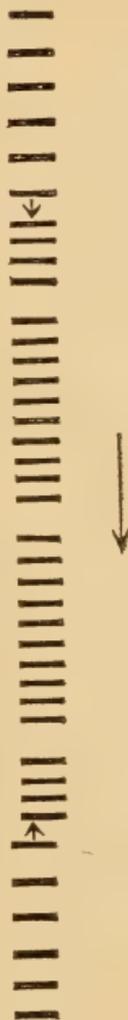
1869. The other battalions will continue the march; the field officer at the rear of each (now become the head) will move in advance to indicate the point where the rear company will rest; arrived at this point the company will wheel by fours to the right about, halt, and be dressed by the left. The other companies will close as explained for the fourth battalion.

1870. Each battalion having closed, its colonel will command: *Guides—ABOUT FACE.*

1871. The officer charged with the direction of the



On the first company third battalion, to half distance close column. No. 1573.



On rear company second battalion, take wheeling distance. No. 1592.



guides will place himself behind the rearmost guide and will face to the front.

1872. The column may be closed on the first company of any interior battalion by the commands :

1. *On the first company (such) battalion.*
2. *To half distance close column.*

1873. (*Pl. LXXXIX.*) Which having been repeated, the colonels of the battalions in front will command : *Fours right about.*

1874. The general will then add :

### MARCH.

1875. At which the designated battalion and those in rear will close as on the head of the column ; those in front as on the rear of the column.

1876. A column left in front will close to half distance upon the same principles, the subdivisions being dressed to the right. In closing upon the rear of the column the subdivisions will wheel by fours to the left about.

1877. The column being at full or half distance, the general will cause it to close in mass by the same commands, substituting *column close in mass* for *to half distance close column.*

### ARTICLE SECOND.

*Being in column at half distance, or closed in mass, to take distances.*

1878. A column by company being at half distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the general shall wish it to take distances, with a view to continuing the march, he will command :

1. *By the head of column, take wheeling distance.*

1879. Which having been repeated, the captain of the leading company will command : (such) *Company. Forward. Guide left.*

1880. The general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

1881. At the command *march*, the leading battalion will take distances by the head of the column, and the others successively, the leading company of each stepping off when it shall be at subdivision distance and twenty-four paces from the rear company of the preceding battalion.

1882. The same commands will be given if the column be in march.

1883. If in quick time, the leading company will continue in that gait, and the others will halt, each resuming its march when at wheeling distance.

1884. If in double time, the leading company will continue in that gait, and the others will march in quick time till their distances are gained, when they will take the double time.

1885. If in quick time, and the command of the general be double time, the leading company will take the double time, and the others will march in quick time till they shall have their distances, when they will take the double time.

1886. Should the general desire to take distances with a view to form line either to the right or left, with one flank resting near the rear of the column, he will first change the guide to the flank toward which the line is to be formed, and then send an aide to a point a little beyond where the other flank will rest; this being done, he will give the same commands as before.

1887. The leading guide will direct himself upon the officer established, and the others will follow accurately in his trace. The general will command: 1. *Column*. 2. HALT, the instant the rearmost company of the column shall have its distance.

1888. Should he desire one of the flanks to rest at or near the head of the column, he will first com-

mand: *Face to the rear*. MARCH; which having been executed, he will conform to what is explained above.

1889. Having halted the column, he may form line at once to the right or left, or, if he prefer, he may cause the column to face in its original direction, by the commands: 1. *Face to the rear*. 2. MARCH.

1890. Distances will be taken by a column left in front by the same commands and means, the companies being put in march with the guide to the right.

1891. When the general shall wish to take distances on an interior battalion, he will send staff officers to the front and rear, who, having established themselves on the prolongation of the guides, he will command:

*On rear company, (such) battalion take wheeling distance.*

1892. (*Pl. XC.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the battalions in rear of the one designated, will command: 1. *Fours right about*. 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.

1893. The general will then command:

MARCH.

1894. At the command *march*, distances will be taken by the head of column, both by the battalions which remain faced to the front, and those which have wheeled about by fours.

1895. When the rear company of the designated battalion shall nearly have its distance, the colonel will command: *Column*; which will be repeated by the colonels in front, and the instant it shall have its distance, he will command: HALT.

1896. At the command *halt*, which will be promptly repeated, the designated battalion and those in front will halt.

1897. When the rear company of the battalion next in rear of the designated one, shall have gained subdivision distance and twenty-four paces, the colo-

nel will command : 1. *Fours right about.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT; which command will be repeated and executed by all the battalions which have wheeled about. The subdivisions will be dressed to the left.

1898. If the left be in front, the battalions in rear of the directing one will wheel by fours to the left about.

1899. A column in mass will take distances by the same commands as when at half distance. Should the general desire to take half distance, he will substitute in the command, *half distance* for *wheeling distance*.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

*To march in column at half distance.*

1900. A column at half distance will be put in march, will change direction, and will be halted by the same commands as a column at full distance.

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

*Column at half distance into line.*

1901. Should the general desire to form the column at half distance to the right or left into line, he will first cause wheeling distance to be taken, and then give the same commands as at full distance.

1902. To form the column at half distance front into line, the general will give the same commands as when at full distance, and the movement will be similarly executed, except that each battalion, upon approaching its point of rest, will be deployed upon its leading subdivision instead of forming front into line.

#### ARTICLE FIFTH.

*Being in column by company, to form divisions.*

1903. The brigade being in column by company right (or left) in front at a halt, and either at full, half distance, or in mass, to form division, the general will command :

1. *Form divisions.*

1904. Which being repeated, the colonels will add:

1. *Rear companies.* 2. *Fours left (or right.)*

1905. The general will then command:

## 2. MARCH.

1906. At which each battalion will execute the movement.

1907. If the column be in march, either at full or half distance, the general will give the same commands, and the colonels will add: *Right (or left) oblique.*

1908. At the command *march*, the front companies of each division will oblique to the right (or left). The colonels will give the command: 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH, the instant the divisions of their battalions are formed, and will announce the guide on the same flank as before the movement.

1909. Being in column by division right (or left) in front at full or half distance, and on the march, when the general shall wish to break into companies, he will command: 1. *Break into companies.* Which being repeated, the colonels will add:

1. *By the right (or left) break into companies.*

1910. The general will then command:

## 2. MARCH.

1911. At which command the divisions will break; the right (or left) companies moving forward, according as the right or left is in front.

## ARTICLE SIXTH.

*Change of direction marching in line of battle.*

1912. The brigade marching in line of battle, when the general shall wish to execute a change of direc-

tion to the right, less than forty-five degrees, he will indicate the new line to a staff officer, who will post two markers forty or fifty paces apart, the first in front of the right of the first battalion; he will then command:

1. *Change direction to the right.*

1913. (*Pl. XCI.*) This being repeated, each colonel will command: 1. *Battalion, right wheel.*

1914. The general will then command: 2. MARCH, and the movement will commence.

1915. The first battalion will wheel till its front shall be parallel to the new line, when the colonel will move it forward, and halt it at three paces from the markers. He will then command:

1. *Colors and general guides—On the line.*

1916. At this command, the color and general guides will face the staff officer, and being established by him, the colonel will command: 2. *Guides on the line.* 3. *On the centre—DRESS.*

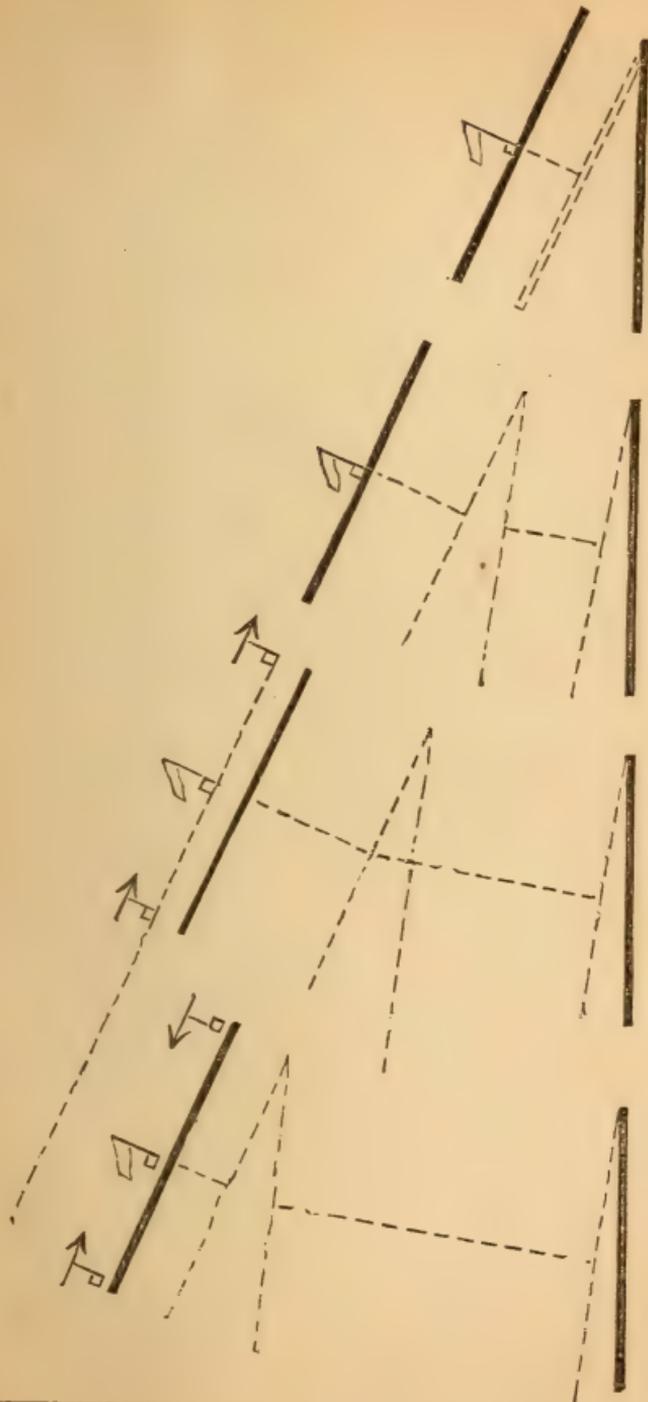
1917. The other colonels will each, as soon as his battalion shall be sufficiently disengaged, command: *Forward—MARCH*, and conduct it by alternate wheels and marches to the front, so as to approach parallel to the line of battle. Arrived at three paces from the markers established by the field officer of the right wing, he will halt the battalion and align it as prescribed for the colonel of the first.

1918. The color and general guides will be assured by the field officer of the left wing.

1919. Each colonel will *order arms* as soon as his battalion shall be aligned, and order in his guides when two colors shall be established as prescribed in successive formations.

1920. Staff officers will pass along the line and indicate the *point of rest* for each battalion.

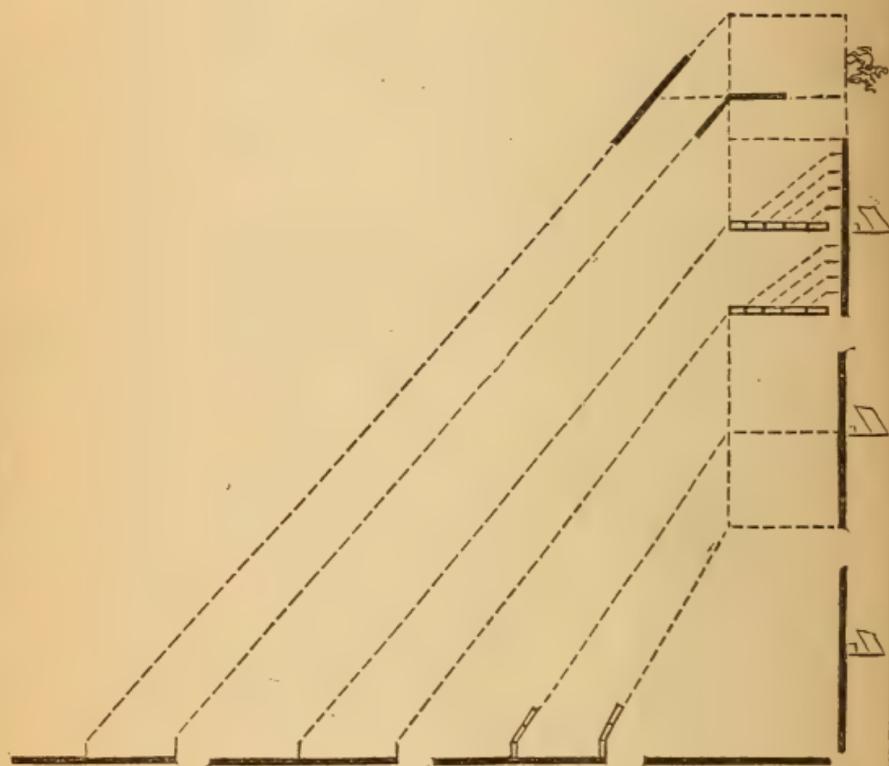
1921. The movement ended, the general will command:



Change direction to the right. No. 1913.







Change front forward on first battalion. No. 1925.

*Colors—Posts.*

1922. Change of direction to the left will be executed according to the same principles.

1923. Should the line of battle be halted, it will execute changes of direction of less than forty-five degrees, by the same commands and means as when on the march. If the change be greater than forty-five degrees, the means following will be employed:

## ARTICLE SEVENTH.

*Changes of front.*

1924. The brigade being in line of battle, when the general shall wish to execute a change of direction greater than forty-five degrees, throwing the left wing forward, he will indicate the new line to a staff officer, who will post two markers for the first company of the first battalion. The general will then command:

1. *Change front forward on first battalion.*

1925. (*Pl. XCII.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: *By company, right half wheel*; the other colonels will command: 1. *By wing.* 2. *Right forward, fours right.*

1926. The general will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double time—MARCH*).

1927. At this command, the first battalion will change front forward on its right company.

1928. The other battalions will move forward by the right of wings, the colonel conducting the right wing, the field officer of the left wing, the left; the head of each wing, without regulating by the other, will take the shortest line to a point in rear, and distant from its point of rest, equal to the depth of the wing in column of fours; arrived at this point, the wings will incline to the right, and when at company distance from the line of battle, by the commands of

the colonel and field officer, will be formed *left front into line*.

1929. The wings having executed this movement, the colonel will order the color and general guides on the line, and then dress the battalion on the centre.

1930. The field officer of the right wing of each battalion will establish the markers for the right company. Should there be no field officer except the colonel, he will give the commands for each wing to form front into line.

1931. The movement ended, the general will command :

#### *Colors—Posts.*

1932. The change of front forward on fourth battalion will be similarly executed; the fourth battalion will change front on its left company. The other battalions will move forward by the left of wings, and will form right front into line.

1933. Should the general desire the line to face to the left after changing front forward on first battalion, he will command :

1. *Change front forward on first battalion—face to the left.*
2. MARCH.

1934. The first battalion will execute *change front forward on right company—face to the left*, and the other battalions will execute *by wing, left front into line—face to the rear*. The companies will all pass the line of battle three paces, and then wheel about by fours.

1935. Change front forward on fourth battalion, face to the right, will be similarly executed.

1936. Should the general desire to change front to the rear, on either the first or fourth battalion, he will cause the line to face to the rear, and then give the commands for change of front forward on fourth or first battalion.

*Central change of front.*

1937. Should the general desire to change front on the third battalion, throwing the left wing forward, he will command :

1. *Change front on third battalion, left wing forward.*

1938. This having been repeated, the colonel of the third battalion will command : 1. *Change front forward on right company.* 2. *By company, right half wheel* ; the colonel of the fourth : 1. *By wing, right forward.* 2. *Fours right* ; the colonel of the second : 1. *Fours left about.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT 4. *Battalion.* 5. *Forward* ; the colonel of the first : 1. *Fours left about.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. *By wing.* 5. *Right forward.* 6. *Fours right.*

1939. The general will then add :

2. MARCH.

1940. At this command, the third and fourth battalions will change front forward, as previously explained for the first and second.

1941. The colonel of the second will march his battalion twenty-four paces to the rear, when he will cause it to execute *change front forward on right company—face to the left* ; the markers will be posted covering those of the third battalion.

1942. The first battalion, when it approaches the new line, will execute by wing, *left front into line—face to the rear.*

1943. All changes of front will be perpendicular, unless otherwise indicated.

1944. The brigade being in two lines, in changing front to the right, the battalion in rear of the one on which the change is to be executed, will move to its new position by the left flank ; if the change be to the left, it will move by the right flank.

## ARTICLE EIGHTH.

*To advance the line of battle by the flank of subdivisions.*

1945. The general, wishing to advance the line of battle by the flank of subdivisions, will command :

1. *By the right (or left) of wings (or divisions) to the front.*

1946. (*Pl. XCIII.*) This command having been repeated, each colonel will add : 1. *By wing (or division).*  
2. *Right (or left) forward.* 3. *Fours right (or left).*

1947. The general will then command :

2. MARCH. 3. *The third, the battalion of direction.*

1948. At the command *march*, the battalions will move forward by the right or left of wings or divisions ; the colonel of the third will command : *Guide right (or centre)* ; the colonels to the right : *Guide left* ; those to the left : *Guide right.*

1949. The heads of wings or divisions will maintain themselves as nearly as possible abreast with the head of the right wing, or color-division of the directing battalion, and will preserve the interval necessary to form front into line.

1950. The field officers of the wings will march abreast with the heads of the right and left wings or divisions, the one next toward the guide being responsible for the preservation of twenty-four paces, and the interval necessary to form front into line.

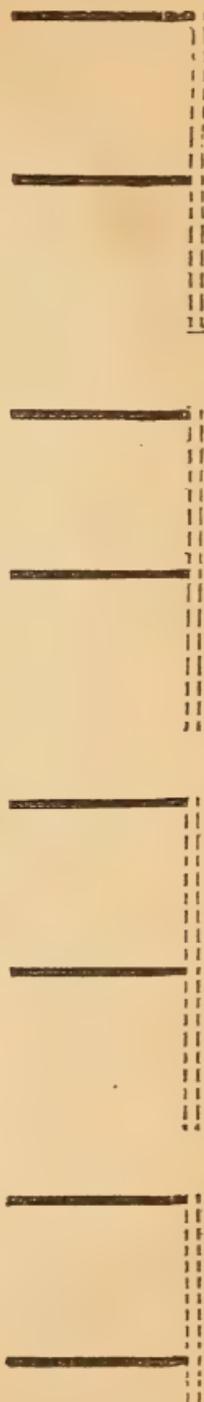
1951. The colonels will give a general superintendence to the march of their battalions.

1952. The general may prolong by staff officers, if necessary, the direction in which the guide of the directing battalion should march.

*To form line marching by the right or left of wings or divisions.*

1953. Marching by the right of wings or divisions, to form line, the general will command :

By the right of wings to the front. No. 1946.





1. *By wing or division left front into line.*

1954. This having been repeated, the general will add:

## 2. MARCH.

1955. At this command, all the wings or divisions will execute the *left front into line*; the leading four of each having marched company distance to the front, the colonels will command: 1. *Battalion.* 2. HALT.

1956. If moving by the left of wings or divisions, the general will command *right*, instead of *left front into line.*

1957. Having formed line, the general may direct the captains to rectify the alignment, or he may employ the means for giving a general alignment by establishing the colors and general guides.

1958. To retire by the flank of wings or divisions, the general will cause the line to face to the rear, and give the same commands as for marching in advance.

1959. The brigade, retiring by the flank of wings or divisions, will form line by the same commands and means as when advancing. After forming line, it may be faced in the original direction by the commands: 1. *Face to the rear.* 2. MARCH.

1960. Whenever troops, in line of battle, have to advance for long distances, or over ground densely wooded, or intersected by fences and other obstacles, the general will conduct the march by the flank of wings or divisions, according to the strength of the battalions.

## ARTICLE NINTH.

*Order in echelon.*

1961. The brigade being in line of battle, when the general shall wish to advance by echelon from the right, he will command:

1. *By battalion from the right.* 2. *At (so many) paces.* 3. *Front into echelon.*

1962. (*Pl. XCIV.*) This having been repeated, the colonel of the right battalion will command: 1. *Battalion forward.* 2. *Guide centre.*

1963. The general will then command:

#### 4. MARCH.

1964. As soon as the first battalion shall have advanced the specified distance, the colonel of the second will put his battalion in march, and so on to the left of the line.

1965. A marker, in each rear battalion, will march on a line with its front rank, and directly in rear of the left file of the battalion preceding.

1966. Each colonel will preserve the interval of twenty-four paces between the marker and the right of his battalion, and will see that it observes all the principles of the march in line.

1967. Echelon from the left, will be similarly executed.

#### *To re-form the line.*

1968. The general, wishing to re-form the line, will command:

1. *Echelon into line on first battalion.* 2. MARCH.

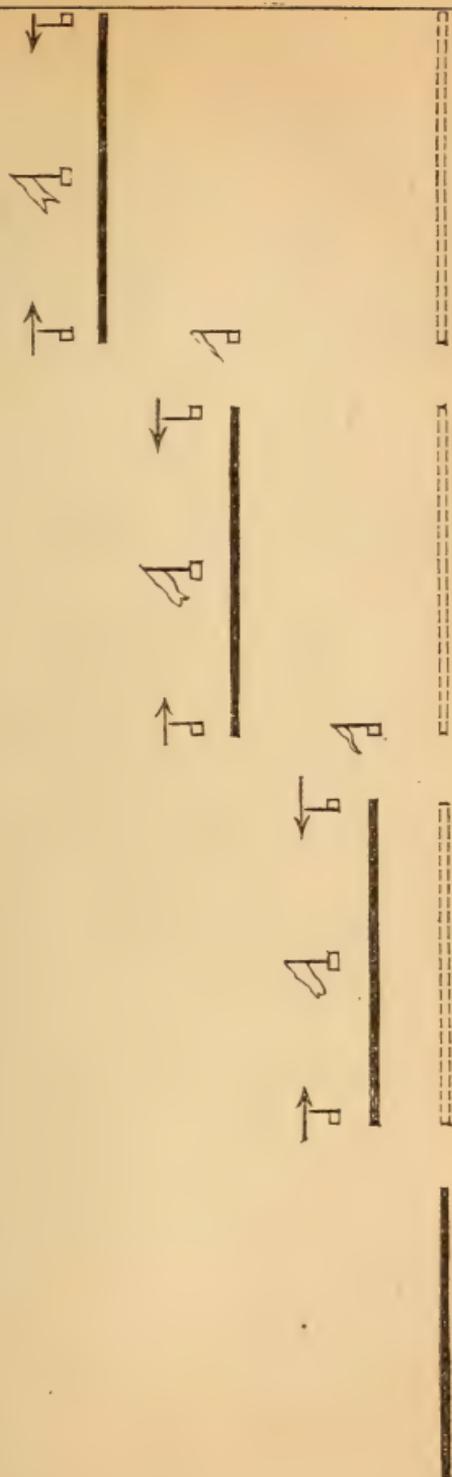
1969. At this command, the first battalion will halt. The colonel will immediately assure the position of the color and general guides; who being established, he will order the guides on the line, and dress his battalion on the centre.

1970. The other battalions will be halted successively at three paces from the line and dressed as explained for the first.

1971. The colonels will order arms, and order in the guides, as in successive formations.

1972. The movement ended, the general will command:

#### *Colors—Posts.*



By battalion from the right, at (so many) paces, front into echelon.  
No. 1962.



1973. Should a central battalion be designated, that battalion and those in the rear will execute the movement as just explained; the battalions in front will march in retreat; pass three paces beyond the line of battle; wheel about by fours, and be dressed as explained for the other battalion.

*To halt the brigade marching in echelon.*

1974. The general, wishing to halt the echelon, will command:

1. *Battalions.* 2. HALT.

1975. At which each battalion will halt.

1976. To resume the march, the general will command:

1. *Battalions forward.* 2. MARCH.

*To march in retreat by echelon.*

1977. Wishing to march in retreat by echelon, the general will cause the line to face to the rear, and then give the same commands as for marching in advance.

1978. If marching in advance by echelon, to march in retreat, the general will command: *In retreat—*MARCH; which will be executed as when marching in line of battle.

1979. The leading battalion will now be the guide, and a marker will be posted for each rear battalion as when marching in advance.

1980. Should the general desire to form echelon by two battalions, he will command:

1. *By two battalions, from the right.* 2. *At (so many) paces.* 3. *Front into echelon.* 4. MARCH.

1981. At the command *march*, the two right battalions will be put in march, the right being that of direction; the next two will follow as soon as the first shall have marched echelon distance.

## ARTICLE TENTH.

*To pass a defile in front.*

1982. A brigade, marching in line of battle, having to pass a defile in front, and to re-form in line, will execute the movement as follows :

1983. It will be supposed that the defile is opposite the interval between the second and third battalions, and that its width is sufficient to give passage to a double column of fours; the general, seeing that the line has arrived near the defile, will halt it and command :

1. *To the front, by the right of the third battalion, pass defile.*

1984. (*Pl. XCV.*) This having been repeated, the colonels of the third and fourth battalions will command: *Fours right*; those of the first and second: *Fours left*.

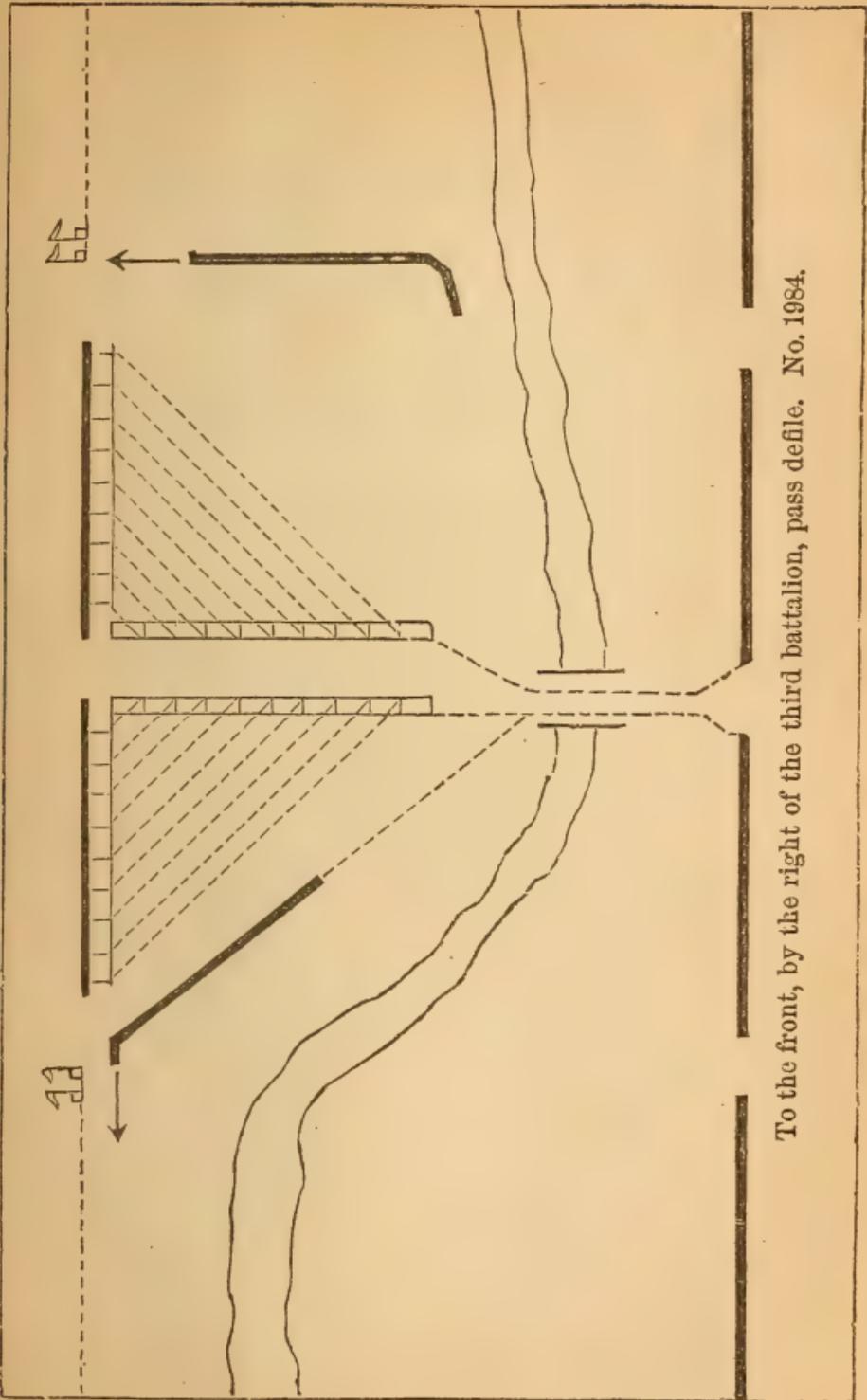
1985. The general will then add :

## 2. MARCH.

1986. At this command, all the battalions will break into column of fours; the heads of the second and third will incline to the right and left respectively, and, uniting at the entrance of the defile, will march through it abreast; the first battalion will follow the second, and the fourth the third.

1987. Arrived at the opposite end of the defile, the head of the second battalion will incline to the right so as to gain an interval of twenty-four paces from the third; these two battalions will then approach the new line of battle, and when at company distance from it will execute, the second *right front into line*; the third, *left front into line*.

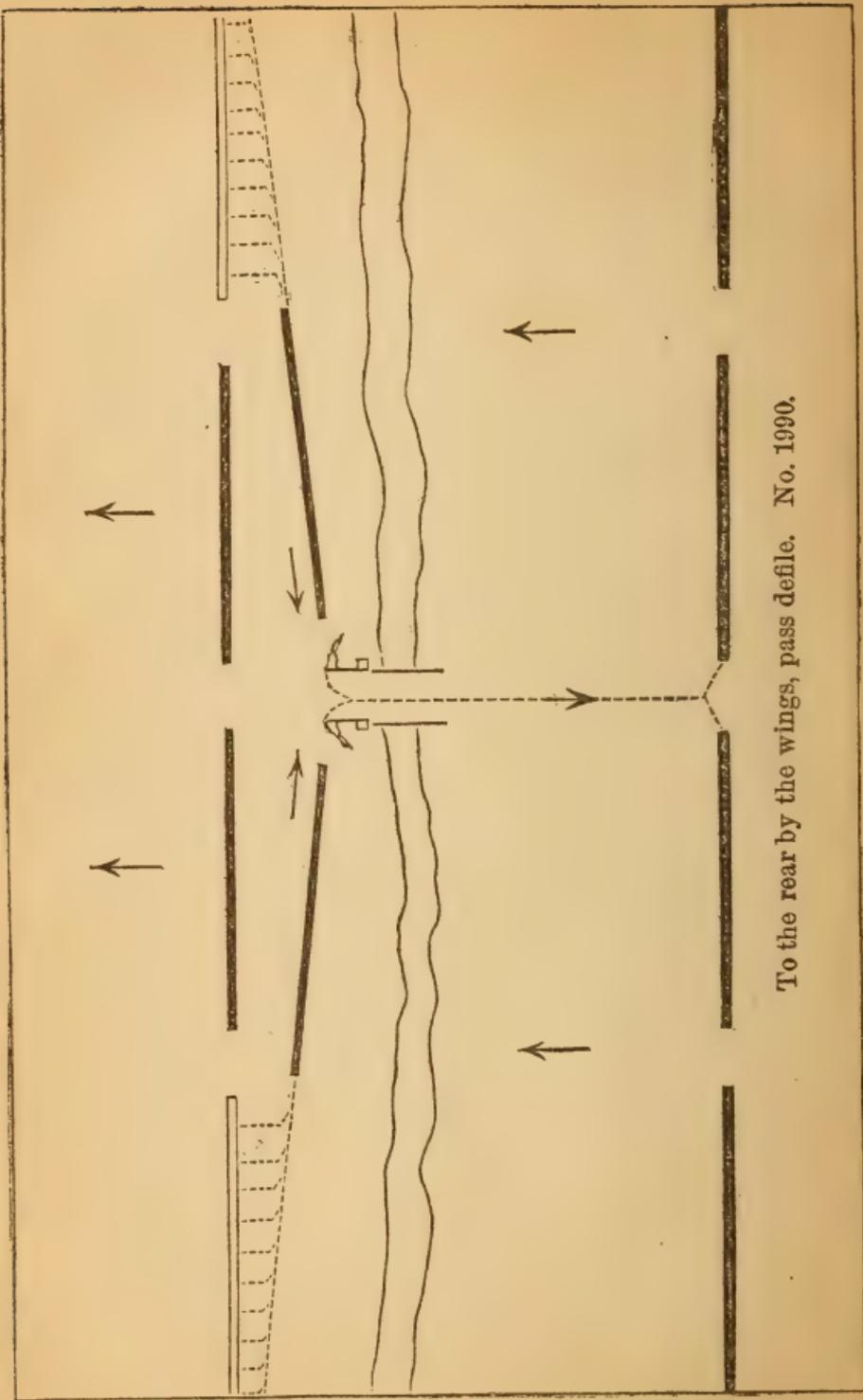
1988. The other battalions, upon emerging from the defile, will each be conducted toward its *point of rest*, the first executing *right front into line*, or *by battalion*



To the front, by the right of the third battalion, pass defile. No. 1984.







To the rear by the wings, pass defile. No. 1990.

on the left into line; the fourth executing *left front into line*, or *by battalion on the right into line*, according to the greater or less distance of the line from the mouth of the defile.

1989. Each colonel, as soon as his line is formed, will command: *Color and guides*—POSTS.

#### ARTICLE ELEVENTH.

##### *To pass defile in retreat.*

1990. (*Pl. XCVI.*) The line marching in retreat, and encountering a defile which it will have to pass, the general will cause it to wheel about by fours and halt.

1991. It will be supposed that the defile is in rear of the interval between the two centre battalions, and its width sufficient to give passage to a double column of fours. A staff officer will establish two markers, belonging to one of the centre battalions, at the entrance to the defile, which being done, the general will command:

##### *To the rear by the wings, pass defile.*

1992. This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: *To the rear by the right flank, pass defile.* The colonel of the fourth will command: *To the rear by the left flank, pass defile.*

1993. The first and fourth battalions will at once commence the movement, both entering the defile between the two markers. Arrived at the opposite end, the first battalion will change direction to the left, the fourth to the right, each directing its march along the new line which it may be desirable to occupy.

1994. The second and third battalions, each by the commands of its colonel, will commence the movement in time to follow respectively at twenty-four paces from the first and fourth.

1995. The rear of these battalions having entered

the direction of the new line of battle, the general will form line by the commands:

1. *By the left and right flanks.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.

1996. At this command, the first and second battalions will form line to the left, the third and fourth to the right.

1997. Should the rear of these battalions not enter the new direction simultaneously, the general will give, at the proper time, the commands:

1. *Right battalions by the left flank.* 2. MARCH.  
3. HALT.

1. *Left battalions by the right flank.* 2. MARCH.  
3. HALT.

1998. Should the defile be but wide enough for a single column of fours, the movement will be executed by one wing, instead of two, commencing in that most remote from the entrance to the defile. The general will command:

*To the rear by the right (or left) flank, pass defile.*

1999. The general may form line facing the enemy without waiting for all the battalions to change direction after passing the defile, by the commands:

1. *By the left (or right) flank.* 2. *Rear battalions right (or left) front into line—face to the rear.*  
3. MARCH.

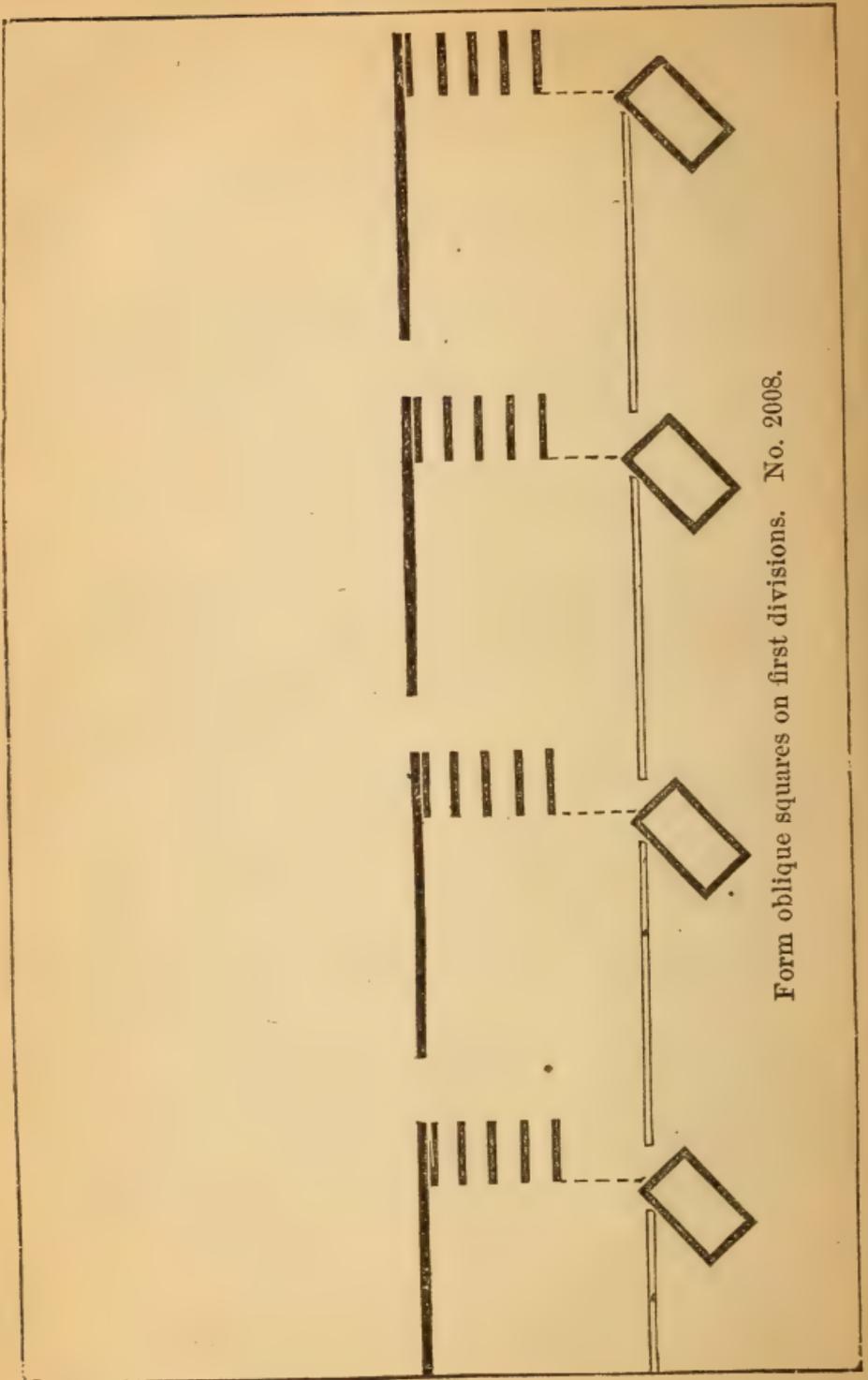
2000. In all passages of defile in the presence of the enemy, whether to the front or in retreat, artillery, if possible, should be so posted as to bring a converging fire upon the enemy's approach, thereby enabling the infantry to form or withdraw under its cover.

#### ARTICLE TWELFTH.

*Passage of lines or relieving in action.*

2001. Whenever a brigade is to relieve a line of troops engaged, it will deploy under cover, three or





Form oblique squares on first divisions. No. 2008.

four hundred yards to the rear, and then advance in line of battle. Upon its approach, the old line, previously notified, will lie down, and allow the new line to pass over it.

2002. The passage having been effected, the new line will halt, and the old one will retire, either in line of battle or by the flank of wings or divisions,

2003. Should the second line be called upon to relieve another being driven in, it will lie down, upon the approach of the first line, allow the first to pass over it, then rise and open fire.

2004. When not in the presence of the enemy, the passage of lines may be executed in the following manner:

2005. Upon the approach of the second line to the first, the general will command: *Pass the line in front*, and then will cause the second line to break by the right or left of divisions to the front; the chiefs of division in the first line will immediately break two fours to the rear, so as to permit the passage of the divisions of the second line, which being effected, the general will cause them to execute front into line; the fours broken to the rear in the first line will return to their places.

#### ARTICLE THIRTEENTH.

##### *Dispositions against cavalry.*

2006. No matter what the number of battalions which compose a column or line, not more than one will be formed into the same square.

##### 1. *To form squares from line of battle.*

2007. The general, wishing to form squares from line of battle, will command:

##### *Form oblique squares on first divisions.*

2008. (*Pl. XCVII.*) This having been repeated, each colonel will command: 1. *Column at half dis-*

*tance by division. 2. On first division, right in front. 3. Fours right.*

2009. The general will then add :

MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2010. At this command, each battalion will form in column at half distance on its first division ; which being done, the colonel will command : 1. *Form square* 2. *Right and left into line wheel.* 3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH). 4. *Guides*—POSTS.

*To reduce squares and re-form the line.*

2011. Wishing to reduce squares, the general will command :

1. *Reduce squares.* 2. MARCH.

2012. At which each battalion will reduce square.

2013. To re-form the line, the general will post markers to the original front of the third battalion, a distance a little greater than its depth in column. He will then command :

*Form line, the third the battalion of direction.*

2014. This having been repeated, the markers for each of the other battalions will be established on the line of battle, and each colonel will command : 1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. *Column half left.*

2015. The general will then add :

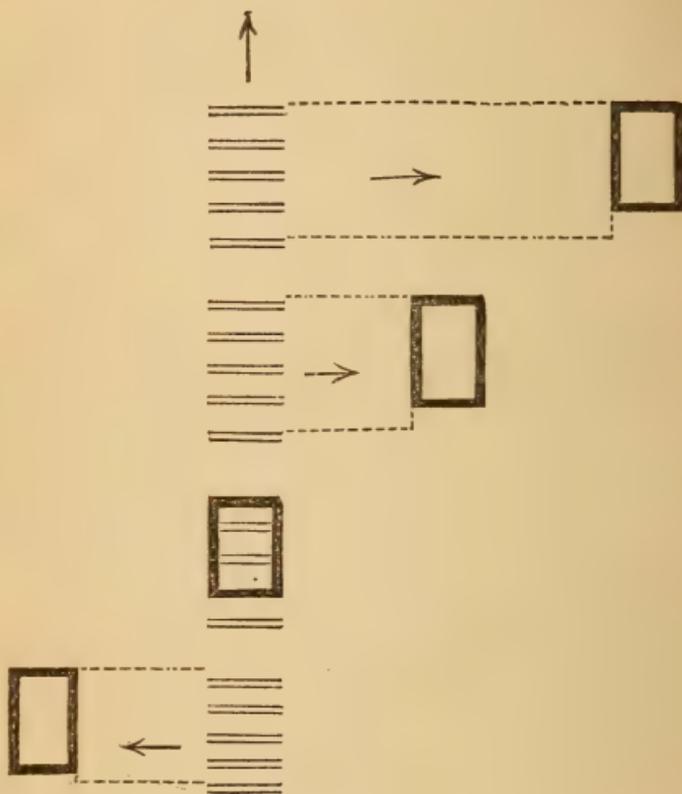
3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2016. At this command, each battalion will change direction, half left, and when at three paces from its markers, will be deployed by the left flank upon the first division.

2017. The deployment finished, the colonels will command : *Color and Guides*—POSTS.

2018. Oblique squares on the fifth divisions will be similarly formed.





To form squares. Echelon on third battalion, at (so many) paces, front battalions to the right. No. 2020.

2. *To form squares from column.*

2019. Previous to forming squares from column, the general will cause divisions to be formed and half distance to be taken; he will then command:

1. *To form squares.* 2. *Echelon on (such) battalion, at (so many) paces.* 3. *Front battalions to the right.*

2020. (*Pl. XCVIII.*) These commands having been repeated, the colonel of the directing battalion will caution it to stand fast; the colonels in front will command: *Fours right*; the colonels in rear: *Fours left*.

2021. The general will then add:

MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2022. At this command, the colonel of the directing battalion will form square.

2023. The battalions next in front and rear of the directing one, having cleared its flanks by the distance specified, the colonels will command respectively: 1. *Fours left and right.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT, and immediately afterward give the commands for forming square.

2024. The other battalions, in front and rear, will observe the same rule, each forming square after having unmasked the battalion next in its rear or front by the prescribed number of paces.

2025. Squares may be formed in a similar manner by throwing the front battalions to the left.

*To reduce squares.*

2026. To reduce squares, the general will command:

1. *Reduce squares.* 2. MARCH.

*To re-form column.*

2027. Wishing to re-form the column, the general will command:

*Form column on (such) battalion.*

2028. This having been repeated, the colonels in front of the designated battalion will command: *Fours left*; those in rear: *Fours right*.

2029. The general will then add:

MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2030. At this command, the battalions will resume their places in column.

2031. In re-forming column, should the squares have been formed by moving the front battalions to the left, the colonels in front of the designated battalion will command: *Fours right*; those in rear: *Fours left*.

3. *To form squares from line of masses.*

2032. The general, wishing to form squares from line of masses, will command:

1. *To form squares.* 2. *Echelon on (such) battalion at (so many) paces.* 3. *Right battalions forward.*

2033. (*Pl. XCIX.*) These having been repeated, the colonel of the directing battalion, and those to its right, will command: *By the head of column take half distance*; the colonels to the left will command: 1. *Fours left about.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. *By the head of column take half distance.*

2034. The general will then add:

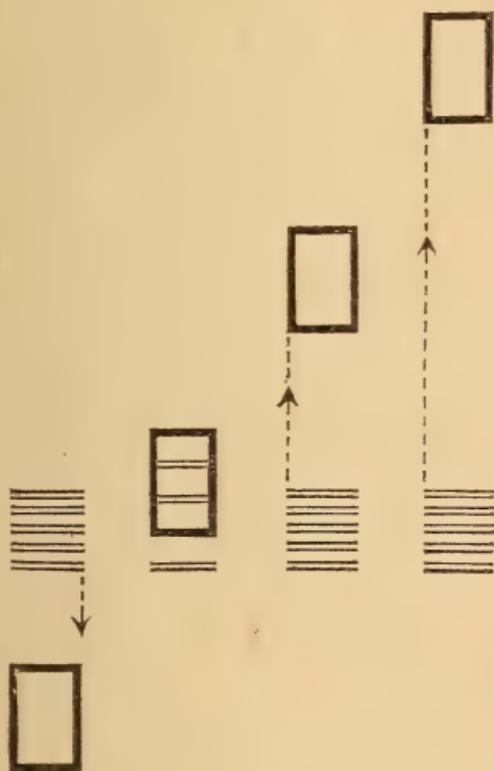
4. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2035. At this command, all the battalions will be put in march, taking half distance by the head of column.

2036. The colonel of the directing battalion will halt it, and form square as soon as the fourth division shall have half distance.

2037. The battalions to the right will be halted successively, and formed into square, each when its fourth division shall have advanced echelon distance beyond the first division of the battalion next toward that of direction.

2038. The left battalions will in like manner gain



To form squares. Echelon on third battalion, at (so many) paces, right battalions forward. No. 2033.



echelon distance to the rear, wheel about by fours, and then form square.

2039. The squares will be reduced as from column or line.

*To re-form the line.*

2040. Wishing to re-form the line of masses on the first battalion, the general will command :

*Echelon into line of masses on first battalion.*

2041. This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command : *Column close in mass* ; the other colonels will command : 1. *Column forward*. 2. *Guide right*.

2042. The general will then add :

MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2043. At this command, the first battalion will close in mass, the first division being dressed on the markers established by the staff officer.

2044. The other battalions will advance to the line, each colonel giving the commands : 1. *Column close in mass*. 2. MARCH, when the first division arrives at three paces from the markers.

2045. If an interior battalion be designated, that battalion and those to its left will conform to what has been explained.

2046. The battalions in front will wheel about by fours and cross the line of battle, the colonels giving the command for closing in mass, so that when the movement shall be completed, the rear division shall be three paces beyond the line of markers. The battalions will then be wheeled about by fours, and dressed by the left.

2047. Should the column or line of masses be threatened by cavalry, and not have time to form squares, the general will command :

1. *Column against cavalry*. 2. MARCH.

2048. Which will be executed at once in each battalion.

2049. To resume the order in column, the general will command :

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH.

ARTICLE FOURTEENTH.

*Movements by battalion.*

2050. The brigade being in line of battle, the general may cause all the movements in the School of the Battalion to be executed simultaneously, first giving the command: *Movement by battalion*, and then the commands for the particular movement.

2051. The colonels will repeat the commands of the general, and immediately cause them to be executed.

2052. By resorting to this method, the general may bring his brigade to the highest state of drill, and cause all the evolutions to be executed with uniformity and regularity.

PART SEVENTH.

*Evolutions of a brigade in single rank.*

ARTICLE FIRST.

*To pass from double to single rank.*

2053. The brigade being in line of battle, to pass from double ranks into single rank, the general will send staff officers to prolong the line to the right and left, and will then command :

*On second battalion form single rank.*

2054. This command being repeated, all the colonels will add: *Fours right.*

2055. The general will then command :

MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2056. At this command, all the battalions will wheel by fours to the right, the colonel of the first adding: 1. FORWARD. 2. *Guide left*; the colonel of the second, as soon as it shall have single-rank distance,

will form it in line to the left, will order the color and general guides on the line, and dress it on the centre.

2057. The instant the second battalion shall halt, the colonel of the first will command: 1. *Form single rank*. 2. MARCH, at which all the ranks of four, except the leading one, will halt. The battalion having taken single-rank distance, the colonel will form line to the left, and align it as explained for the second; the colors and general guides will face to the left.

2058. The third and fourth battalions having wheeled by fours to the right, the colonels will command: 1. HALT. 2. *Battalion*. 3. ABOUT—FACE; the colonel of the third will then command:

4. *Form single rank*. 5. MARCH.

2059. At this command, the rear rank of the leading four of the battalion will step off, followed by the other ranks successively when at wheeling distance. The battalion having taken single-rank distance, the colonel will command: 1. *Column*. 2. HALT. 3. *Battalion*. 4. *About—FACE*. 5. *Fours left*. 6. MARCH. 7. HALT, and align his battalion as explained for the second; the color and general guides will face to the right.

2060. The colonel of the fourth battalion having faced his battalion about, will put it in march, and when the third battalion shall halt, he will give the commands for forming in single rank.

2061. The brigade, marching in column of fours, should the general desire to take single-rank distance without forming in line, he will command:

1. *Single-rank distance*.

2062. This being repeated, the colonels of the rear battalions will command: *Column*.

2063. The general will then add:

2. MARCH.

2064. At which, the leading battalion will take single-rank distance.

2065. The colonels of the other battalions will command: HALT, and successively give the commands: 1. *Single-rank distance*. 2. MARCH, as soon as the battalion next in front shall have taken its distance.

2066. The brigade being in column in double ranks, to form single rank, the general will command:

1. *Form single rank*.

2067. Which having been repeated, the colonels will add: *Fours right* (or *left*), according as the right or left is in front.

2068. The general will then command:

2. MARCH.

2069. At which, each battalion will form in single rank.

2070. The brigade being in column of fours in double ranks, should the general desire to form right front into line in single rank, he will command:

1. *In single rank*. 2. *Right front into line*.

2071. These commands having been repeated, the colonel of the second battalion will command: *Column right*; the colonel of the third and fourth: *Column half right*.

2072. The general will then add:

3. MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2073. At this command, the first battalion will form in single rank, right front into line.

2074. The other battalions will be conducted toward their *points of rest*, as in forming front into line in double ranks, the colonels at the proper time giving the commands:

1. *In single rank*. 2. *Right front into line*. 3. MARCH.

2075. Left front into line, in single rank, will be similarly executed.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*Movements in single rank.*

2076. A brigade for operating in single rank should be armed with breech-loading rifles, and will always be conducted to the scene of action in double ranks, and likewise so withdrawn.

2077. The brigade being in single rank, will execute the movements prescribed for double ranks by the same commands and means; the commands when necessary being communicated by staff officers.

2078. The formation in single rank will be used on the defensive whenever the ground in front of the troops is open for long musket range, or whenever by slashings, abatis, or other obstructions, the advance of the enemy can be impeded.

2079. It may be used offensively as a means of turning the enemy's flank, or in a densely wooded country for developing his position previous to an attack in force.

2080. There are many movements not laid down in single rank which the skill of the general should suggest, and it should be his aim not only to develop his line from double into single rank in any direction, but to have all his orders intelligently executed.

2081. As the strength of troops armed with breech-loaders lies in the volume and effect of their fire when well delivered, so their weakness will lie in the very superiority of their weapons when allowed to deliver their fire injudiciously at long range; the officers, therefore, should keep the men always under their control, see that they husband their ammunition, and by teaching them confidence in their arms, and deliberation in aiming, enable them always to hold their fire till the enemy shall be within deadly range.

## ARTICLE THIRD.

*To pass from single rank into double ranks.*

2082. The brigade being in line of battle in single rank, to form double ranks, the general will command :

*On third battalion, form double ranks.*

2083. This having been repeated, the colonels of the third and fourth battalions will command : *Fours right* ; the colonels of the first and second, *Fours left*.

2084. The general will then command :

MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2085. At the command *march*, the battalions will wheel by fours as indicated ; the leading ranks of the second and third will halt, and when they shall have closed to double-rank distance the colonel of the third will command : 1. *Fours left*. 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. The colonel of the second : 1. *Battalion*. 2. ABOUT—FACE. 3. *Fours left*. 4. MARCH. 5. HALT. Each colonel will then order his color and general guides on the line, and will dress his battalion on the centre.

2086. The colonels of the first and fourth battalions, when the second and third shall halt, will each command : *Form double ranks*. MARCH.

2087. At the command *march*, the leading rank of each will halt, and when they shall have closed their distances, the colonels respectively will conform to what has been explained for the colonels of the second and third.

2088. Should the front-rank men be on the left of the rear-rank men, the colonels of the third and fourth battalions, after closing to double-rank distance, will command : 1. *Battalion*. 2. ABOUT—FACE. 3. *Fours right*. 4. MARCH. 5. HALT. The colonels of the first and second battalions will command : 1. *Fours right*. 2. MARCH. 3. HALT.

2089. Being in column in single rank, to form double ranks, the general will command :

*Form double ranks.*

2090. The colonels will add: *Fours right* (or *left*), according as the front-rank men are on the right or left of the rear-rank men.

2091. The general will then command:

MARCH (or *double time*—MARCH).

2092. At which, each battalion will form in double ranks.

2093. Being in column of fours with single-rank distance, to form double ranks, the general will command:

1. *Form double ranks.* 2. MARCH.

2094. At the command *march*, the leading battalion will close to double-rank distance, after which the colonel will form it into line to the left or right according as the right or left is in front; the other battalions will continue the march, each colonel giving the commands: 1. *Form double ranks.* 2. MARCH, when the battalion next in front shall have closed.

END OF EVOLUTIONS OF A BRIGADE.

## TITLE SEVENTH.

### EVOLUTIONS OF A DIVISION.

#### GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

2095. THE evolutions of a brigade, comprehending all the principles and details of the movements which should be made by a single brigade, these principles will next be applied to a division.

2096. In this instruction a *Division of the Line* will be supposed to consist of three brigades of infantry and two batteries of artillery.

2097. (*Pl. C.*) The manner in which a division should be posted will vary with circumstances; it may be deployed in single line, with an interval of one hundred yards between brigades for batteries; two brigades may be deployed in the first line, the third in a second; the three brigades may be deployed in two lines each; or two brigades may be deployed in two lines, the third being held in reserve in line of masses.

2098. The batteries will be specially assigned by the general of division to the most advantageous positions, an interval of one hundred yards being allowed for each.

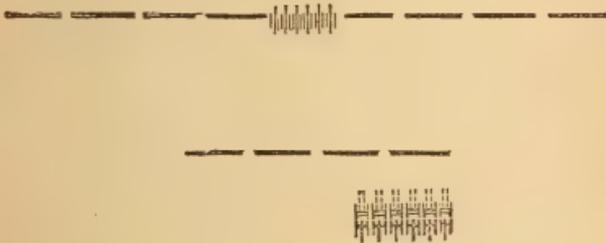
2099. The commands of the general of division will be communicated through staff officers; they should be explicit, should be couched as far as possible in tactical language, and should be thoroughly comprehended by the officers delivering them.

2100. The batteries will receive their orders through a chief of artillery, or other staff officer, and will con-

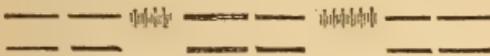
*Fig. 1*



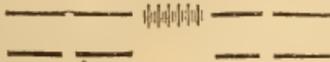
*Fig. 2*



*Fig. 3*



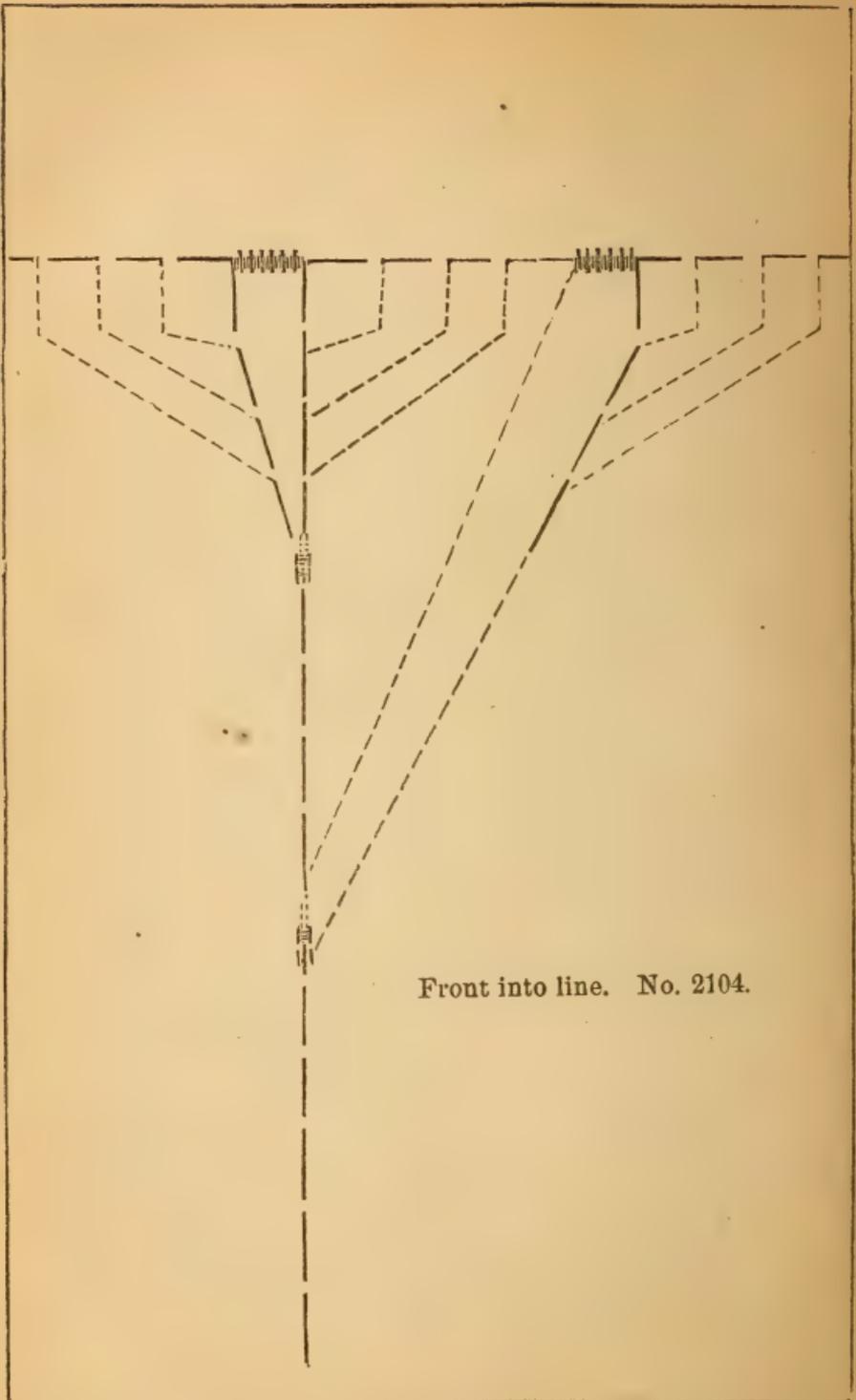
*Fig. 4*



Division of the line in the order of battle. No. 2097.







Front into line. No. 2104.

form in their movements to the tactics of the artillery arm.

2101. The field exercises of a division should be limited to those movements most practised in active campaign, such as: deploying into line from column of fours; advancing and retreating in line of battle; changes of front; change of front of one brigade, deployment of the reserve brigade on its right or left, and withdrawal of the third brigade into reserve; change of direction to the right or left by echelon from the left or right, and such other movements as occasion may require.

2102. Brigades in line will be designated *right*, *centre*, and *left*; or if one be in rear, *right*, *left*, and *rear*; in column they will be designated *leading*, *centre*, and *rear*. In order that no mistakes may occur in transmitting orders, the names of the brigade commanders will always be mentioned.

2103. In all successive formations, each brigade after completing the movement will stack arms and break ranks. It will be called to attention upon the receipt of the next command from the general.

#### ARTICLE FIRST.

##### *Deployment from column of fours.*

##### 1st. *To deploy in single line.*

2104. (*Pl. CI.*) The general, wishing to deploy the division into single line throwing two brigades to the right, will send orders as follows: to the leading brigade commander, *To form right front into line*; to the commander of the centre brigade, *To form left front into line, his right connecting with the left of the leading brigade*; to the commander of the rear brigade, *To form right front into line, his left connecting with the right of the leading brigade*. He will at the same time send orders to the batteries,

assigning them to positions, and will notify brigade commanders where they are to be posted.

2105. Upon the receipt of these orders, the general of the leading brigade will form it right front into line; the general of the centre brigade will conduct the head of his column forward to the line a hundred yards to the left of the first, and will then form left front into line; the general of the rear brigade will conduct the head of his column by the shortest line to the point where the left of his line will rest, and will then deploy as prescribed for the leading brigade.

2106. The batteries will be conducted to their positions by the captains and form in battery.

2107. Should it be necessary to post a battery near the centre of a brigade, the commander of this brigade will be so notified, and will leave for it an interval of one hundred yards. The interval between brigades will be reduced to twenty-four paces.

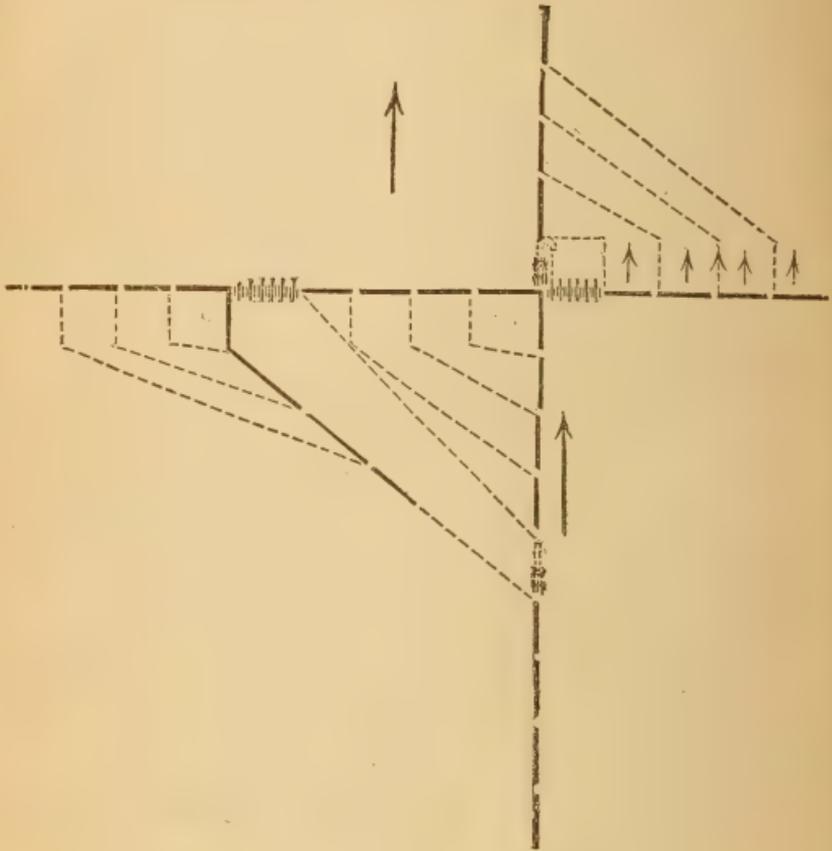
2108. Upon the same principles two brigades may be thrown to the left and one to the right.

2109. Should the general desire to deploy on the head of the column, and to face to the rear, he will send orders as follows: to the general of the leading brigade, *To form right front into line, face to the rear*; to the general of the centre brigade, *To form left front into line, face to the rear, his left connecting with the right of the leading brigade*; and to the general of the rear brigade, *To form right front into line, face to the rear, his right connecting with the left of the leading brigade*.

2110. These orders being received, the general of the leading brigade will cause it to execute *right front into line, face to the rear*; the centre brigade will execute, *left front into line, face to the rear*; the rear brigade will be conducted to the *point of rest* for its right, and will form as prescribed for the first.

2111. The artillery, upon arriving at its position, will form into battery faced to the rear.





Front into line on the head of the centre brigade. No. 2113.

2112. By a combination of the two movements just explained, the general may cause the division to deploy upon the head of the second or third brigade, facing either to the front or the rear.

2113. (*Pl. CII.*) To deploy on the head of the second brigade, throwing the first brigade to the right, the general will send orders to the general of the leading brigade: *To march in retreat, and to form left front into line—face to the rear*; to the general of the centre brigade he will send orders to execute immediately: *Left front into line*. To the general of the rear brigade, he will send orders: *To form left front into line, his right connecting with the left of the centre brigade*.

2114. The movement will be executed upon the principles already explained, except that the leading battalion of the first brigade, after having wheeled about by fours, will change direction and march a hundred paces to the left, when, changing direction to the right, it will approach the *point of rest* for the left of the brigade, and then execute *left front into line—face to the rear*.

2115. The movement of forming line faced to the rear will be executed whenever, marching in retreat, it shall be the wish of the general to form line facing toward the enemy.

2d. *To deploy two brigades in the first, the third brigade in a second line.*

2116. The general wishing to deploy two brigades in the front line, the third in a second line, will send orders to the general of the leading brigade: *To form right (or left) front into line*; to the general of the centre brigade: *To form left (or right) front into line, his right (or left) connecting with the left (or right) of the leading brigade*; to the general of the rear brigade, he will send orders: *To form line (so many) paces in rear of the first, his right (left, or centre) resting at such a point*.

2117. The rear brigade, when at the proper distance, will execute front into line to the right or left, or having partly changed direction, upon arriving on the line, will form to the left or right, the rear battalions front into line.

2118. (*Pl. CIII.*) If marching in retreat, to form line facing the enemy, the leading brigade will form the second line, the other two the first.

3d. *To deploy the three brigades in two lines each.*

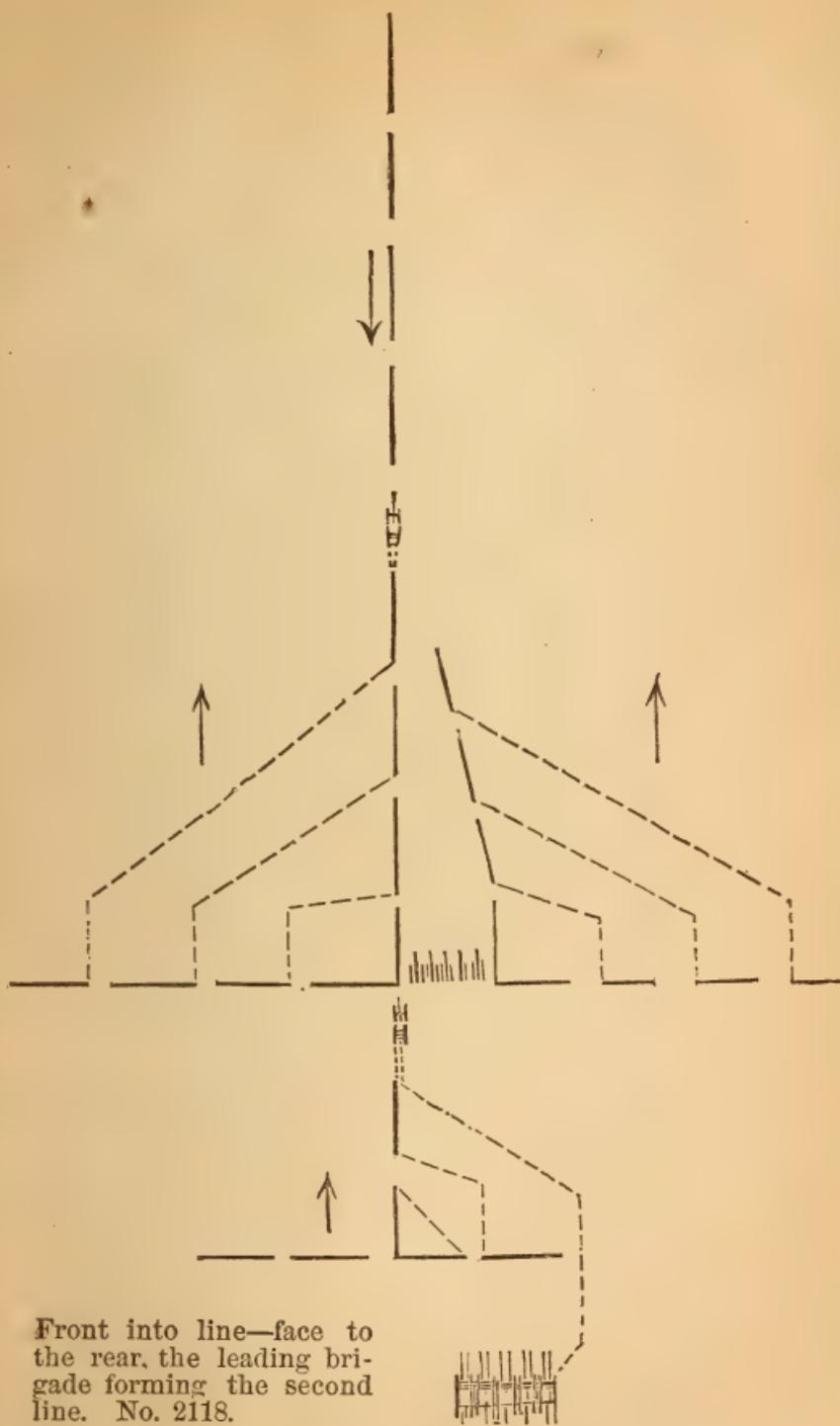
2119. (*Pl. CIV.*) The general, wishing to deploy the three brigades in two lines each, will send orders as follows, to the general of the leading brigade: *To form to the right (or left) front into line, in two lines, at (so many) paces' distance;* to the general of the centre brigade, the same commands, in addition, *his left (or right) connecting with the right (or left) of the leading brigade.* Similar orders will be sent to the general of the rear brigade.

2120. The orders being received, the leading brigade will at once execute the movement, the two rear regiments, when at the proper distance, forming the second line.

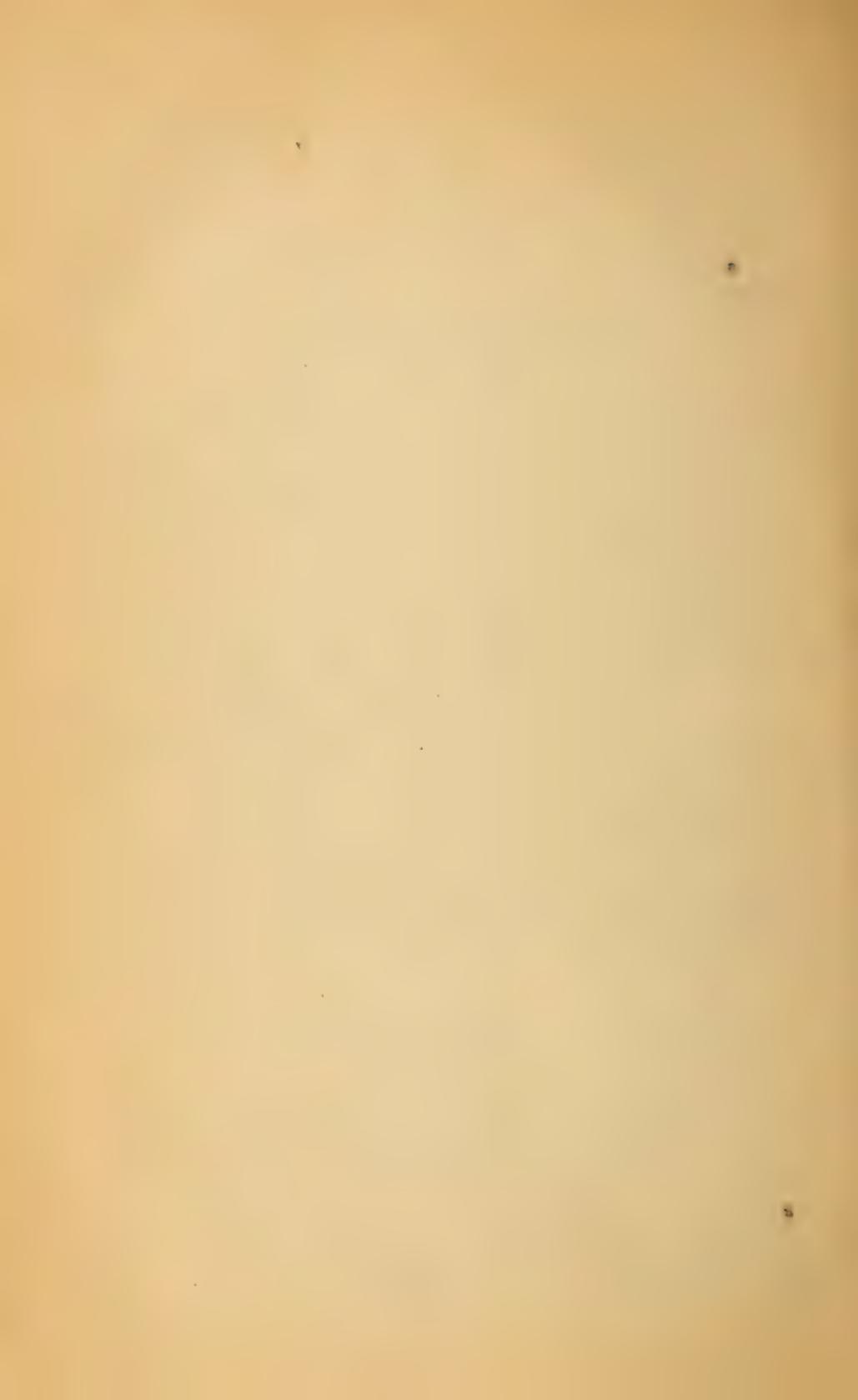
2121. The other brigades will each take the shortest line to its *point of rest*, where, having arrived, it will form in two lines, the battalions executing front into line.

4th. *To deploy two brigades in two lines each, holding the third in reserve in line of masses.*

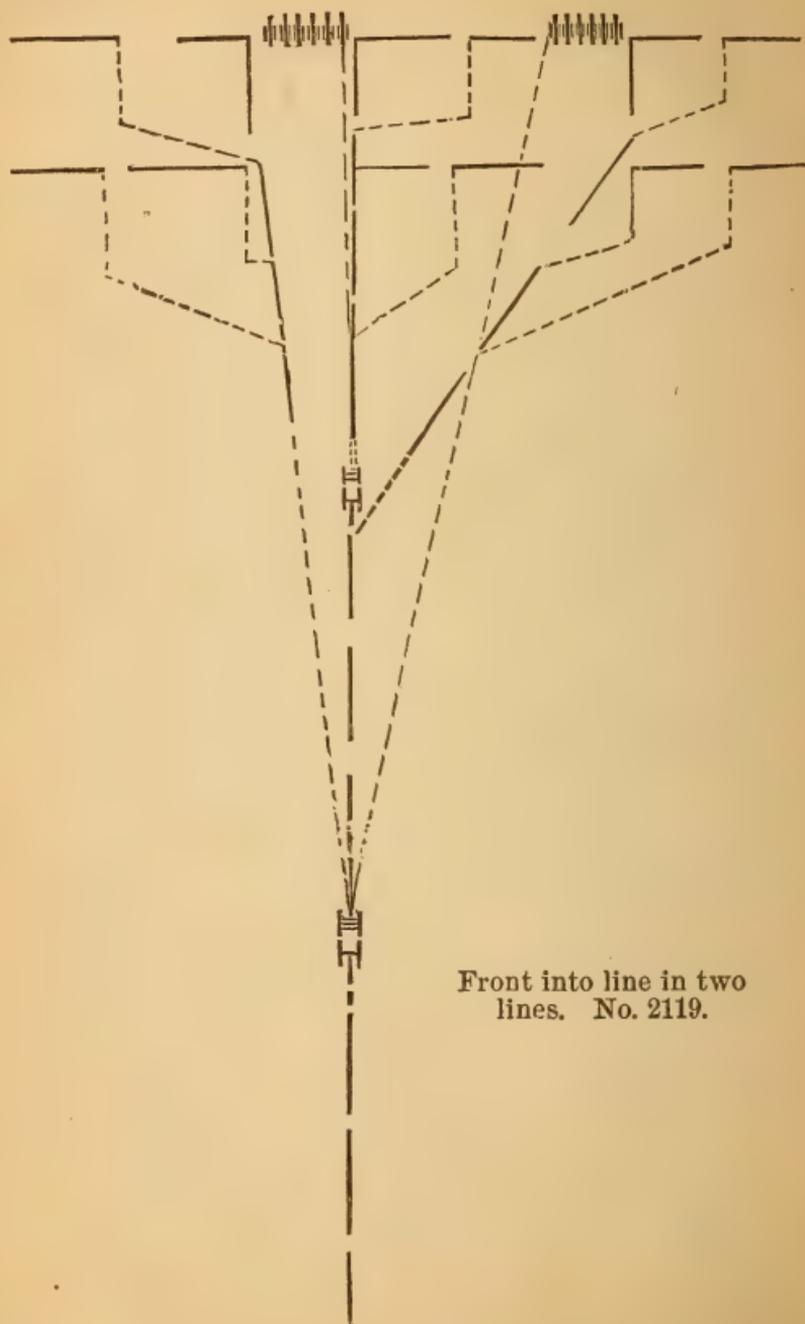
2122. Should the general desire to form two brigades in two lines, holding the third in reserve, in line of masses, he will send the same orders to the generals of the leading and centre brigades as in the previous instance; to the general of the rear brigade he will send orders: *To hold his brigade in reserve, in line of masses, (so many) paces in rear of the second line.*



Front into line—face to the rear, the leading brigade forming the second line. No. 2118.







Front into line in two  
lines. No. 2119.

2123. The first two brigades will execute the movement, as already explained.

2124. The general of the rear brigade at the proper time will form his brigade right or left front into line of masses.

5th. *To form line facing to the right or left from column of fours.*

2125. The division marching in column of fours, to form line facing to the left or right, the general will send orders: *To form line to the left (or right), or, to form in two lines to the left (or right) at (so many) paces' distance.*

2126. If in one line, the generals of brigades will command: *By the left (or right) flank.* MARCH. HALT; if in two lines, the general of the first brigade will cause the first two battalions to form to the left or right and halt; the two rear battalions will break to the rear the prescribed number of paces, and will form the second line.

2127. The other brigades will each execute the same movement when the head of the column shall be at one hundred paces from the flank of the brigade preceding.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

*To advance or retreat in line of battle.*

2128. The general wishing to advance the line of battle, will send orders to the generals of brigades: *To advance in line of battle, regulating on (such) battalion, (such) brigade.*

2129. The orders having been communicated, and the proper disposition being made in each brigade, the general will cause the *Forward* to be sounded, when the movement will commence.

2130. The second line and the reserve brigade will preserve their relative distances. The batteries will be governed by the movements of the first line.

2131. Should the general desire to advance by the flanks of wings or divisions, he will send orders: *To advance by the right (or left) of wings (or divisions), regulating on (such) battalion, (such) brigade.*

2132. To re-form the line, he will send orders: *To re-form the line*, upon the receipt of which each general of brigade will form his wings or divisions, left or right front into line.

*To halt the line marching in line of battle.*

2133. To halt the line, the general will cause the *Halt* to be sounded, which being repeated, each brigade will halt.

*To march in retreat.*

2134. The general wishing to march in retreat, will send orders: *To march in retreat, regulating on (such) battalion, (such) brigade.*

2135. The orders being received, the generals of brigade will cause them to face to the rear, and then give the commands for advancing.

2136. The general will then cause the *Forward* to be sounded, when the movement will commence.

2137. The division being in two lines, the directing battalion will be in the late second line, now the first. The designation of the brigade refers to its position in line when marching in retreat.

#### ARTICLE THIRD.

##### *Change of front.*

2138. Whether the division be deployed in one or two lines, the brigade on which the change is to be made will execute the movement upon the principles of *changing direction* or *change of front*, according as the change is to be less or greater than forty-five degrees; if the change be executed on the flank battalions of one brigade, and be central, the brigade ad-

joining will execute it in like manner; the other brigades will conform to what follows.

2139. The general wishing to change front on the first battalion, first brigade, will send orders as follows: *Change front (so many) degrees forward on first battalion, right brigade.*

2140. The first brigade will at once execute the movement; the generals of the other brigades, having repeated the order of the general, will command: 1. *By wing.* 2. *Right forward.* 3. *Fours right.* 4. **MARCH.** *The first the battalion of direction.*

2141. The wings having broken to the front, the right wing of the first battalion in each brigade, conducted by a staff officer, will incline half right and take the shortest line to a point in rear, and distant from the *point of rest* for the brigade, equal to the depth of the wing in column of fours; the other wings will incline half right at the same instant, and will march parallel with the wing of direction, the heads of each remaining on a line parallel with the former line of battle, and preserving the interval from the one next on the right which separated them when breaking into column. Preserving this parallelism, each wing will be conducted opposite its *point of rest*, where having arrived, it will incline half right, approach the line of battle, and be formed left front into line.

2142. If the division be in two lines, the battalions of the second line will execute the movement in the same manner as the corresponding battalions of the first, except the one in rear of the designated battalion, which will move to its new position by the left flank.

2143. The reserve brigade, if there be one, will be conducted by the shortest line to its new position.

2144. The batteries will conform to the movement of the line, each preserving its relative position; the general, however, may assign them different positions

in the new line, should the nature of the ground require it.

2145. (*Pl. CV.*) Should the general desire to execute a central change of front on the first battalion of the second brigade, throwing the left wing forward, he will send orders: *To change front (so many) degrees, on first battalion, centre brigade, left wing forward.*

2146. The centre and left brigades (if the third be in line) will execute the movement as already explained.

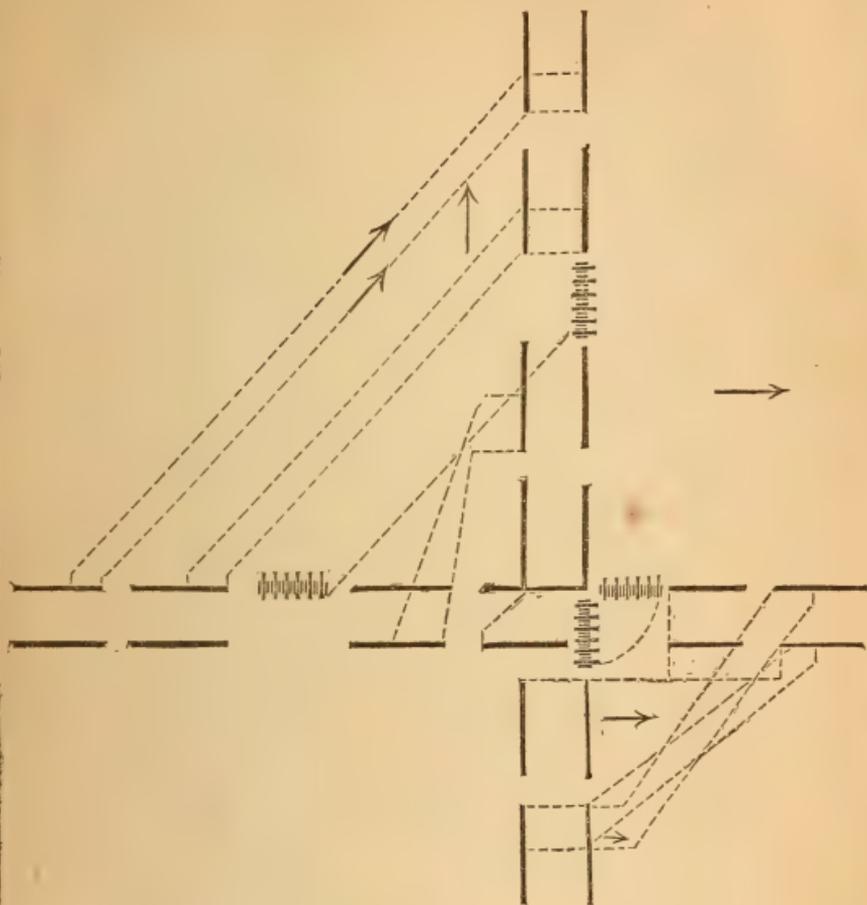
2147. The general of the right brigade will cause it to face to the rear, and then give the commands: *Change front forward on first battalion—face to the left*; or if the change be less than forty-five degrees, he will cause it to change direction, each battalion wheeling about by fours after being established on the new line; in the first case the first battalion will move into its new position by marching to the rear in line of battle till opposite its point of rest in the new line, when it will break into column of fours to the right, forming at the proper time *left front into line—face to the rear.*

2148. If in two lines, both lines will gain sufficient ground to the rear, so that the first line, when the movement shall be completed, will be in prolongation of the front line of the second brigade.

2149. Should the general desire to refuse, or throw back the right brigade, he will send the order to its general *to refuse his brigade (so many degrees) on the fourth or left battalion.*

2150. The general of the brigade will at once execute what has been explained for the central change of front on the second brigade, throwing the left wing forward, except that the line or lines will not gain the ground to the rear, which was necessary in the preceding case to prolong the line of the second brigade.

2151. (*Pl. CVI.*) Two brigades being in line, the third in reserve, the general may cause one or both

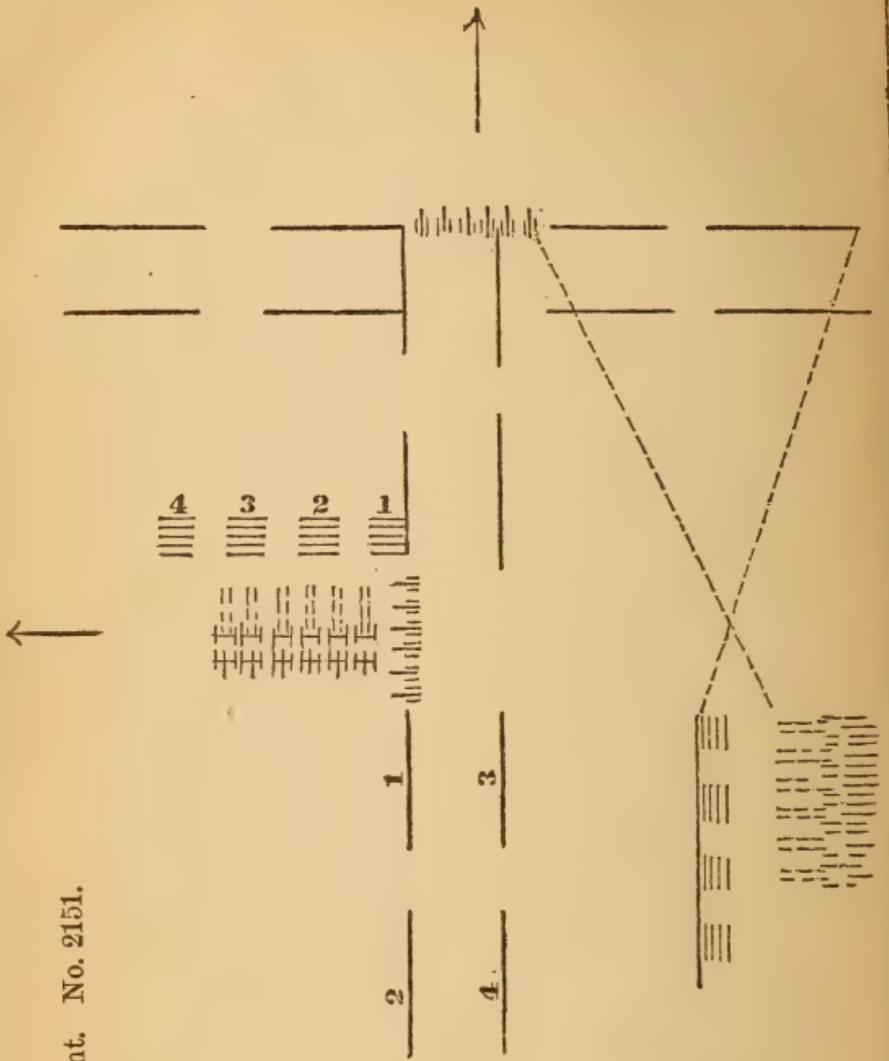


Change of front on centre brigade, left wing forward.  
No. 2145.

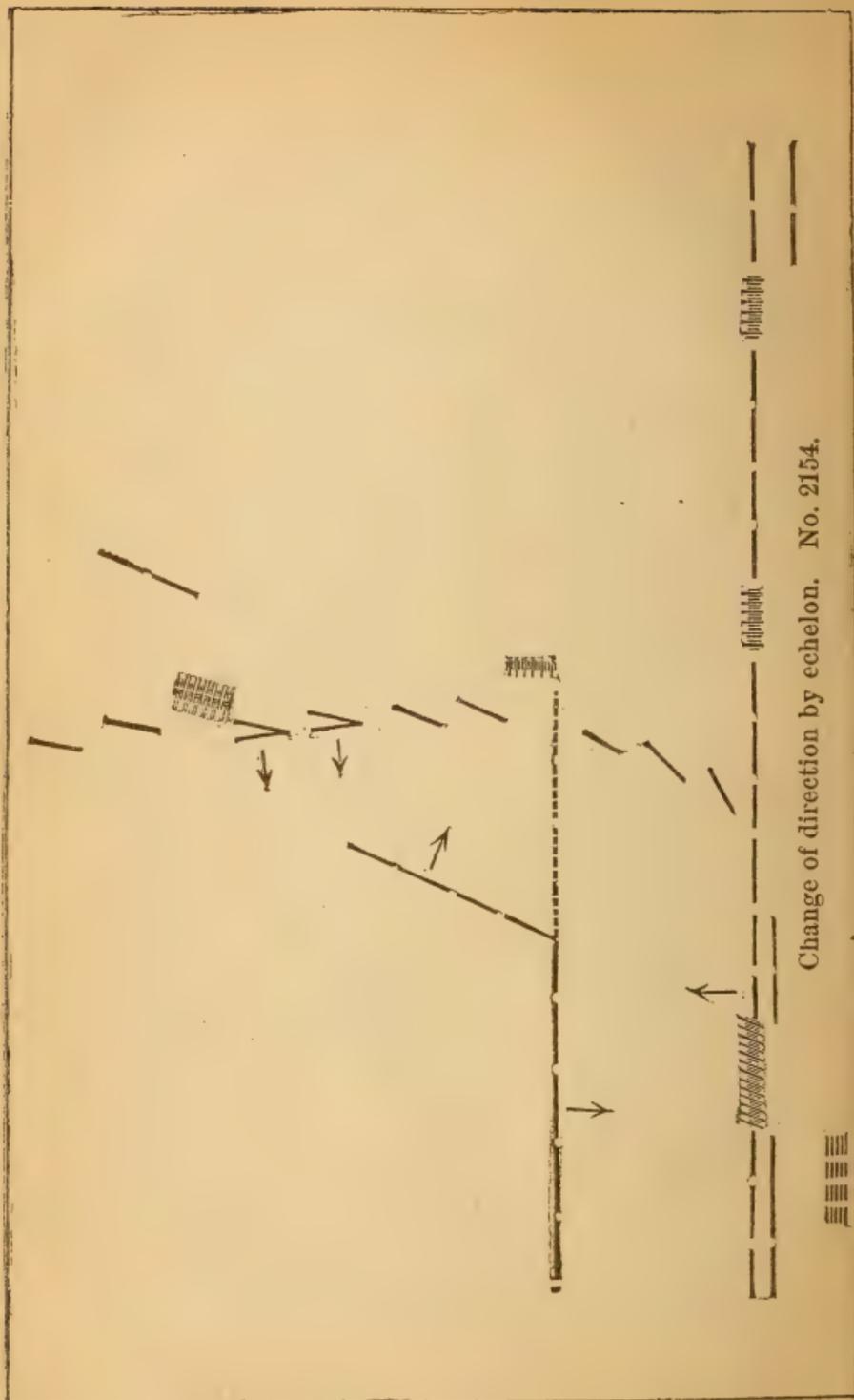




Change of front. No. 2151.







Change of direction by echelon. No. 2154.

— — — — —  
- - - - -  
~~~~~

brigades in the front line to change front, deploying the reserve brigade to prolong the line to the right or left of the one on which the change was executed; or he may change front, or refuse one of the front brigades, deploy the reserve brigade on its right or left, and withdraw the other front brigade into reserve.

2152. The commands in either case will suggest themselves. The general of the reserve brigade will employ the most simple means, and will form in one or two lines, according to the manner in which the front brigades are formed.

2153. In all the changes of front, the division staff, after having communicated the orders of the general, will be employed to prolong the new line of battle; they will likewise be used to communicate with the generals of subordinate brigades whenever the directing wings appear to be pursuing a false direction.

*Change of direction by echelon.*

2154. (*Pl. CVII.*) The general wishing to change direction to the left, by echelon from the right, will send the order: *Change direction to the left, echelon by battalion from the right, at (so many) paces.*

2155. This having been received, the first battalion of the right brigade will advance in line of battle, and by alternate wheels and marches to the front, will describe an arc of a circle, whose radius is equal to the front of the division; the second battalion, and so on to the left, will take up the movement, each when the battalion next on the right shall have advanced the prescribed number of paces.

2156. The first battalion of the right brigade having arrived opposite the left battalion of the division, the general may order the rear battalions into line and continue the march in line of battle.

2157. The change of direction to the right by echelon from the left will be similarly executed. The flank battalion in either case being the guide, its

movements will be closely observed in order that it may not describe the arc of a circle too large or too small.

2158. The change of direction by echelon would naturally be used in turning an enemy's flank.

2159. The left of the division, being supposed to be opposite the enemy's left flank, should be advanced to musket range; the movement should then commence from the right. The general of division should hold himself where he can witness the enemy's movements, so that when the flanking becomes complete he may seize the opportunity for ordering a charge along the entire line.

2160. The flank being turned, the division should gain ground to the right, so as to enable the troops to the left to change front.

2161. The angle being the weakest part of the enemy's line, the troops near it should aim to overlap it so as to get a flank fire on one or both branches; the artillery to the left should be concentrated and so posted as to enfilade the part of the line refused. The artillery of the turning division may be used to enfilade the main part of the enemy's line, thereby clearing the way for the troops confronting it, or it may be brought to bear directly on the part of the line refused.

END OF EVOLUTIONS OF A DIVISION.

## TITLE EIGHTH.

### EVOLUTIONS OF A CORPS.

2162. A CORPS operating with an army should consist of three divisions of the line, a reserve of six batteries of artillery, and a regiment of cavalry to be used exclusively for scouting, and other cavalry purposes.

2163. Operating independently, the cavalry force should be increased to a division.

2164. The same principles which govern the evolutions of a division are applicable to a corps.

2165. The commands of the general will be communicated through his staff officers; they will be general in their nature; will embrace the particular formation he may desire for each division; the direction the line is to occupy; the point where its right or left is to rest; and such further instructions as may be necessary to carry out fully his views.

2166. In route marches the corps, if practicable, will move in two columns of fours, on the right and left of the highway, which will be left for the artillery and trains.

2167. The principles laid down for route marches in the Evolutions of a Brigade should be carefully observed, and great pains should be taken by the corps and division commanders, not only to diminish the distance to be marched by cutting off angles, but likewise the time of making it, by seeing that all impediments to the march of the troops are carefully removed. To this latter end, the corps should be provided with a few mounted pioneers who, in advance, will let down the fences, fill up the ditches, and so forth.

END OF EVOLUTIONS OF A CORPS.

## MANUAL OF THE SWORD FOR OFFICERS.

### *Position of the sword under arms.*

*The carry.* The gripe is in the right hand, which will be supported against the right hip, the back of the blade against the shoulder.

### TO SALUTE WITH THE SWORD.

#### *Three times (or pauses).*

*One.* At the distance of six paces from the person to be saluted, raise the sword perpendicularly, the point up, the flat of the blade opposite to the right eye, the guard at the height of the shoulder, the elbow close to the body.

*Two.* Drop the point of the sword with the edge to the left, by extending the arm so that the right hand may be brought to the side of the right thigh, the back of the hand down, and remain in that position until the person to whom the salute is rendered shall be passed, or shall have passed six paces.

*Three.* Raise the sword smartly, and place the back of the blade against the right shoulder.

In saluting with troops, the first time will be executed at the command *present*; the second, at the command *arms*; the third motion will be executed as the arms are brought to the carry.

When arms are ordered, the officers will drop the points of their swords, the back of the hand up. At parade rest, they will clasp the hands in front of the

centre of the body, the left hand uppermost, the point of the sword between the feet.

At funeral ceremonies, the sword will be reversed under the right arm, the left hand clasping the blade behind the back. When the escort rests on arms, the officers will stand as at *parade rest*, inclining the head.

Officers on all duties under arms are to have their swords drawn, without waiting for any words of command for that purpose.



## COLOR SALUTE.

IN the ranks, the color-bearer, whether at a halt or in march, will always carry the heel of the color-lance supported at the right hip, the right hand generally placed on the lance at the height of the shoulder, to hold it steady. When the color has to render honors, the color-bearer will salute as follows:

At the distance of six paces slip the right hand along the lance to the height of the eye; lower the lance by straightening the arm to its full extent, the heel of the lance remaining at the hip; bring back the lance to the habitual position, when the person saluted shall be passed, or shall have passed six paces.

The colors salute only the President, Vice-President, all general officers, and persons having the assimilated rank of general officers.

Whenever the colors salute, the drums will beat a *march* for the President, Vice-President, the General Commanding in Chief, and all persons having the assimilated rank of the latter; for a major-general and the assimilated ranks, *three ruffles*; for a brigadier-general and assimilated ranks, *two ruffles*.

## REVERSE ARMS.

*Reverse—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

(*Pl. CVIII. First motion.*) Bring the piece vertically in front of the centre of the body; seize it at the small of the stock with the left hand, the back of the hand to the rear; change the position of the right hand to the lower band.

(*Second motion.*) Reverse the piece, the muzzle passing to the right, and carry it to the left side, turning the barrel to the front.

(*Third motion.*) Press the muzzle to the rear with the right hand, the piece inclining at an angle of forty-five degrees, and steady it in this position by pressure of the left elbow against the body; carry the right hand behind the back and seize the piece between the lower and middle bands.

*Carry—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

(*First motion.*) Steady the piece in its position by pressure of the left elbow against the body; change the right hand to the small of the stock; extend the left hand to the rear, and seize the piece near the middle band.

(*Second motion.*) Bring the piece to a vertical position at the left side, carry it to the right shoulder, the right hand embracing the guard, the fingers of the left hand extended and joined.

(*Third motion.*) Drop the left hand by the side.

*Rest on—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

(*Pl. CIX. First motion.*) Reverse the piece with both hands, the muzzle passing to the left; place the



Reverse Arms. P. 314.







Rest on Arms. P. 314.

muzzle upon the left toe, the barrel to the right; carry the hands to the butt, the right hand uppermost.

(*Second motion.*) Carry the right foot three inches to the rear.

(*Third motion.*) Incline the head toward the hands.

### Carry—ARMS.

#### *One time and three motions.*

(*First motion.*) Change the position of the hands, carrying the right to the small of the stock, the left to the lower band, back of the hand to the rear.

(*Second motion.*) Restore the piece to the right shoulder, the muzzle passing to the left, the right hand embracing the guard, the fingers of the left hand extended and joined; bring the right foot by the side of the left.

(*Third motion.*) Drop the left hand to the side.



## INSTRUCTION FOR THE DRUM-MAJOR.

The position of the drum-major is two paces in front of the field music or band, opposite the centre.

### *Position of the staff.*

The staff is held in the right hand, below the chin, the back of the hand to the front, the head of the staff near the hand, the ferrule pointing upward and to the right. After each signal, the staff will be restored to this position.

### *Signals of the drum-major.*

*To play.* Face toward the music, and extend the right arm to its full length in the direction of the staff.

*To cease playing.* Extend the right arm to its full length in the direction of the staff.

*To march.* Turn the wrist and bring the staff to the front, the ferrule pointing upward and to the front;

extend the arm to its full length in the direction of the staff.

*To halt.* Reverse the staff and hold it horizontally above the head with both hands, the arms extended; lower the staff with both hands to a horizontal position at the height of the hips.

*To countermarch.* Face to the music and give the signal to march. The countermarch is executed by the file-leaders to the right of the drum-major wheeling individually about to the right, those to the left, to the left; the other men of each file follow their file-leaders. The drum-major will pass through the centre.

*To oblique.* Bring the staff to a horizontal position, the head opposite the neck, the ferrule pointing in the direction the oblique is to be made; extend the arm to its full length in the direction of the staff.

*To march by the right flank.* Extend the arm to the right, the staff vertical, the ferrule upward, the back of the hand to the rear.

*To march by the left flank.* Extend the arm to the left, the staff vertical, the ferrule upward, the back of the hand to the front.

*To diminish front.* Let the ferrule fall into the left hand at the height of the eyes, the right hand at the height of the hip.

*To increase front.* Let the ferrule fall into the left hand at the height of the hip, the right hand at the height of the neck.

*The general.* Bring the staff to a vertical position, the hand opposite the neck, the back of the hand to the front, the ferrule pointing upward.

*The assembly.* Bring the staff to a horizontal position, the hand opposite the neck, the back of the hand down, the ferrule pointing to the front.

*To the color.* Bring the staff to a horizontal position at the height of the neck, the back of the hand to the rear, the ferrule pointing to the left.

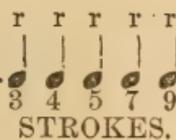
# BEATS OF THE DRUM.

---

## Explanation of the Signs for the Drum.

A TAP..... 

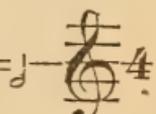
A FLAM..... 

ROLLS OF.....   
STROKES.

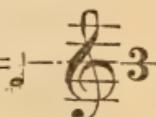
A DRAG..... 

A ROLL..... 

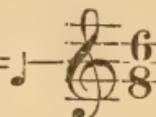
### COMMON TIME.

90 =  or 90 Steps  
to a minute.

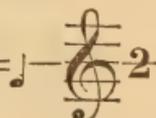
### TIME FOR THE RETREAT.

110 =  or 110 Steps  
to a minute.

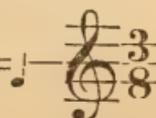
### QUICK TIME.

110 =  or 110 Steps  
to a minute.

### DOUBLE TIME.

165 =  or 165 Steps  
to a minute.

### TIME FOR THE TROOP.

80 =  or 30 Bars  
to a minute.

## Length and Proportion of Notes and Rests.

Semibreve,  
equal  
to 2 Minims,  
or 4 Crotchets,  
or 8 Quavers,  
or 16 Semiquavers.

**COMMON TIME.**  
2 steps to a bar, and  
90 to a minute.

**RESTS.**

A Dotted Minim,  
equal  
to 3 Crotchets,  
or 6 Quavers.

**TIME FOR THE RE-TREAT.**  
3 steps to a bar, and  
110 to a minute.

A Dotted Crotchet,  
equal  
to 3 Quavers,  
or 6 Semiquavers.

**TIME FOR THE TROOP, &c.**  
1 step to a bar, and  
80 to a minute.

The image contains several musical staves illustrating note values and rests. The first section shows a semibreve note in a 4/4 time signature, followed by two minims, four crotchets, and eight quavers, all shown to be equivalent in length. The second section shows a dotted minim in a 3/4 time signature, followed by three crotchets and six quavers, also shown to be equivalent. The third section shows a dotted crotchet in a 3/8 time signature, followed by three quavers and six semiquavers, also shown to be equivalent. The text 'COMMON TIME' is underlined, and 'TIME FOR THE RE-TREAT' and 'TIME FOR THE TROOP, &c.' are also underlined. The word 'RESTS.' is written above a staff showing four eighth rests.

2 Dotted Crotchets,  
equal  
to 6 Quavers.

QUICK TIME.  
2 steps to a bar, and  
110 to a minute.

A Minim,  
equal  
to 2 Crotchets,  
or 4 Quavers.

DOUBLE TIME.  
2 steps to a bar, and  
165 to a minute.

General Calls on the Drum.

1. *The General.*

80 = ♩.

t d t t t t r

t r t r t r t *D.C.*

2. *The Assembly.*

80 = ♩.

f f f f r f f f f

f f f f f f r f f f f f *D.C.*

3. *To the Color.*

80 = ♩.

FIFE.

DRUM.

f t t t t t f t t f

f f r f f f f

9

4. *The long Roll.*

r r r r

5. *The Reveille.*

140 = ♩.

FIFE.

DRUM.

t r r r r r t r

7 7 3 7 7 3

60 =  $\text{♩}$  *Slow Scotch.*

120 =  $\text{♩}$  *Austrian.*

$\text{♩}$  *Austrian.*  
 d d d d d d d d

&c.  
 d d d d r t

140 =  $\text{♩}$  *Hessian.*

$\text{♩}$  *Hessian.*  
 DOUBLE DRAG. &c.  
 d d d d d d d d

DRUM. r t

60=♩ *Dutch.*

Melody staff: Treble clef, key signature of two sharps (F# and C#), 3/8 time signature. The melody consists of eighth and sixteenth notes. It ends with "&c."  
 Bass staff: Treble clef, 3/8 time signature. Notes are placed on the first line. Letters 'r', 'd', 'f', and 'r' are written above the notes. A '7' is written below the first and fifth notes.  
 DRUM staff: Treble clef. Notes are placed on the first line. Letters 'r', 't', 'r', 't', 'r', 'r', 'r', 'r', 'r', 'r' are written above the notes.

160=♩ *Quick Scotch.*

Melody staff: Treble clef, key signature of two sharps (F# and C#), 2/4 time signature. The melody consists of eighth and sixteenth notes. It ends with "&c."  
 Bass staff: Treble clef, 2/4 time signature. Notes are placed on the first line. Letters 'r' are written above the notes. A '7' is written below each note.

*D. C. the first part of the Reveille.*

6. *The Troop.*

FIFE staff: Treble clef, key signature of two sharps (F# and C#), 3/8 time signature. Notes are placed on the first line. There are wavy lines above the notes in the third and fourth measures.  
 DRUM staff: Treble clef, 3/8 time signature. Notes are placed on the first line. Letters 'r', 'r', and 'r' are written above the notes.

80 =  $\text{♩}$ .

r t t f t t f d t r

7. *The Retreat.*

FIFE.

DRUM.

r r r

110 =  $\text{♩}$ .

t d t t d t t d t t

d t d t t d t t Volti.



8. *The Tattoo.*

80 = ♩.

FIFE.

DRUM.

d f t d t d r f t d

4

t d t r f r f

5 5

*Fine.*

110 = ♩ *Quick Time.*
*After the Quick Time begin the Doubling.*90 = ♩ *Common Time.*
*After this repeat the Doubling.*

60 =  $\text{♩}$  *Dutch.*

140 =  $\text{♩}$  *Double Time.*

*After the three Rolls repeat Doubling to the Fine.*

9. *To recall Detachments.*

80 =  $\text{♩}$ .

10. *Drummer's Call.*

90 =  $\text{♩}$ .

r f f r f f r f f

r f f r f f r t r t

11. *Come for Orders.*

FIRST SERGEANTS.

3 times over.

SERGEANTS.

3 times over.

CORPORALS.

3 times over.

12. *The Roll (to cease firing).*

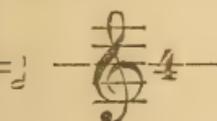
r r r r

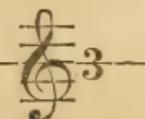
# CALLS ON THE BUGLE.

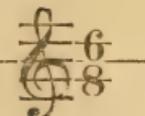
---

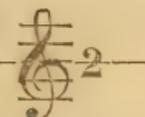
## Explanation of the Signs for the Bugle.

### *Movement of the Metronome.*

76 =  or 76 Steps to the minute.

80 =  or 80 Bars to the minute.

100 =  or 100 Steps to the minute.

120 =  or 120 Steps to the minute

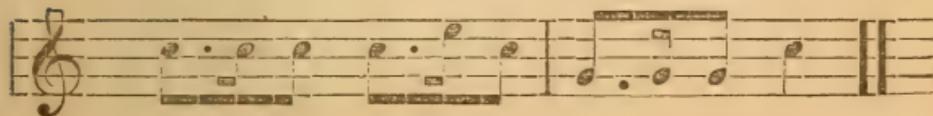
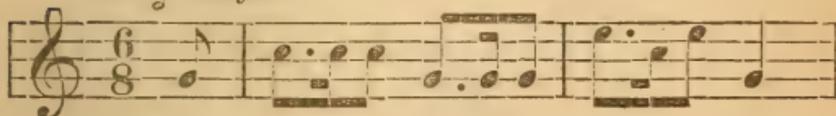
Silence....

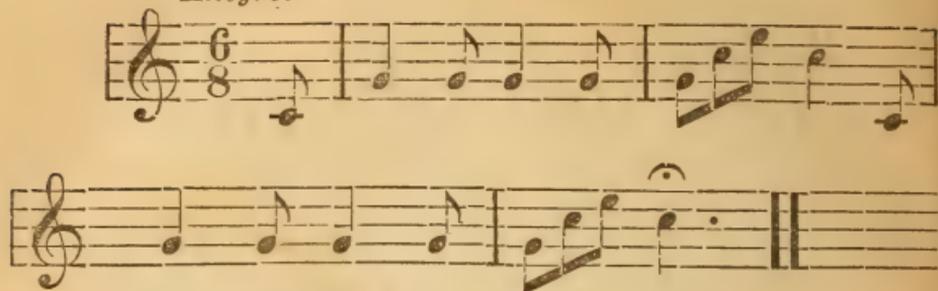
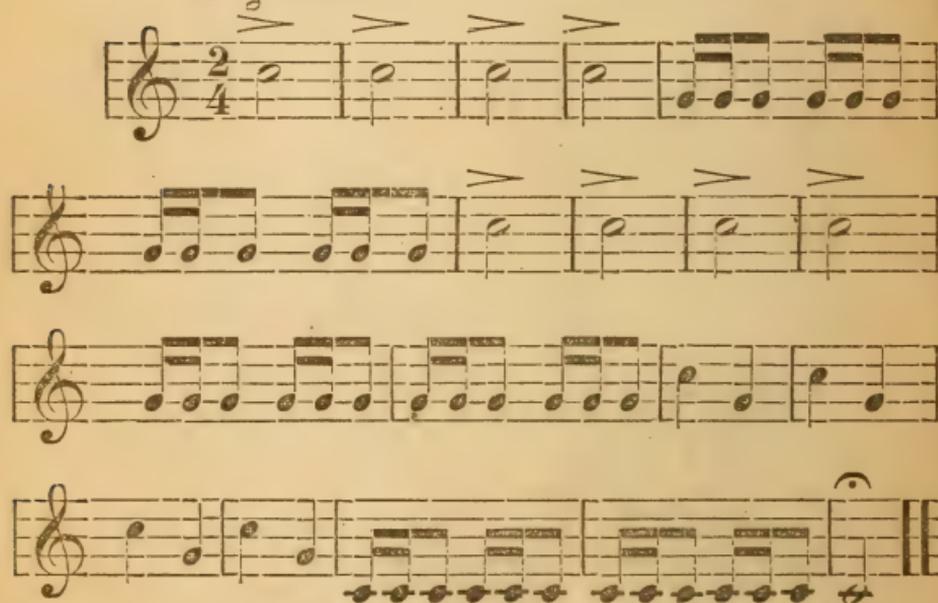
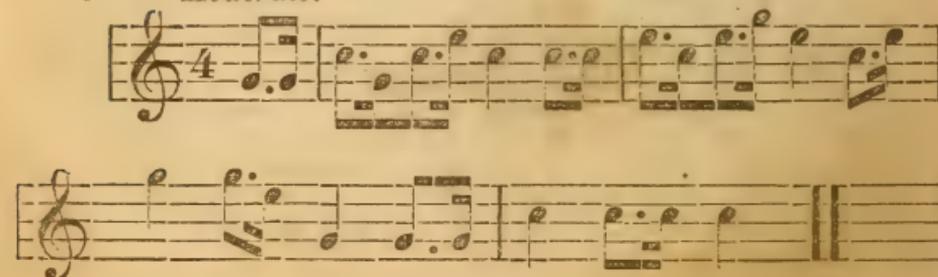
Demi-silence....

## General Calls on the Bugle.

### 1. *Attention.*

120 =  *Allegro.*



2. *Signal of Execution.**Allegro.*3. *The General.*130 =  $\text{♩}$  *Presto.*4. *The Assembly.**Moderato.*



8. *Double Time.*165 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*9. *The Charge.**Presto.*

10. *The Reveille.*

110=♩ *Allegro.*

Musical score for 'The Reveille' in 2/4 time, marked Allegro. The score consists of five staves of music. The first staff begins with a treble clef and a 2/4 time signature. The music is written in a single melodic line. The piece concludes with a double bar line and the initials 'D. C.' (Da Capo).

11. *The Retreat.\**

Musical score for 'The Retreat' in 2/4 time. The score is arranged for three parts: FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD. Each part is written on a separate staff with a treble clef and a 2/4 time signature. The music is written in a single melodic line. The piece concludes with a double bar line.

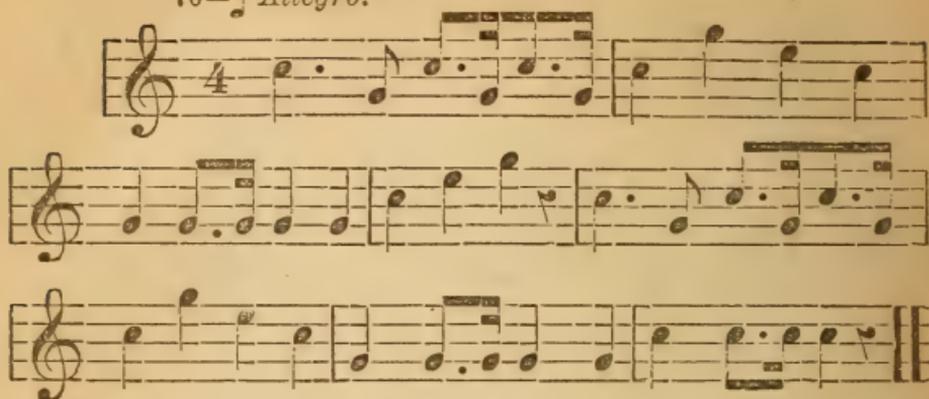
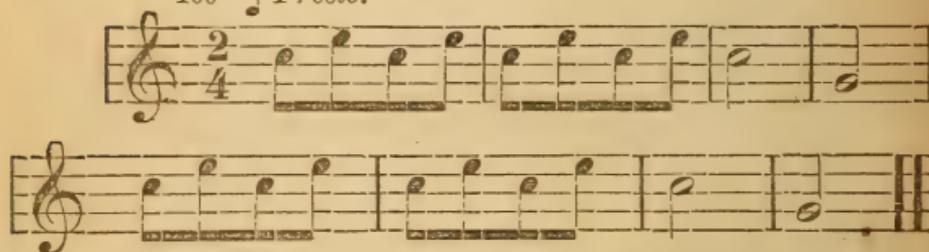
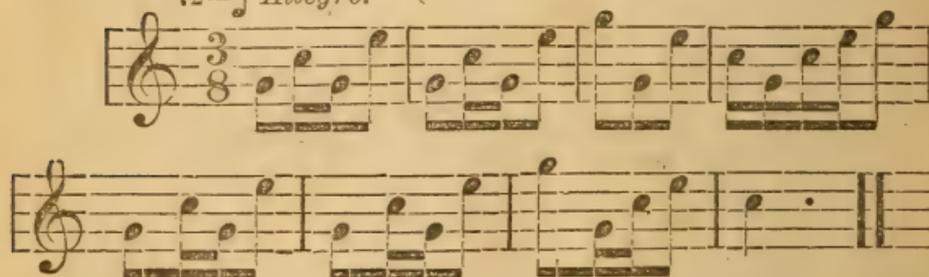
\* As a signal play to the mark \*

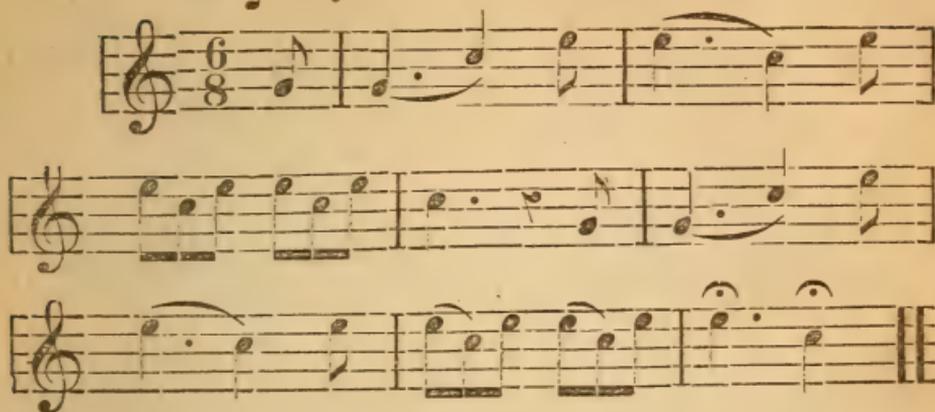
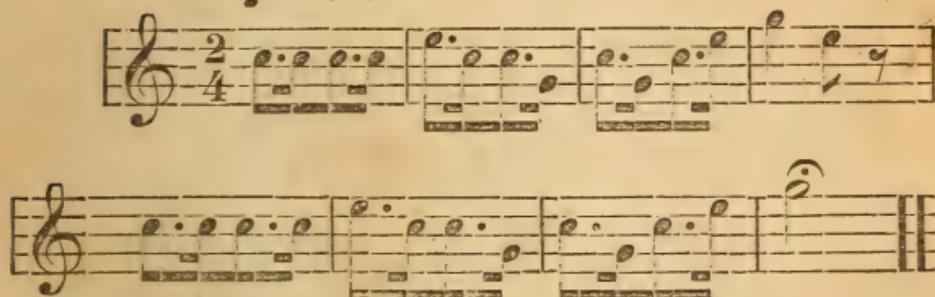
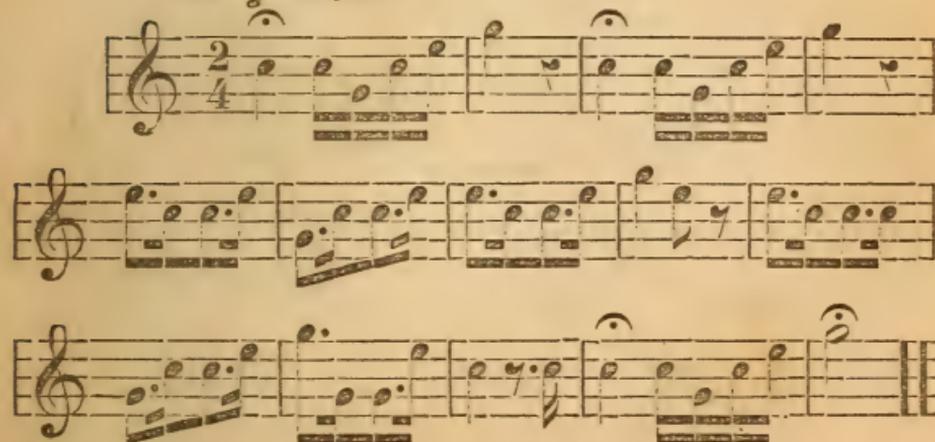
The first system consists of three staves of music. The top staff begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The music is written in a rhythmic pattern of eighth and sixteenth notes. An asterisk is placed above the second measure of the top staff. The bottom two staves continue the melody and accompaniment.

The second system consists of three staves of music, continuing the melody and accompaniment from the first system. The notation includes various rhythmic values and rests.

The third system consists of three staves of music, concluding the piece with a double bar line. The notation includes various rhythmic values and rests.



13. *To extinguish Lights.*76 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*14. *Assembly of the Buglers.*160 =  $\text{♩}$  *Presto.*15. *Orders for Orderly Sergeant.*72 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*16. *For Officers to take their places in line after firing.*108 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*

17. *The Disperse.*120 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*18. *Officer's Call.*152 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*19. *Breakfast Call.*138 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*

20. *Dinner Call.*110 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*

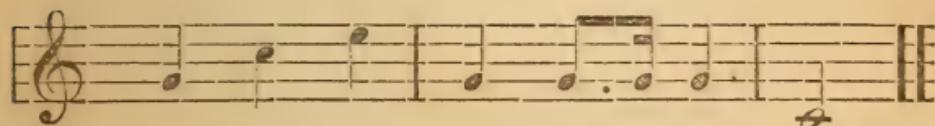
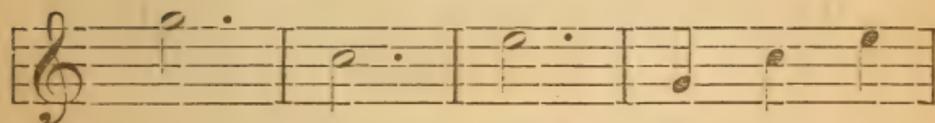
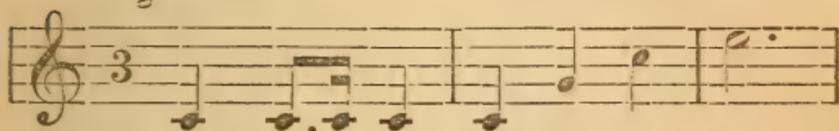
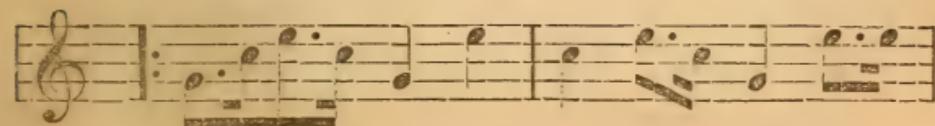
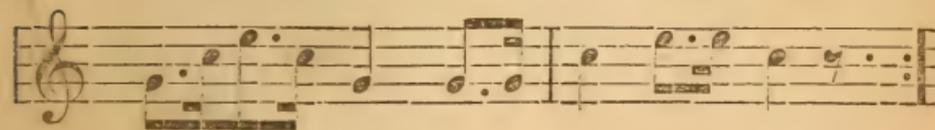
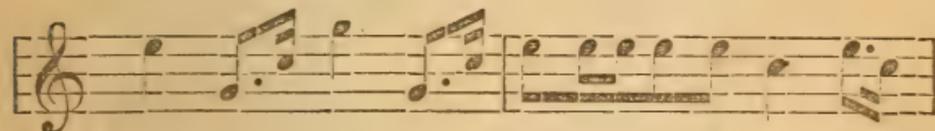
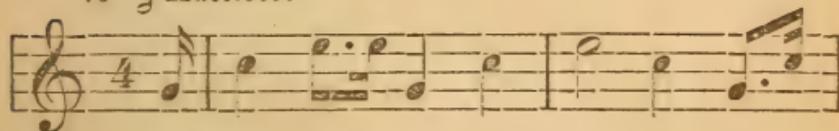
Musical notation for the Dinner Call, consisting of three staves of music in 2/4 time. The melody features several triplet patterns marked with a '3' above the notes.

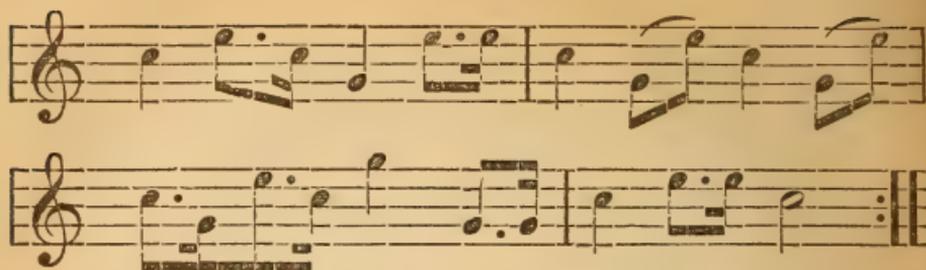
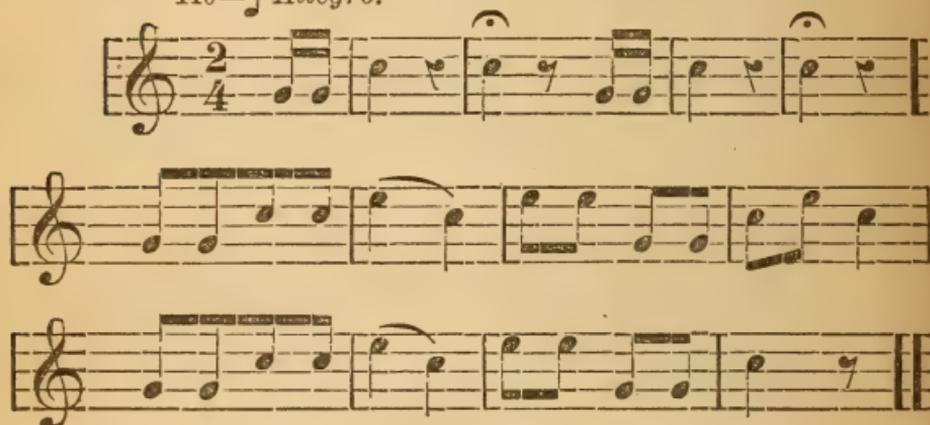
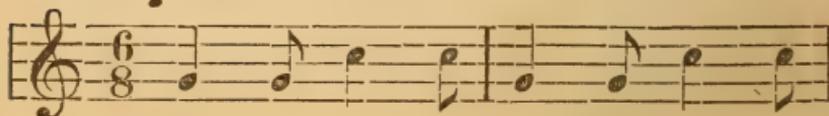
21. *Sick Call.*110 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*

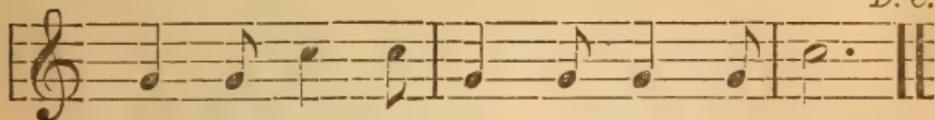
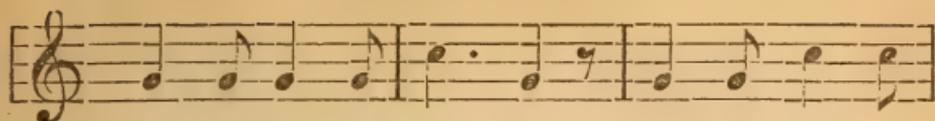
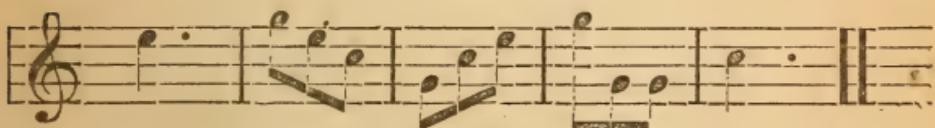
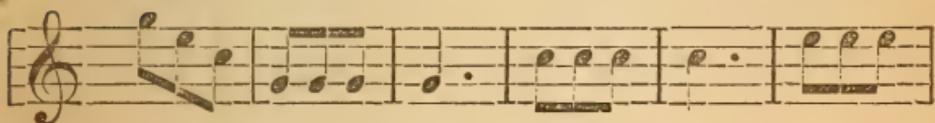
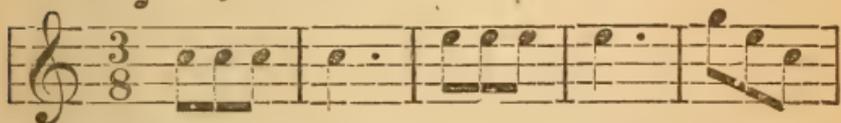
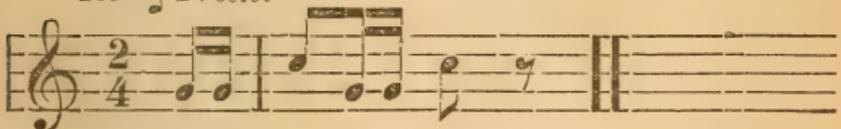
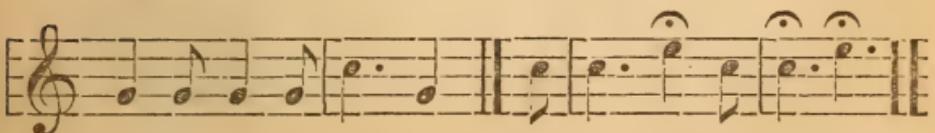
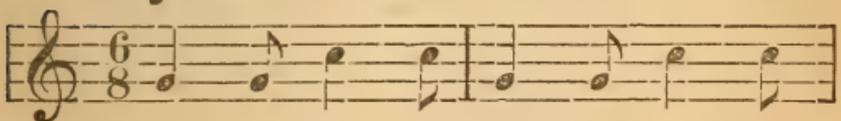
Musical notation for the Sick Call, consisting of two staves of music in 2/4 time. The melody is characterized by eighth-note patterns and rests.

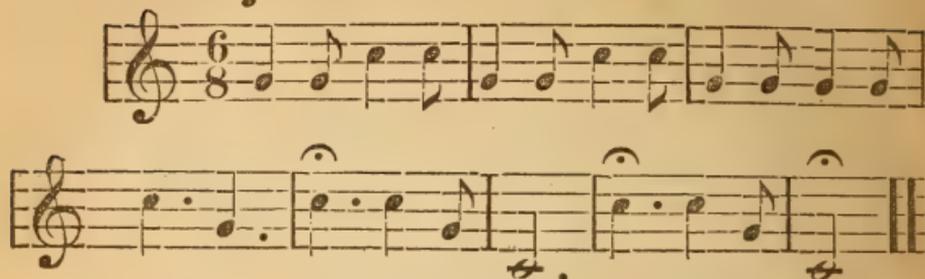
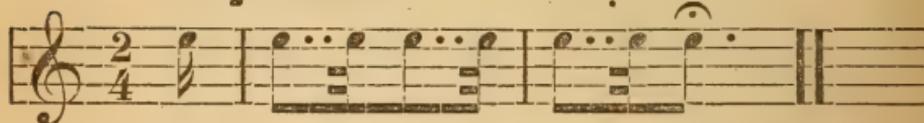
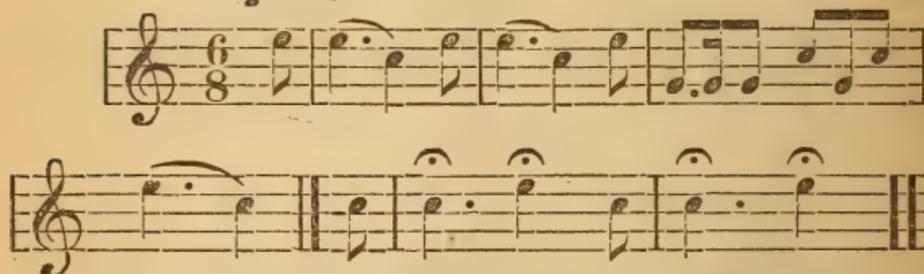
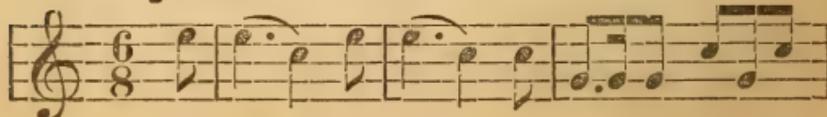
22. *Fatigue Call.*92 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*

Musical notation for the Fatigue Call, consisting of three staves of music in 3/8 time. The melody features dotted rhythms and eighth-note patterns.

23. *Church Call.*80 =  $\text{♩}$  *Andante.*24. *Drill Call.*76 =  $\text{♩}$  *Maestoso.*

25. *School Call.*110 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*26. *Deploy as Skirmishers.*110 =  $\text{♩}$  *Allegro.*27. *Forward.*160 =  $\text{♩}$  *Presto.*

*D. C.*28. *In Retreat.*76 = *Allegro.*29. *Halt.*160 = *Presto.*30. *By the right flank.*160 = *Presto.*

31. *By the left flank.*160 = *Presto.*32. *Commence firing.*160 = *Presto.*33. *Cease firing.*50 = *Maestoso.*34. *Column right.*110 = *Allegro.*35. *Column left.*110 = *Allegro.*





## APPENDIX NO. I.

NOTE.—With a view to supplying, as nearly as possible, in one volume, a complete system of instruction for Infantry, two Appendices are added to the Tactics.

Appendix No. I. embraces the forms, heretofore in Army Regulations, for Parade, Review, Inspection, Muster, Guard Mounting, Escorts of Honor, and Funeral Honors, a few modifications being made to adapt them to the change in Infantry Tactics.

Appendix No. II. embraces the Forms for Parades and Reviews of a Brigade, Division, and Corps, prepared by Brevet Major-General A. T. A. Torbert, U. S. Army.

At all parades and inspections of a battalion, the field and staff will be dismounted; they will also be dismounted at review, unless the reviewing officer should be mounted.

In all forms of ceremony, *adjutants' call* will be sounded, and the band will strike up, at which the battalion will form on the color-company, according to the principles of successive formations. The adjutant and sergeant-major will establish two markers for the color-company, and will then respectively assure the positions of the guides of the right and left wings.

The commanding officer will take his place facing the line, a distance in front of the centre of the battalion equal to half its front; the other field officers, the staff and non-commissioned staff, excepting the adjutant and sergeant-major, will take their proper places in rear of the battalion.

The adjutant will take post two paces to the right, the sergeant-major two paces to the left of the front rank of the battalion.

The band or field music will take post on the right, the left of the front rank at ten paces from the right flank of the battalion.

All forms or ceremony may be executed in single rank by the same commands as in double ranks.

### DRESS PARADE OF A BATTALION.

Previous to each dress parade, the companies will assemble under arms and be inspected by their captains; the inspection completed, adjutants' call will be sounded, at which the line will be formed on the parade-ground.

The line being formed, the adjutant will step two paces to the front, face to the left, command *Guides*—POSTS, and retire to his place; commencing on the right, the captains will then successively face about and command: 1. (such) *Company*. 2. *Carry*—ARMS. 3. *Order*—ARMS. 4. *Parade*—REST; and resume their front.

The left company having come to the parade rest, the adjutant will order the music to *beat off*, when it will commence on the right, beat in front of the line to the left, and back to its place on the right, when it will cease. The adjutant will then step two paces to the front, face to the left, and command:

1. *Attention*. 2. BATTALION. 3. *Carry*—ARMS. 4. *Prepare to open ranks*. 5. *Rear open order*. 6. MARCH.

At the second command, the battalion will resume the order arms.

At the fifth command, each first lieutenant will place himself in his own first sergeant's interval, and will be covered in the rear rank by the second lieutenant of the company on his right.

At the sixth command, the ranks will be opened, the adjutant aligning the rear rank and file-closers; the company officers, at the same time, will place themselves four paces in front of their companies, the first lieutenant opposite the right, the second lieutenant opposite the left, the captain opposite the centre; the field officers will place themselves six paces in front of the line of company officers, opposite their places in line of battle.

The adjutant, seeing the ranks aligned, will command:

FRONT.

He will then pass along the front of the battalion to its

centre, turn to the right, and march to a point midway between the line of field officers and the commanding officer, when he will halt, face about, and command :

*Present*—ARMS ;

at which arms will be presented, officers saluting. This done, the adjutant will face about, salute the commanding officer, and report, "*Sir, the parade is formed.*" The adjutant will then, on the intimation, "*Take your post, Sir,*" take his post three paces to the left and one to the rear of the commanding officer, passing round his rear.

The commanding officer while the band is playing will stand at parade rest, with his arms folded, in which position he will continue till arms are about to be presented, when he will come to attention, and acknowledge the salute by touching his hat ; the adjutant having taken his post, he will draw his sword, command—1. *Battalion.* 2. *Carry—ARMS*, and add such exercises in the manual of arms as he may desire, concluding with *order arms*. He will then return his sword, and direct the adjutant to receive the reports.

The adjutant will now pass round the right of the commanding officer, advance toward the line, halt midway between him and the line of field officers, and command :

1. *First sergeants to the front and centre.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the sergeants will carry arms, step two paces to the front, and face inward. At the second command, they will march to the centre and halt, when the adjutant will command :

1. FRONT. 2. REPORT.

At the second command, each in succession, beginning on the right, will salute by bringing the left hand smartly across the breast to the right shoulder, and will then report the result of the roll-call, previously made on the company parade.

The reports being made, the adjutant will command :

1. *First sergeants outward*—FACE. 2. *To your posts*—MARCH.

At the command *march*, the first sergeants will resume their places, and order arms. The adjutant will now face to

the commanding officer, salute, report the absent officers, and give the result of first sergeants' reports. The commanding officer will next direct the orders to be published, when the adjutant will face about, and command :

*Attention to orders.*

He will then read the orders, after which he will face to the commanding officer, salute, and report. The commander will then direct him to dismiss the parade, at which he will face to the line, and command :

*Parade is dismissed.*

At this command, all the officers will return their swords, and face inward; they will then step off at the same time with, and close upon the adjutant, who will place himself in the line of company officers, the field officers on the flanks. The officers having closed, the adjutant will command :

1. FRONT. 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH.

At the third command, they will march to the front, dressing on the centre, the band playing; arrived at six paces from the commanding officer, the adjutant will command :

*Officers—HALT;*

upon which the officers will halt and salute, the adjutant and the officers to his right raising the right hand, those to the left, the left. The hands will remain at the visor till the salute shall be acknowledged, and will drop at the same time with the hand of the commanding officer. The commanding officer will then give such instructions as he may deem necessary, which will conclude the ceremony.

As the officers disperse, the first sergeants will close the ranks of their respective companies, and march them to the company parade, when they will be dismissed, the band continuing to play till the companies clear the regimental parade.

## REVIEW OF A BATTALION.

The reviewing officer will take his post in front of the centre of the battalion, the point being indicated by a marker or camp-color previously established by the adju-

tant; the adjutant will also post markers at the points where the column will have to change direction in order that the right flank in passing shall be at six or eight paces from the reviewing officer.

The battalion being in the order of battle, the colonel will command:

1. *Battalion prepare for review.*
2. *Rear open order.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the third command, the ranks will be opened, the colonel aligning the company officers and the front rank, the lieutenant-colonel and adjutant aligning respectively the rear rank and the line of file-closers; the field and company officers will advance to the front as at parade; the staff officers, in the order of rank from right to left, will place themselves at one pace apart on the right of the line of company officers; the non-commissioned staff, the sergeant-major on the right, will form similarly on the left of the front rank of the battalion; the color-bearer will advance to the line of company officers, his place being filled by the color-corporal of his file.

The colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command **FRONT**; and place himself, facing to the front, six paces in front of the line of field officers, opposite the centre of the battalion. The reviewing officer will now approach a few paces toward the colonel and halt, when the colonel will face about, and command:

*Present—ARMS;*

at which the officers and men will present arms; the color will also salute should the rank of the reviewing officer entitle him to it, in which case the drums will beat a march, or ruffles, according to his rank; arms having been presented, the colonel will face about and salute.

The reviewing officer will acknowledge the salute by touching or raising his hat, after which the battalion will be brought to the *carry arms*.

The reviewing officer will then proceed to the right of the battalion, and will pass in front of the company officers to the left, returning to the right by the rear of the file-closers. While the reviewing officer is going round the battalion, the

band will play, ceasing when he leaves the right to return to his station; the colonel, at the same time, will command:

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the company officers and color-bearer will face about, and, at the second command, will return to their places in the order of battle; the field, staff, and non-commissioned staff will remain in their places.

The reviewing officer having taken his position, the colonel will command:

1. *By company right wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Pass in review.*
4. *Column forward.* 5. *Guide right.* 6. MARCH.

At the second command, the battalion will break into column by company; the staff (excepting the adjutant) will place themselves in the order of rank, from right to left, on a line equal to the front of the column, five paces in front of the leading captain; the lieutenant-colonel on a line with the leading company; senior major on a line with the rear company; junior major on a line with the centre company; the adjutant on a line with the second company from the front; the sergeant-major on a line with the second company from the rear, each six paces from the left flank of the column; the non-commissioned staff, excepting the sergeant-major, will place themselves in the order of rank five paces in rear of the file-closers of the rear company; the band will take post ten paces in front of the staff.

At the sixth command, the column will step off, the band playing, the officers remaining in the position above prescribed; the column will change direction at the points indicated, the colonel taking his place five paces in front of the staff immediately after the second change; the band, having passed the reviewing officer, will wheel to the left out of the column, and will take post in front of and facing the reviewing officer, continuing to play till the rear of the column shall have passed, when it will cease, and then return to its original position before the review.

All officers will salute the reviewing officer when at six paces from him, recovering the sword when six paces past him. In saluting, they will cast their eyes toward him.

The color will salute if the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to it; the drums beating a march, or ruffles, according to his rank.

The colonel, having saluted, will place himself on the right of the reviewing officer, where he will remain till the rear of the battalion shall have passed, when he will return to his position before the review. The head of the column having executed a second change of direction to the left, after having passed the reviewing officer, the colonel will command: *Guide left*; and when it shall arrive on the original ground, he will form it in line to the left, open the ranks as in the previous case, and salute; which being acknowledged, will terminate the review.

But should it be desirable to march past the reviewing officer again, and in double time, instead of changing the guide and forming line as above, the colonel will command: 1. *Double time*. 2. MARCH; and at the second change of direction, will place himself at the head of the column. The band, previously notified, will remain in its position opposite the reviewing officer, and will play in double time.

In passing in review the second time, there is no saluting; the colonel, having passed the reviewing officer, will place himself on his right, and will conclude the review as already explained.

Should the battalion have a pioneer corps, it will be posted ten paces to the right of the front rank of the battalion, the band ten paces on its right. In marching in review, the pioneers will be ten paces in front of the colonel, the band ten paces in their front.

After the review, the colonel will cause the battalion to perform such manœuvres as the reviewing officer may direct.

When desirable that a battalion should be reviewed before an inspector, junior in rank to the commanding officer, the commanding officer will himself receive the review, and will be accompanied by the inspector.

## INSPECTION OF A BATTALION.

The battalion being in the order of battle, the colonel will cause it to break into open column of companies, right in front. He will next order the ranks to be opened, when

the color-guard, under the direction of the adjutant, will take post sixteen paces in front, and the band ten paces in rear of the column.

The colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command :

1. *Officers and sergeants, to the front of your companies.*
2. MARCH.

The officers will form themselves in one rank, eight paces, and the non-commissioned officers in one rank, four paces, in advance, along the whole fronts of their respective companies, from right to left, in the order of seniority ; the music of each company, in one rank, two paces on the right of the front rank.

The colonel will next command :

*Field and staff, to the front—MARCH.*

The commissioned officers, thus designated, will form themselves in one rank, on a line equal to the front of the column, eight paces in front of the colors, from right to left, in the order of seniority ; and the non-commissioned staff, in a similar manner, four paces in rear of the preceding rank. The colonel, seeing the movement executed, will take post on the right of the lieutenant-colonel, and wait the approach of the inspecting officer. But such field officers as may be superior in rank to the inspector, will not take post in front of the battalion.

The inspector will commence in front. After inspecting the dress and general appearance of the field and commissioned staff under arms, the inspector, accompanied by these officers, will pass down the open column, looking at every rank in front and rear.

The colonel will now command :

1. *Order—ARMS.*
2. *In place—REST ;*

when the inspector will proceed to make a minute inspection of the several companies in succession, commencing in front.

The non-commissioned staff and color-guard may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

As the inspector successively approaches the companies, the captains will command :

1. *Attention*. 2. COMPANY. 3. *Inspection*—ARMS.

The inspecting officer will then go through the whole company, and minutely inspect the arms, accoutrements, and dress of each soldier. After this is done, the captain will command :

*Open*—BOXES ;

when the ammunition and the boxes will be examined.

The captain will then command :

- |                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Carry</i> —ARMS.  | 6. <i>Rear, open order</i> .      |
| 2. <i>Close order</i> . | 7. MARCH.                         |
| 3. MARCH.               | 8. <i>Front rank</i> —ABOUT FACE. |
| 4. <i>Order</i> —ARMS.  | 9. <i>Unslung</i> —KNAPSACKS.     |
| 5. <i>Stack</i> —ARMS.  | 10. <i>Open</i> —KNAPSACKS.       |

The sergeants will face inward at the second command, close upon the centre at the third, and stack their arms at the fifth command ; at the sixth command, they will face outward, and resume their positions at the seventh. When the ranks are closed, preparatory to *take arms*, the sergeants will also close upon the centre, and, at the word, take their arms and resume their places.

The knapsacks will be placed at the feet of the men, the flaps from them, with the great-coats on the flaps, and the knapsacks leaning on the great-coats. In this position the inspector will examine their contents, or so many of them as he may think necessary, commencing with the non-commissioned officers, the men standing at attention.

When the inspector has passed through the company, the captain will command :

*Repack*—KNAPSACKS ;

when each soldier will repack and buckle up his knapsack, leaving it on the ground, the number upward, turned from him and then stand at attention.

The captain will then command :

*Sling*—KNAPSACKS.

At the word *sling*, each soldier will take his knapsack, holding it by the inner straps, and stand erect ; at the last word, he will replace it on his back. The captain will continue :

1. *Front rank*—ABOUT FACE. 2. *Close order*. 3. MARCH.
4. *Take*—ARMS. 5. *Carry*—ARMS. 6. *Officers and sergeants, to your posts*. 7. MARCH.

and will cause the company to march off to their tents or quarters.

In an extensive column, some of the rearmost companies may, after the inspection of dress and general appearance, be permitted to *stack arms* until just before the inspector approaches them, when they will be directed to *take arms* and resume their position.

At inspection of quarters, the men will be equipped in side arms, and will stand at attention in front of their respective bunks. In camp, they will stand in front of their tents; the captain, upon the approach of the inspector, giving the command, 1. *Attention*. 2. COMPANY, at which the company will salute with the right hand.

### MUSTER OF A BATTALION.

All stated musters of the troops shall be preceded by a minute and careful *inspection* in the prescribed mode; and if the command be of more than a company, by a *review*, before inspection.

The mustering officer having inspected the companies in succession, beginning at the head of the column, returns to the first company to muster it. The company being at *ordered arms*, with open ranks, as when inspected, the captain will, as the mustering officer approaches, command:

1. *Attention*. 2. COMPANY. 3. *Carry*—ARMS. 4. *Support*—ARMS.

The mustering officer will then call over the names on the roll, and each man, as his name is called, will distinctly answer, *Here!* and bring his piece to a *carry* and then to an *order arms*.

The adjutant, at muster, will provide himself with the muster-roll of the field and staff; and the captains, with the rolls of their respective companies.

After muster, the presence of the men reported in the hospital and on guard will be verified by the mustering officer, who will be accompanied by the company commanders.

## GUARD-MOUNTING.

At the second call for guard-mounting, the men warned for duty turn out on their company parades for inspection by the first sergeants; and, at adjutants' call, are marched to the regimental or garrison parade, by the first sergeants. Each detachment, as it arrives, will, under the direction of the adjutant, take post on the left of the one that preceded it, in open order, arms at a carry, and bayonets unfixed; the supernumeraries five paces in the rear of the men of their respective companies; the first sergeants in rear of them. The sergeant-major will dress the ranks, verify the details, cause the guard to count fours, and then divide it into platoons, the first platoon containing an even number of files; he will then report to the adjutant, and take his post two paces on the left of the front rank.

The adjutant then commands FRONT, when the officers of the guard take post twelve paces in front of the centre, the senior on the right, the sergeants in one rank, four paces in rear of the officers; and the corporals in one rank, four paces in rear of the sergeants—all facing to the front. The adjutant then assigns their places in the guard.

The adjutant will then command:

1. *Officers and non-commissioned officers.* 2. ABOUT FACE.
3. *Inspect your guard*—MARCH.

The non-commissioned officers then take their posts. The commander of the guard then commands:

1. *Order*—ARMS. 2. *Inspection*—ARMS;

and inspects his guard. When there is no commissioned officer on the guard, the adjutant will inspect it. During inspection, the band will play.

The inspection ended, the officers of the guard will place themselves four paces in front of the front rank, the senior opposite the right, the junior opposite the left; at the same time, also, the officers of the day will take post in front of the centre of the guard; the old officer of the day three paces on the right of the new officer of the day, one pace retired.

The adjutant will now command:

1. *Parade*—REST. 2. *Troop*—*Beat off* ;

when the music, beginning on the right, will beat down the line in front of the officers of the guard to the left, and back to its place on the right, when it will cease to play.

The adjutant then commands :

1. *Attention*. 2. GUARD. 3. *Carry*—ARMS. 4. *Close order*—MARCH.

At the words, "close order," the officers will face about ; at "march," resume their posts in line. The adjutant then commands :

*Present*—ARMS ;

at which he will face to the new officer of the day, salute, and report, "*Sir, the guard is formed.*" The new officer of the day, after acknowledging the salute, will order the adjutant to march the guard in review, or direct to its post.

In review, the guard marches past the officer of the day, according to the order of review, conducted by the adjutant, marching on the left of the first division ; the sergeant-major on the left of the last division.

When the column has passed the officer of the day, the adjutant and sergeant-major will retire. The officer of the guard will wheel his guard to the left into line, and without halting will break the guard into column of fours to the right, and conduct it to its post. The music, which has wheeled out of the column, and taken post opposite the officer of the day, will cease, and the old officer of the day salute, and give the old or standing orders to the new officer of the day. The supernumeraries, at the same time, will be marched by the first sergeants to their respective company parades, and dismissed.

The officer of the old guard, having his guard paraded, on the approach of the new guard, commands :

*Present*—ARMS.

The new guard will march, in quick time, past the old guard, at *carry arms*, officers saluting, and take post four paces on its right, where, being aligned with it, both guards will present arms.

The two officers will then approach each other, and salute, the old officer communicating his orders to the new officer. They will then return to their respective guards, and command:

1. *Carry*—ARMS. 2. *Order*—ARMS.

The officer of the new guard will now direct the list of the guard made, and divided into three reliefs, experienced soldiers placed over the arms of the guard, and at the remote and responsible posts, and the young soldiers in posts near the guard, for instruction in their duties, and will himself proceed to take possession of the guard-house or guard-tent, and the articles and prisoners in charge of the guard.

During the time of relieving the sentinels, and of calling in the small posts, the old commander will give to the new all the information and instructions relating to his post.

The first relief having been designated and brought to a carry, its corporal will command:

1. *Two* right. 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Guide* left.

The relief will march at support arms, the corporal on the left of the leading rank. The corporal of the old guard will march on the right of the leading rank, and will take command as soon as the old sentinels are relieved. Commencing with the right of the leading rank of two, the posts will be numbered from the right of each rank, "1," "2," "3," "4," and so on.

When a sentinel sees the relief approaching, he will halt and face to it, with his arms at a carry. At six paces from him the corporal will command:

1. *Relief*. 2. HALT.

The corporal will then add, according to the number of the post:

*No. (—) Arms*—PORT;

at which the two sentinels will come to *arms port*, and approach each other. The old sentinel will then, under the supervision of the corporal, whisper his instructions to the new sentinel; which done, both will come to a carry

The corporal will then command :

1. *Relief.* 2. *Support*—ARMS. 3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH.

As the relief passes, the old sentinel will fall in its rear at a support arms, and the other sentinels will be relieved in a similar manner. The sentinel at the guard-house will be the first relieved, and will be left behind.

The detachments and sentinels from the old guard having come in, it will be marched in column of fours, at *carry arms*, along the front of the new guard. in quick time, the new guard standing at *presented arms*; officers saluting, and the music of both guards beating, except at the outposts.

On arriving on the regimental or garrison parade, the officer of the old guard will send the detachments composing it, under charge of non-commissioned officers, to their respective companies. Before the men are dismissed, their pieces will be drawn, or discharged at a target. On re-joining their companies, the chiefs of squads will examine the arms, etc., of their men, and cause the whole to be put away in good order.

When the old guard has marched off fifty paces, the officer of the new guard will order his men to stack their arms, or place them in the arm-racks.

The commander of the guard will then make himself acquainted with all the instructions for his post, visit the sentinels, and question them and the non-commissioned officers relative to the instructions they may have received from other persons of the old guard.

In bad weather, or at night, or after fatiguing marches, the ceremony of turning off may be dispensed with, but not the inspection.

Grand guard-mounting will be conducted upon the same principles as regimental guard-mounting. The *adjutant of the day* will dress the lines, count the files, verify the details by reference to written orders, and tell off the guards, whilst the *general staff officer* appoints the officers and non-commissioned officers to the several guards, and designates the posts which they are to occupy.

## ESCORTS OF HONOR.

Escorts of honor are detailed for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops for this purpose will be selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

The escort will be drawn up in line, the centre opposite to the place where the personage presents himself, with an interval between the wings to receive him and his retinue. On his appearance he will be received with the honors due to his rank. When he has taken his place in the line, it will be broken into column by company, or fours, and take up the march. The same ceremony will be observed, and the same honors paid, on his leaving the escort.

When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where he is expected to be received, as, for instance, where a court-yard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels will be posted from that point to the escort, facing inward, and the sentinels will successively salute as he passes.

An officer will be appointed to attend him, to bear such communications as he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

## FUNERAL HONORS.

The following funeral escorts are allowed by Regulations: A colonel, a regiment; a lieutenant-colonel, six companies; major, four companies; captain, one company; subaltern, half a company; non-commissioned staff officer, sixteen rank and file, commanded by a sergeant; sergeant, fourteen rank and file, commanded by a sergeant; corporal, twelve rank and file, commanded by a corporal; private, eight rank and file, commanded by a corporal.

An officer's escort should be commanded by an officer of the same grade.

The escort will be formed with the centre opposite the tent or quarters of the deceased; arms at a carry; bayonets unfixed; the music on that flank of the escort toward which it must march.

Upon the appearance of the corpse, the commander will order:

*Present*—ARMS ;

at which, the music will play an appropriate air ; the coffin will then be taken to the flank of the escort opposite the music, after which arms will be carried, and the escort be broken into column by company, escort, or fours. The commander will next order :

1. *Reverse*—ARMS.    2. *Column forward*.    3. *Guide left*  
(or *right*).    4. MARCH.

The escort will march in slow time, to solemn music ; the centre of the column having arrived opposite the grave, the column will be halted, at which arms will be brought to the carry ; line will then be formed facing the grave, after which arms will be presented and the corpse will be brought to the opposite side of the grave.

The coffin having been lowered into the grave, the commander will order :

1. *Carry*—ARMS.    2. *Rest on*—ARMS.

The funeral service will now be completed, which done, the commander will order :

1. *Carry*—ARMS.    2. *Load with blank cartridges*—LOAD.

He will then cause the escort to fire three rounds with blank cartridges, the pieces being elevated. The escort will then be broken into column, and will march to the point where assembled, and will be dismissed. The music will not play till clear of the enclosure.

Should the distance to the place of interment be considerable, the escort, after having left the camp or garrison, may be permitted to march in route step until it approaches the burial-ground, when it will be called to attention, and the arms reversed. The music will not play while at route step.

In all funeral ceremonies, six pall-bearers will be selected from the grade of the deceased, or the grades next above or below it. If a commissioned officer, the coffin will be borne by six sergeants ; if a non-commissioned officer, or private, by six privates.

At funeral ceremonies, officers form in the procession in the inverse order of rank.

APPENDIX NO. II.

---

FORMS

FOR

PARADE AND REVIEW

OF BRIGADES, DIVISIONS, AND CORPS

OF INFANTRY.

BY A. T. A. TORBERT,

BREVET MAJOR-GENERAL UNITED STATES ARMY.

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by

A. T. A. TORBERT,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States  
for the District of New Jersey.

# FORM OF DRESS PARADE

FOR A

## BRIGADE OF INFANTRY.

1. THE brigade will be in line of battalion columns, by divisions, right in front, or (double column) at full, or half distance, with intervals of twenty-four paces between battalions. All mounted officers will remain mounted.

2. The colonels will be six paces from the left of their column, opposite the centre; lieutenant-colonels, majors, adjutants, and sergeant-majors, three paces from left flank of column—lieutenant-colonel opposite first division, major opposite rear division, adjutant opposite second division, sergeant-major opposite next to rear division, adjutant-general between first division, first battalion, and band.

3. The field music, if not consolidated on the right, will be posted on the right of its column, the front rank of it on a line with the color-division, the left of it three paces from the column. If there is a band, it will be posted on the right, on a line with the first division, the left of it ten paces from the column.

4. Brigadier-general (staff three paces in the rear, in one rank) fifty paces in front of the centre of the brigade.

5. The brigade being at *parade rest*, the music will play from right to left and back, in front of the line.

6. When the music ceases, the adjutant-general will ride ten paces to the front, face to the left, and command:

1. *Attention.* 2. BATTALIONS. 3. CARRY ARMS. 4. *Prepare to open ranks.* 5. *Rear open order.* 6. MARCH.

7. At the second command, the men will resume the correct position at *ordered arms*. At the sixth command, the ranks will be opened, the company officers marching four

paces in front of their respective companies, the color-bearer four paces in front of the officers of first division, opposite the centre—colonel, lieutenant-colonel, and major ten paces in front of their column—colonel opposite centre, lieutenant-colonel opposite right, major opposite left of column.

8. The adjutant-general seeing the ranks aligned, will command, FRONT, and ride along the front, in rear of the field officers, to the centre, turn to the right, and pass the line of colonels ten paces, face about, and command, *Present*—ARMS, when arms will be presented, officers saluting. If a general officer commands the parade, the colors will salute, and the drums beat two ruffles. Seeing this executed, he will face to the commander of the brigade, salute, and report, "*Sir, the parade is formed ;*" the salute will be acknowledged immediately. The adjutant will then, on intimation to that effect, take his station three paces to the left of the commander of the parade, one pace retired, passing by his right and rear.

9. As soon as the adjutant has taken his post, the commander of the parade will draw his sword, and command :

1. *Battalions.* 2. *Carry*—ARMS ;

and add such other exercises in the manual of arms as he may think proper, concluding with ORDER ARMS, return his sword, and direct the adjutant to receive the reports.

10. The adjutant-general will pass round the right of the commander of the parade, advance upon the line, halt midway between him and the line of colonels, and command :

1. *Adjutants to the front and centre.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, they will advance to the front, and face inward, just in front of the line of officers of the first division. At the second command, they will close to the centre, and face to the front, without further command.

11. Seeing them in proper position, the adjutant-general commands, REPORT, when each in succession, commencing on the right, will salute, and make his report.

12. The adjutant-general then commands :

1. *Adjutants.* 2. *To your posts.* 3. MARCH.

At the third command, all face outward, and return to their posts.

13. The adjutant-general will then face about, salute, and report the absentees, or, "*All are present or accounted for.*"

14. On an intimation from the commander of the parade, the adjutant-general will face about, and command: PARADE IS DISMISSED, when all field officers will return their swords, face inward, and close to the centre on the adjutant-general, he having taken position in their line, and face to the front, as they come up.

15. The adjutant-general then commands, FORWARD MARCH, when they will march forward, dressing on the centre, and when within six paces of the commander of the parade, the adjutant-general will command: 1. *Officers.* 2 HALT. The officers will salute the commander of the parade; the adjutant-general and the officers to his right raising the right hand to the cap, those to the left the left.

16. Colonels will then resume command of their battalions and conduct them from the ground.

#### ARTICLE FIRST.

##### FORM 1.

##### *Form for a review of a brigade of infantry in line.*

*Par.* 1. The brigade will be formed in line, at carry arms. All mounted officers will remain mounted—the colonel sixteen paces in front of the centre of his battalion; all other officers as in battalion line of battle; the brigadier-general in front of the centre of his brigade, ten paces in advance of the line of colonels, his staff, in one rank, three paces in his rear. All staff officers will have their swords drawn, and salute the reviewing officer. Band and field music of the brigade, ten paces from the right of the line. The band will be in front. The left of the pioneers of the brigade will be ten paces from the right of the first battalion.

2. The brigade being formed as above, the brigadier-general will face about, and command, *Prepare for review.* This will be promptly repeated by the colonels, who will add, *Rear, open order.* At this command the colonel,

lieutenant-colonel, and adjutant will go to the right to dress the different ranks, the colonel aligning company officers and front rank, lieutenant-colonel the rear rank, adjutant aligning file-closers. The general then commands, **MARCH**. The company officers and the color-bearer advance four paces in front of the front rank opposite their respective places in line. The color-corporal replaces the color-bearer. The staff officers place themselves, according to rank, three paces on the right of the rank of company officers, one pace from each other. The non-commissioned staff take post one pace from each other, and three paces on the left of the front rank of the battalion. When the ranks are aligned, the colonel will command, **FRONT**. The lieutenant-colonel and majors will take post in front, opposite their places, six paces in front of the line of company officers, and colonels and brigadier-general face to the front.

3. When the reviewing officer presents himself before the centre, he will advance to within about twenty paces of the commander of the troops, and halt (to receive the salute); the brigadier-general (at the same time the colonels) will face about, and command, *Present*—**ARMS**, and resume their front. The music will play, and all the drums beat, according to the rank of the reviewing officer.

4. The reviewing officer having acknowledged the salute, the brigadier-general and colonels will face about, and command, *Carry*—**ARMS**, and resume their front. The reviewing officer, joined by his staff, will go to the right to inspect.

5. When the reviewing officer leaves the front of a battalion, the colonel will **ORDER ARMS**. The band will play one of the national airs when the reviewing officer is inspecting the brigade.

6. When the reviewing officer, after his inspection of the line, turns off to take his position in front of the line, the colonels, commencing on the right, will then command: **CARRY ARMS.**

7. Brigadier-general and colonels face about, and command:

1. *Close order.* 2. **MARCH.**

8. The reviewing officer having taken his position in front

of the brigadier-general, the latter will command (which will be repeated by the colonels):

1. *By company (or division), right wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Right shoulder shift arms.* 4. *Pass in review.* 5. *Column forward.* 6. *Guide right.* 7. MARCH.

The colonel, followed by his staff officers (quartermaster, surgeon, assistant surgeon, and chaplain, in single rank), will be ten paces in front of the captain of the leading company. He will take this position by the time the head of the column gets within one hundred paces of the reviewing officer, the balance of the time on the left flank of the column, superintending the march, leaving his staff officers at the head of the column; lieutenant-colonel, majors, adjutant, and sergeant-major in their proper places, six paces from the left flank; the quartermaster and commissary sergeants five paces in rear of the file-closers of rear company, opposite the right and left of company; the rear of the band or field music consolidated, will be ten paces in front of the leading colonel or pioneers. The brigadier-general, followed by his staff, in one rank, will be ten paces in front of the music.

9. The color-bearer will remain in the ranks, while passing and saluting.

10. The music will begin to play at the command *march*, and after passing the reviewing officer, wheel to the left out of the column, and take a position opposite and facing him, and will continue to play until the rear of the column shall have passed him. The band *will not* cease playing while the drums give the ruffles.

11. All officers will salute the reviewing officer when they arrive within six paces of him, and recover their swords when six paces past him. All officers, in saluting, will cast their eyes toward the reviewing officer.

12. The colors will salute the reviewing officer, if entitled to it, when within six paces of him, and be raised when they have passed by him an equal distance. The drums will beat a march or ruffles, according to the rank of the reviewing officer, at the same time that the colors salute. The reviewing officer will acknowledge the salute by the

brigadier-general, the colonels, and also when the colors pass.

13. If there is a brigade band, it will be posted on the right, and it will only play during the inspection and review. The field music formed on the right and in rear of the band will only beat the march or ruffles (at the command PRESENT ARMS, and when the colors pass the reviewing officer), according to the rank of the reviewing officer. The band will remain in position opposite the reviewing officer, and play while the brigade is passing.

14. Troops will pass in review in quick time, and all officers will salute, and in saluting, they will always turn the palm of the hand to the front. This rule is general.

15. As soon as the troops are put into column, the general's and colonel's staff will place themselves at the head of their column, in single rank, according to rank, from right to left, and will salute the reviewing officer at the very instant their commanding officers do, and bring their swords up when they do. This rule is general.

16. Troops will be marched at *right shoulder shift*, till the head of each regiment gets within fifty paces of the reviewing officer, when it will be brought to carry arms. A marker should be posted fifty paces from the reviewing officer, to indicate the point where they should be brought to *carry arms*. This rule is general.

17. When the brigade commander has passed the reviewing officer six or eight paces, he will turn to the right, followed by his staff and orderlies, and place himself on the right of the reviewing officer; his staff will arrange themselves in single rank, on the right of the reviewing officer's staff, and his flag and orderlies in their rear. They will remain in this position till the brigade has passed. This rule is general for a brigade review.

18. When each colonel has passed the reviewing officer six or eight paces, he will turn to the right, leaving his staff at the head of the column, and place himself on the right of the brigade commander till his regiment has passed. This rule is general for a brigade review.

## ARTICLE FIRST.

## FORM 2.

*Form for a review of a brigade of infantry in line of battalion columns.*

In the first form, the brigade was supposed to be deployed; if the ground will not admit of this formation, or it is not the wish of the general to make this disposition, the following will be adopted:

1. The brigade will be formed in line of battalion columns, by divisions, right in front, or double column at full or half distance, with twenty-four paces' intervals between battalions; it may be reduced to ten.

2. Colonels will be posted ten paces in front of the centre of their respective columns; lieutenant-colonel, major, adjutant, and sergeant-major, on the left of their respective columns, as prescribed by Infantry Tactics; quartermaster-sergeant and commissary-sergeant five paces in rear of the file-closers of the rear division; quartermaster, surgeon, assistant surgeons, and chaplain in line, according to rank, from right to left, five paces in rear of quartermaster and commissary sergeants.

3. The field music, if not consolidated on the right, will be posted on the right of the columns; the front rank of it on a line with the color-division, the left of it three paces from the column. If there is a band, it will be posted on the right, on a line with the first division, first battalion, the left of it ten paces from the pioneers. The field music, if consolidated, will be in rear of the band. The pioneers of the brigade, on the right of the brigade in one line, or in column, depending on the number. Their left, ten paces from the first battalion.

4. The general will be posted twenty paces in front of the line of colonels, opposite the centre of his brigade, his staff, in one rank, in his rear; his flag and orderlies immediately in rear of the staff.

5. When the reviewing officer takes his position, the general will command, *Prepare for review*. The colonels will repeat this command, and add, *Rear, open order*. The general then commands, **MARCH**, repeated by the colonels.

The colonels, seeing the ranks aligned, command, **FRONT**. At the command *march*, the company officers will take post four paces in front of their companies. The color-bearer will march four paces in front of the officers of the first division, and opposite the centre; the color-corporal replaces the color-bearer. The general will face to the front, the reviewing officer will then advance to within twenty paces of the general (to receive the salute) and halt.

6. The general will then command, *Present*—**ARMS**. The salute being acknowledged by the reviewing officer, the general will command, *Carry*—**ARMS**. The reviewing officer, joined by his staff, goes to the right of the line, to inspect.

7. When the reviewing officer passes the right of the brigade to take his position in front, the general will command:

1. *Close order*—**MARCH**.    2. *Columns close in mass*—**MARCH**.

These commands will be repeated by the colonels.

8. The line will be broken by battalion in mass, into column, by the commands, *To the right, column of masses*—**MARCH**.—(UPTON'S Tactics, paragraph No. 1812.)

9. If it be the wish to pass in review by company, at full or half distance, the general will command:

1. *Right shoulder shift arms*.    2. *Pass in review*.    3. *Column forward*.    4. *Guide right*.    5. *By the head of column, by company, take half (or wheeling) distance*.    **MARCH**.

The first company will move forward at once; the second company will oblique to the right as soon as it is disengaged from the first, and forward, when it covers the first; the third moves forward when it has its proper distance from the second, and so on to the rear of the column.

10. If it be the wish to pass in review by divisions, the command will be the same, omitting the words *by company*.

11. In passing in review, the position of the different officers will be the same as described in Article I., Form 1, and they will take their positions in column at the time indicated in said article.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

## FORM 1.

*Form for a review of a division of infantry in line.*

*Par.* 1. The division will be formed in line, with intervals of twenty-four paces between battalions, and sixty paces between brigades. They may be reduced to ten and thirty paces.

2. The position of all officers and non-commissioned officers, etc., of each brigade will be the same precisely as laid down in Article I., Form 1.

3. The division being formed at *order arms*, and the reviewing officer ready, the general of division will cause the *Attention* to be sounded by his bugle, when the commanders of the brigades will immediately prepare their brigades for review, and face to the front.

4. The reviewing officer and the division general will go to the right, opposite the general of the first brigade (second and third brigades ordering arms and parade rest), and when about twenty paces from him halt, at which time he will *present arms*; when the salute is acknowledged, he will *carry arms*.

5. The reviewing officer will then pass to the right of the first brigade, then down the front to the left; from this point he will pass to a point about twenty paces in front of the general of the second brigade, to receive the salute.

6. The general of this brigade will be ready to *present arms* when the reviewing officer takes his post in front of him; the salute will be acknowledged, and *arms carried*, when the reviewing officer will pass to the right of the brigade, then down the front, to the left; from this point he will pass to a point about twenty paces in front of the general of the third brigade, to receive the salute.

7. The general of this brigade will be ready to *present arms* when the reviewing officer takes his post in front of him.

8. The salute will be acknowledged, and *arms carried*, when the reviewing officer will pass to the right of the bri-

gade, then down the front to the left, and around the rear of the whole line.

9. The bands will commence to play when the reviewing officer approaches the right to inspect, and continue to play while he is in front of their brigades. They will also play while he is passing in rear of their respective brigades.

10. When the reviewing officer passes the right and rear of the division, the division general will cause to be sounded by his bugle the signal for *Attention*.

11. At this signal, brigadier-generals will close ranks and wheel to the right into column by company or division (as previously directed by the division general), without waiting for each other, and then command :

1. *Right shoulder shift arms.* 2. *Pass in review.* 3. *Column forward—Guide right.*

12. The division general will then cause the signal for EXECUTION to be sounded by his bugle, which will be repeated by the brigadier-generals and colonels.

13. The division and brigade generals will place themselves at the head of their columns by the time they arrive within twenty or thirty paces of the reviewing officer, their staffs and flags having placed themselves there when it was formed ; the aides-de-camp may remain with their generals, who will be superintending the march of their columns.

14. The division general (his staff in single rank in his rear), in column, will be just in front of the leading brigadier-general.

15. After passing the reviewing officer six paces, the division general will place himself on his right, and remain till his division has passed. His staff will arrange themselves in one rank on the right of the reviewing officer's staff, the division flag and orderlies in their rear. This rule is general.

16. After each brigadier-general has passed six paces beyond the reviewing officer, he will place himself on the right of the division general, and remain till his brigade has passed.

17. When the brigade commander places himself on the right of the division general, his staff will arrange them-

selves in one rank on the right of the division staff, the flag and orderlies in their rear.

18. The band and field music will conform to instructions laid down in Article I., with this exception: the music of each brigade will cease to play as soon as the *colors* of the rear regiment have passed the reviewing officer. This rule is general when there is more than one brigade passing in review.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### FORM 2.

*Form for a review of a division of infantry in three lines.*

*Par. 1.* The division will be formed in three lines, each brigade deployed a distance of one hundred paces between the brigades.

2. The position of all officers, non-commissioned officers, etc., of each brigade will be the same precisely as laid down in Article I., Form 1.

3. The division being formed and the reviewing officer ready, the general of the division will cause the ATTENTION to be sounded by his bugle, when the brigade commanders will immediately prepare their brigades for review (second and third brigades *order arms* and *parade rest*), and face to the front.

4. The reviewing officer will advance to within about twenty paces of the general of the first brigade and halt, at which time the general will PRESENT ARMS; when the salute is acknowledged, he will CARRY ARMS.

5. The reviewing officer, with the division general, will go to the right, down the front, and up the rear of this brigade, then to a point about twenty paces in front of the general of the second brigade, and halt.

6. The general of the second brigade will be ready to *present arms* when the reviewing officer halts in front of him. The salute being acknowledged, he will CARRY ARMS.

7. The reviewing officer will inspect the brigade in the same manner as the first, then go to a point about twenty paces in front of the general of the third brigade, and halt.

8. The general of the third brigade will conform to the instructions laid down in Par. 6, above.

9. When the reviewing officer passes the right of the division, the division general will have sounded by his bugle the signal for *Attention*.

10. At this signal, brigadier-generals will close ranks and wheel to the right into column by company or division (as previously directed by the division general), without waiting for each other, and then command :

1. *Right shoulder shift arms.* 2. *Pass in review.* 3. *Column forward.* 4. *Guide right.*

11. The division general will then cause the signal of *Execution* to be sounded by his bugle, which will be immediately repeated by the first brigade commander and his colonels.

12. The second and third brigades will ORDER ARMS, PARADE REST, and their commanders will put them in motion in time to preserve their sixty paces between brigades in column. They will move direct to the front, as they stand, and change direction to the left, so as to bring them directly in rear of the column in front of them.

13. The division and brigade commanders will conform to instructions laid down in Pars. 14, 15, 16, and 17, Article II., Form 1.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### FORM 3.

*Form for a review of a division of infantry.*

*Par. 1.* The division will be formed in line of battalion columns, by division right in front, or (double column) at full or half distance, with intervals of twenty-four paces between battalions and sixty between brigades. They may be reduced to ten and thirty paces. Each brigade formed as laid down in Article I., Form 2. The division general will be twenty paces in front of the line of brigade commanders, opposite the right.

2. The position of all officers, non-commissioned officers, etc., will be precisely the same as laid down in Article I., Form 2.

3. The division being formed, and the reviewing officer

ready, the general of division will cause the ATTENTION to be sounded by his bugle, when the brigade commanders will prepare their brigades for review, as laid down in Par. 5, Article I., Form 2. The reviewing officer, division general, and staffs will go to a point about twenty paces in front of the first brigade commander and halt. The reviewing officer will advance a few paces alone, when the brigade commander will PRESENT ARMS. When the salute is acknowledged, arms will be carried.

4. When the reviewing officer leaves a brigade after inspecting it, he will go to a point about twenty paces in front of the next brigade commander, when the same ceremonies as above will be gone through with.

5. When the reviewing officer passes the right of the division, the general of division will have the signal of *Attention* sounded by his bugle.

6. At this signal, brigadier-generals will close ranks, close their columns in mass, and put them by battalion right in front into column. *Order arms* and *parade rest*.

7. The general of division, when he wishes the movement to commence, will have the signal of *Execution* sounded by his bugle, when the first brigade commander will commence the movement, giving the commands laid down in Pars. 9 and 10, Article I., Form 2.

8. The commanders of the second and third brigades will give the same commands referred to in time to put their column in motion, when they have sixty paces from the column in front of them.

9. The position of the different officers in the column will be the same as heretofore laid down. Pars. 13 and 14, Article II., Form 1.

10. The reviewing officer in inspecting the troops may pass between the different columns from front to rear, and rear to front, or between the subdivisions of column.

### ARTICLE THIRD.

#### FORM 1.

#### *Form for a review of a corps of infantry.*

Par. 1. The divisions will be formed in rear of each other, at a distance of a hundred paces (may be less accord-

ing to nature of ground), in line of battalion, columns at full or half distance. The position of all officers will be as laid down in Article II., Form 3.

2. The division generals will be twenty paces in front of the line of brigade commanders, opposite the right.

3. The reviewing officer ready, the corps general will cause the *Attention* to be sounded by his bugle, which will be immediately repeated by the bugles of the division generals, when the brigade commanders will immediately prepare their brigades for review.

4. The reviewing officer and corps general, joined by the first division general, will proceed to a point about twenty paces in front of the first brigade commander to receive the salute, and then proceed with the inspection as heretofore laid down.

5. The other division generals will join the reviewing officer and corps general, and go in front of their first brigade commanders, and conform to instructions heretofore laid down.

6. Each brigade, while it is being inspected and while the reviewing officer is passing in its rear, will stand at *carry arms*, the balance of the time at *order arms* and *parade rest*. This rule is general for more than one brigade.

7. After the inspection, and the reviewing officer has passed the right of the corps, the corps general will have the *Attention* sounded by his bugle, which will be immediately repeated by the bugles of the division generals, when brigade commanders will close ranks, close their columns in mass, and execute to the right column of masses. *Order arms, parade rest*.

8. The corps general, wishing the movement to commence, will have the signal of *Execution* sounded by his bugle, which will be repeated by the bugle of the first division general, when that division will commence the march.

9. The other division generals will have the signal of *Execution* sounded by their bugles, so as to allow about one hundred paces between divisions.

10. The troops will pass by division front, either at full or half distance, or closed in mass, as previously directed by the corps general.

11. In passing the reviewing officer the corps general will be in advance of the first division general, and when he turns out of the column, after passing the reviewing officer, he will place himself on the right of the reviewing officer.

12. The division generals, when they turn out of the column, will place themselves on the right of the corps general. Brigade commanders will place themselves on the right of the division generals while their brigades are passing.

### ARTICLE THIRD.

#### FORM 2.

#### *Form for a review of corps of infantry.*

*Par.* 1. The corps will be formed in line of battalion columns, by divisions, right in front (or double column), at full or half distance, with intervals of ten paces between battalions, thirty between brigades, and fifty between divisions.

2. The position of all officers, etc., will be as laid down in Art. II., Form 3.

3. The inspection will be conducted as heretofore laid down. The first division general will accompany the reviewing officer while he is passing the front of his division, then take position twenty paces in front of brigade commanders, opposite to the left of his division. The same will be observed by the second division commander.

4. The third division commander will accompany the reviewing officer down the front and up the rear of his division.

5. When the reviewing officer arrives at the right and rear of the third division, the second division commander should be ready to join him in the inspection of the rear of his division.

6. The same will be observed by the first division commander.

7. Corps and division commanders and their staffs will not have their swords drawn except when they are passing the reviewing officer, and they will be returned as soon as they take their position on his right.

8. The troops will be put in motion by the means and commands as laid down in Article III., Form 1.

9. As the troops are passing the reviewing officer, the music of each brigade will cease to play as soon as it has given the ruffles for the colors of the rear battalion. Then the music of the succeeding brigade will commence to play, and conform to the above. This is general for more than one brigade.

### ARTICLE THIRD.

#### FORM 3.

#### *Form for a review of a corps of infantry.*

*Par.* 1. The divisions will be formed in rear of each other, at a distance of one hundred paces (may be less, according to nature of ground), in line of masses.

2. The division generals will be twenty paces in front of the brigade commanders, opposite the right.

3. The reviewing officer ready, the corps general will cause the *Attention* to be sounded by his bugle, which will be immediately repeated by the bugles of the division generals, when the troops will be brought to *attention* and *parade rest*.

4. The reviewing officer, corps general, and first division general will proceed to a point about twenty paces in front of the first brigade commander, who will have his brigade at **CARRY ARMS**, and ready to **PRESENT ARMS**, at the proper time.

5. The balance of the inspection and passing in review will be as laid down in Article III., Form 1.

6. In this formation the colors will not be brought to the front.

7. When more than one corps is to be reviewed, the reviewing officer will not go to the front of each brigade commander to receive the salute, but the brigades will be presented when the reviewing officer arrives opposite to their right.

## GENERAL RULES FOR REVIEWS.

*Par.* 1. All mounted officers will remain mounted during the ceremony.

2. A color should be planted to indicate the point where the reviewing officer should be when troops pass in review. The staff of the reviewing officer should be ten paces in his rear, in single rank. His flag, orderlies, and escort should be in rear of his staff.

3. Other officers or personages accompanying the reviewing officer, should be arranged on the left of his staff, their staff in their rear, and their orderlies in the rear of their staff.

4. The reviewing officer should be at the flag before the head of the column reaches that point. Before that he may take any position to witness the movements.

5. When a division commander turns out of the column to place himself near the reviewing officer, his staff will arrange themselves in single rank on the right of the reviewing officer or corps staff, the flag and orderlies in their rear.

6. When a brigade commander turns from the column to place himself near the reviewing officer, his staff will arrange themselves in single rank on the right of the division staff, the flag and orderlies in their rear.

7. All the generals will arrange themselves on the right of the reviewing officer, while their commands are passing in the order of rank from left to right.

8. The drum corps of each brigade will be consolidated on the right, in the rear of the band, if there is one.

9. While troops are on the march, arms will be carried at *right shoulder shift*, each regiment being brought to *carry arms* when the head of it gets within fifty paces

of the reviewing officer, and remain so till its rear has passed him.

10. Troops will pass in review at quick time, when all officers shall salute with the sword, and not with the hand.

11. Troops may pass in review at double time, when only mounted officers will salute.

12. When a brigade, division, corps, or larger body of troops are passing in review, the following will be observed: When the rear of each regiment has passed the reviewing officer thirty paces, it will take the double time for one hundred paces, so as not to interfere with the march of the column in rear. Troops will pass the reviewing officer but once, and after passing they will be marched to their camps by the most practicable route, and in such manner as not to block the march of those in rear.

13. Troops will be presented to the reviewing officer by brigades, by brigade commanders.

14. Regiments in brigades will be put in line according to their numerical number, smallest on the right.

15. Brigades in divisions will be put in line according to their numerical number, smallest on the right.

16. Divisions in corps will be put in line according to their numerical number, smallest on the right or in front.

17. When more than one brigade is to be reviewed, the following will be observed: When the reviewing officer has finished the inspection of a brigade, he will leave his staff, etc., at the left of that brigade, while he and the senior commander of the troops go to the front of the next brigade commander to receive the salute. He will be joined by his staff, etc., at the right of the brigade just presented.

18. When both majors are present, they will take post as in Upton's Tactics.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## TITLE FIRST.

### ARTICLE I.

|                                                                | Page |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Formation of a regiment in order of battle, or in line (No. 1) | 1    |
| Posts of company officers and sergeants (No. 11).....          | 2    |
| Posts of field officers and regimental staff (No. 15).....     | 3    |
| Posts of field music and band (No. 22).....                    | 4    |
| General guides (No. 25).....                                   | 4    |

### ARTICLE II.

|                                            |   |
|--------------------------------------------|---|
| Instruction of the battalion (No. 27)..... | 5 |
| Instruction of officers (No. 36).....      | 6 |
| Instruction of sergeants (No. 38).....     | 6 |
| Instruction of corporals (No. 40).....     | 7 |
| Commands (No. 43).....                     | 7 |

## TITLE SECOND.

### SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

|                                                                   |   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| General rules and divisions of the School of the Soldier (No. 51) | 8 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---|

### PART FIRST.

#### LESSON I.

|                                                      |    |
|------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Position of the soldier (No. 59).....                | 10 |
| Remarks on the position of the soldier (No. 60)..... | 10 |
| Setting up (No. 61).....                             | 12 |
| Eyes right, left, front (Nos. 76-79).....            | 14 |
| Rest (No. 81). Attention (No. 82).....               | 14 |

#### LESSON II.

|                       |    |
|-----------------------|----|
| Salutes (No. 84)..... | 15 |
| Facings (No. 92)..... | 16 |

#### LESSON III.

|                                                              |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Principles of the direct step (No. 97). Common time (No. 98) | 16 |
| Quick time (No. 106). Balance step (No. 107).....            | 18 |
| To mark time (No. 113).....                                  | 18 |

|                                                       | Page |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------|
| To change step (No. 117).....                         | 19   |
| Side step (No. 119). To march backward (No. 122)..... | 20   |

## LESSON IV.

|                                              |    |
|----------------------------------------------|----|
| Principles of the double step (No. 126)..... | 20 |
|----------------------------------------------|----|

## PART SECOND.

|                              |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| General rules (No. 138)..... | 22 |
|------------------------------|----|

## LESSON I.

|                                         |    |
|-----------------------------------------|----|
| Principles of carry arms (No. 139)..... | 22 |
|-----------------------------------------|----|

## LESSON II.

|                                                          |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Manual of arms (No. 146).....                            | 23 |
| Support arms (No. 152).....                              | 24 |
| Present arms (No. 162).....                              | 25 |
| Order arms (No. 166).....                                | 26 |
| Position of order arms (No. 168).....                    | 26 |
| Parade rest (No. 174).....                               | 27 |
| Load (No. 178).....                                      | 27 |
| Prime (No. 189).....                                     | 30 |
| Ready (No. 194).....                                     | 30 |
| Aim (No. 197).....                                       | 31 |
| Fire (No. 200).....                                      | 32 |
| Recover arms (No. 206).....                              | 32 |
| Load (Springfield breech-loader) (No. 210).....          | 33 |
| Fix bayonets (No. 217).....                              | 34 |
| Charge bayonets (No. 221).....                           | 35 |
| Trail arms (No. 225).....                                | 35 |
| Unfix bayonet (No. 228).....                             | 36 |
| Secure arms (No. 231).....                               | 36 |
| Right-shoulder shift arms (No. 236).....                 | 37 |
| Right-shoulder shift from support arms (No. 243).....    | 38 |
| Support arms from right-shoulder shift (No. 246).....    | 38 |
| Arms port (No. 249).....                                 | 38 |
| Arms at will (No. 252).....                              | 39 |
| To fix and unfix bayonets from order arms (No. 255)..... | 39 |
| Inspection of arms (No. 256).....                        | 39 |
| Inspection for Springfield breech-loader (No. 265).....  | 41 |
| Inspection of boxes (No. 268).....                       | 41 |

## LESSON III.

|                                              |    |
|----------------------------------------------|----|
| Load in four times (No. 272).....            | 42 |
| Load at will (No. 277).....                  | 42 |
| Remarks on the manual of arms (No. 278)..... | 42 |

## LESSON IV.

*Firings.*

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Direct fire (No. 282).....  | 43 |
| Oblique fire (No. 287)..... | 44 |
| Fire by file (No. 292)..... | 45 |
| Fire by rank (No. 296)..... | 45 |

## LESSON V.

|                                          | Page |
|------------------------------------------|------|
| To fire and load kneeling (No. 301)..... | 46   |
| To fire and load lying (No. 307).....    | 47   |

## PART THIRD.

## LESSON I.

|                           |    |
|---------------------------|----|
| Alignments (No. 313)..... | 48 |
|---------------------------|----|

## LESSON II

|                                        |    |
|----------------------------------------|----|
| To march to the front (No. 325).....   | 50 |
| Oblique march (No. 330).....           | 51 |
| To march in double time (No. 335)..... | 51 |
| To march backward (No. 344).....       | 52 |

## LESSON III.

*Wheelings.*

|                                                                       |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| General principles of wheeling (No. 347).....                         | 53 |
| Wheeling from a halt (No. 351).....                                   | 53 |
| Wheeling in marching (No. 360).....                                   | 55 |
| Turning or changing direction to the side of the guide (No. 366)..... | 56 |

## LESSON IV.

*Wheeling by fours.*

|                                                                                            |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Count fours (No. 373).....                                                                 | 57 |
| Fours in circle right wheel (No. 374).....                                                 | 57 |
| In two ranks to count fours (No. 379).....                                                 | 58 |
| Number of men in front rank to consist of a multiple of four or two greater (No. 380)..... | 58 |

## LESSON V.

*To march by the flank.*

|                                                                         |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Fours right (No. 385).....                                              | 59 |
| Designation of column of fours (No. 388).....                           | 59 |
| Change of direction in column of fours (No. 395).....                   | 60 |
| To form line from column of fours (No. 397).....                        | 60 |
| From line to march in column of fours to the front (No. 401).....       | 61 |
| To halt the column of fours (No. 405).....                              | 62 |
| To put the column of fours in march (No. 406).....                      | 62 |
| Oblique march in column of fours (No. 407).....                         | 62 |
| Front into line from column of fours (No. 409).....                     | 62 |
| To march in retreat either in line or in column of fours (No. 413)..... | 63 |

## LESSON VI.

|                                                        |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Long marches in double time and the run (No. 418)..... | 63 |
| To stack arms (No. 423).....                           | 64 |

## TITLE THIRD.

## SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Page |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Formation of the company under arms (No. 434).....                                                                                                                                                                      | 67   |
| Formation of the company without arms (No. 439).....                                                                                                                                                                    | 68   |
| Division of the School of the Company (No. 440).....                                                                                                                                                                    | 68   |
| LESSON I.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
| ARTICLE I.—To open ranks (No. 441).....                                                                                                                                                                                 | 69   |
| ARTICLE II.—Alignments (No. 449).....                                                                                                                                                                                   | 70   |
| ARTICLE III.—Manual of arms (No. 454).....                                                                                                                                                                              | 71   |
| ARTICLE IV.—To close ranks (No. 457).....                                                                                                                                                                               | 71   |
| ARTICLE V.—Alignments and manual of arms in closed ranks<br>(No. 459).....                                                                                                                                              | 72   |
| LESSON II.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
| ARTICLE I.—To load in four times and at will (No. 470-'71)...                                                                                                                                                           | 73   |
| ARTICLE II.—Fire by company (No. 473).....                                                                                                                                                                              | 74   |
| ARTICLE III.—Fire by file (No. 477).....                                                                                                                                                                                | 74   |
| ARTICLE IV.—Fire by rank (No. 479).....                                                                                                                                                                                 | 74   |
| Remarks on firing (No. 484-'89).....                                                                                                                                                                                    | 75   |
| LESSON III.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |      |
| ARTICLE I.—To advance in line of battle (No. 490).....                                                                                                                                                                  | 76   |
| ARTICLE II.—To halt the company and to align it (No. 501)...                                                                                                                                                            | 78   |
| ARTICLE III.—Oblique march in line of battle (No. 505).....                                                                                                                                                             | 78   |
| ARTICLE IV.—To mark time, to march in double time, and the<br>back step. (No. 510) .....                                                                                                                                | 79   |
| ARTICLE V.—To wheel the company from a halt (No. 521). To<br>change direction to the side opposite the guide (No. 527).<br>To turn or to change direction to the side of the guide<br>(No. 532).....                    | 80   |
| LESSON IV.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
| ARTICLE I.—To march by the flank (No. 537). To halt the col-<br>umn of fours and to put in march (No. 542-'43). Oblique<br>march in column of fours (No. 544). Change of direction<br>in column of fours (No. 546)..... | 83   |
| ARTICLE II.—To form line from column of fours to the right<br>or left (No. 550) .....                                                                                                                                   | 84   |
| ARTICLE III.—Column of fours front into line (No. 556).....                                                                                                                                                             | 85   |
| ARTICLE IV.—To form column of fours to the front (No. 562)                                                                                                                                                              | 86   |
| ARTICLE V.—To march in retreat (No. 564).....                                                                                                                                                                           | 86   |
| LESSON V.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
| ARTICLE I.—To break fours to the rear (No. 570).....                                                                                                                                                                    | 87   |
| ARTICLE II.—Route step (No. 576).....                                                                                                                                                                                   | 88   |
| ARTICLE III.—To march by twos (No. 583). To form fours<br>(No. 590). To march the company by the flank in column<br>of twos (No. 596).....                                                                              | 89   |
| LESSON VI.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
| ARTICLE I.—To form single rank (No. 605). To form single<br>rank from column of fours (No. 610). To take single-rank                                                                                                    |      |

|                                                                                                                                                         | Page |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| distance in column of fours (No. 612). Movements in single rank (No. 615). To form double ranks from single rank (No. 619). Note.—(Guard mounting)..... | 92   |

## TITLE FOURTH.

## INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| General principles (No. 627) .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 97  |
| Division of instruction (No. 641) .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 98  |
| ARTICLE I.—To deploy forward on the left four (No. 646). To deploy by the flank (No. 661). To extend intervals (No. 676). To close intervals (No. 683). To relieve a company deployed as skirmishers (No. 690) .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 99  |
| ARTICLE II.—To advance the line of skirmishers (No. 695). To march the skirmishers in retreat (No. 700). To change direction (No. 704). To march by the flank (No. 708). To change direction marching by the flank (No. 711) .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 106 |
| ARTICLE III.—To fire at a halt (No. 717). To fire advancing (No. 723). To fire in retreat (No. 727). To fire marching by the flank (No. 730) .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 109 |
| ARTICLE IV.—Rally by fours (No. 735). Rally on the centre skirmisher (No. 741). Assembly (No. 747) .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 112 |
| ARTICLE V.—To deploy a company as skirmishers forward from single rank (No. 755). To deploy the same by the flank (No. 761) .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 114 |
| ARTICLE VI.—Deployment of the battalion as skirmishers (No. 771). To deploy forward (No. 775). To deploy by the flank (No. 783). Movements of the skirmish line (No. 792). Central change of direction (No. 793). To extend intervals (No. 793). To close intervals (No. 803). Movements of the reserve (No. 810). Reinforcement of the skirmish line (No. 816). Rally on the reserve (No. 824). Assembly of the battalion (No. 829). Deployment of the battalion as skirmishers from single rank (No. 834) ..... | 116 |

## TITLE FIFTH.

## SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

|                                                                                                                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Formation of the battalion (No. 835) .....                                                                                                   | 125 |
| Posts of markers (No. 837) .....                                                                                                             | 125 |
| Composition and march of the color escort (No. 839). Honors paid to the color (No. 846). Division of School of the Battalion (No. 851) ..... | 125 |

## PART FIRST.

|                                                                    |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To open ranks (No. 858). To close ranks (No. 867) ..... | 129 |
| ARTICLE II.—Manual of arms (No. 868) .....                         | 131 |
| ARTICLE III.—Firings (No. 870) .....                               | 131 |

|                                                                                                                    | Page |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| ARTICLE IV.—To march in line of battle (No. 891). To march in retreat in line of battle (No. 909).....             | 133  |
| ARTICLE V.—Oblique march in line of battle (No. 914).....                                                          | 137  |
| ARTICLE VI.—To halt the battalion (No. 920). Captains rectify the alignment (No. 924). General alignment (No. 925) | 138  |
| ARTICLE VII.—Change of direction marching in line of battle (No. 937).....                                         | 140  |
| ARTICLE VIII.—Passage of obstacles (No. 944). Remarks on the march in line in the presence of the enemy (No. 951). | 142  |

## PART SECOND.

|                                                                                                                                                                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To march by the flank (No. 955). To march the column of fours in retreat (No. 962).....                                                                                            | 144 |
| ARTICLE II.—Column of fours to break from the right or left to march to the left or right (No. 965).....                                                                                      | 145 |
| ARTICLE III.—Column of fours to the right or left into line of battle (No. 971).....                                                                                                          | 146 |
| ARTICLE IV.—Principles of successive formations (No. 976).....                                                                                                                                | 147 |
| ARTICLE V.—Column of fours front into line (No. 981). Front into line—face to the rear (No. 988). Column of fours into line by two movements (No. 992). Movements of the guide (No. 998)..... | 148 |

## PART THIRD.

|                                                                                                                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To break by company to the right or left into column (No. 1001). Change of designation of divisions in battalion movements (No. 1011)..... | 151 |
| ARTICLE II.—To break to the rear by the right or left into column (No. 1021).....                                                                     | 154 |
| ARTICLE III.—To break from the right to march to the left (No. 1030).....                                                                             | 155 |
| ARTICLE IV.—To march in column at full distance (No. 1035). Remarks on the march in column (No. 1048).....                                            | 156 |
| ARTICLE V.—Route step (No. 1051).....                                                                                                                 | 159 |
| ARTICLE VI.—Change of direction in column at full distance (No. 1060).....                                                                            | 160 |
| ARTICLE VII.—To halt the column (No. 1067).....                                                                                                       | 161 |
| ARTICLE VIII.—Column at full distance to the right or left into line of battle (No. 1069).....                                                        | 161 |
| ARTICLE IX.—Column at full distance front into line (No. 1099). Column at full distance, front into line—face to the rear (No. 1110).....             | 166 |
| ARTICLE X.—Column at full distance into line of battle by two movements (No. 1113).....                                                               | 168 |

## PART FOURTH.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To ploy the battalion into close column from line of battle (No. 1120). To ploy the same at full or half distance (No. 1136). To ploy the battalion into close column from column of fours (No. 1138)..... | 169 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|

|                                                                                                                                                                       | Page |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| ARTICLE II.—Column of fours to or on the right or left close column by division (No. 1145). To march in column of fours from close column by division (No. 1159)..... | 173  |
| ARTICLE III.—To march in column at half distance or in mass (No. 1167). To march a column at full, half distance or in mass by the flank (No. 1168).....              | 176  |
| ARTICLE IV.—To change direction in column at half distance (No. 1177).....                                                                                            | 177  |
| ARTICLE V.—To change direction in column in mass on the march (No. 1178). The same at a halt (No. 1189).....                                                          | 177  |
| ARTICLE VI.—Deployment of column in mass (No. 1200). To deploy the battalion in mass on an interior division (No. 1221).....                                          | 181  |
| ARTICLE VII.—To ploy the battalion into double column (No. 1229).....                                                                                                 | 185  |
| ARTICLE VIII.—Deployment of double column to the front (No. 1243).....                                                                                                | 187  |
| ARTICLE IX.—Deployment of double column to the right or left (No. 1249).....                                                                                          | 188  |

## PART FIFTH.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To close the column to half distance or in mass (No. 1257). To close the column on the rearmost company (No. 1270).....                                                                                                                                          | 189 |
| ARTICLE II.—To take distances (No. 1282).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 192 |
| ARTICLE III.—To form line from column at half distance (No. 1299).....                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 194 |
| ARTICLE IV.—In column by company to form divisions (No. 1301).....                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 195 |
| ARTICLE V.—To break from column by division into column by company (No. 1318).....                                                                                                                                                                                          | 197 |
| ARTICLE VI.—To pass defile in retreat (No. 1324).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 198 |
| ARTICLE VII.—Change of front (No. 1336).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 199 |
| ARTICLE VIII.—To advance by the flank of subdivisions (No. 1350). To re-form the line (No. 1357). The battalion marching in column of fours to march by the flank of subdivisions to the right or left (No. 1361). To advance by the right or left of wings (No. 1364)..... | 201 |
| ARTICLE IX.—Formation of squares (No. 1367). Oblique squares (No. 1377). Square forward on the centre (No. 1382). To reduce square (No. 1391). Remarks on squares (No. 1396). Column against cavalry (No. 1400).....                                                        | 203 |
| ARTICLE X.—The rally (No. 1408).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 210 |

## PART SIXTH.

|                                                                                                                                                                                 |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To form the battalion from double ranks into single rank (No. 1412). Same from column of fours (No. 1415). Single-rank distance from column of fours (No. 1422)..... | 211 |
| ARTICLE II.—Battalion being in column in double ranks, to form single rank (No. 1424).....                                                                                      | 213 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Page |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| ARTICLE III.—Column of fours in double ranks front into line in single rank (No. 1430).....                                                                                                                      | 214  |
| ARTICLE IV.—Movements of the battalion in single rank (No. 1436). Rally by divisions (No. 1439).....                                                                                                             | 214  |
| ARTICLE V.—The battalion in line of battle in single rank to form double ranks (No. 1443). In column of fours in single ranks to form double ranks (No. 1449). Same to take double-rank distance (No. 1451)..... | 215  |
| ARTICLE VI.—The battalion in column in single rank to form double ranks (No. 1454).....                                                                                                                          | 217  |

*TITLE SIXTH.*

EVOLUTIONS OF A BRIGADE.

|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| General principles for the evolutions of a brigade (No. 1460).. | 219 |
| Post of brigadier-general (No. 1468).....                       | 220 |
| General rules for command (No. 1472).....                       | 220 |
| Division of the evolutions of the brigade (No. 1480).....       | 221 |

PART FIRST.

|                                                                                  |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To open ranks (No. 1488). To close ranks (No. 1491).....              | 224 |
| ARTICLE II.—Manual of arms (No. 1492).....                                       | 224 |
| ARTICLE III.—Loading at will and the firings (No. 1493). To rest (No. 1506)..... | 224 |
| ARTICLE IV.—To advance in line of battle (No. 1510).....                         | 226 |
| ARTICLE V.—To march in retreat in line of battle (No. 1518).....                 | 228 |
| ARTICLE VI.—To halt the line and to align it (No. 1524).....                     | 228 |

PART SECOND.

|                                                                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To march by the flank (No. 1533).....                                                       | 229 |
| ARTICLE II.—To march the column of fours in retreat (No. 1540).....                                    | 230 |
| ARTICLE III.—Column of fours to the right or left into line (No. 1543).....                            | 231 |
| ARTICLE IV.—Manner of determining the line of battle (No. 1547). Successive formations (No. 1549)..... | 231 |
| ARTICLE V.—Column of fours front into line (No. 1552).....                                             | 232 |
| ARTICLE VI.—Column of fours front into line on the head of an interior battalion (No. 1563).....       | 234 |
| ARTICLE VII.—Column of fours into line by two movements (No. 1570).....                                | 235 |
| ARTICLE VIII.—By battalion on the right or left into line (No. 1578).....                              | 236 |

PART THIRD.

|                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To break to the right or left into column (No. 1586)..... | 237 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|

|                                                                                                             | Page |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| ARTICLE II.—To break to the rear into column (No. 1593)....                                                 | 238  |
| ARTICLE III.—To march in column at full distance (No. 1597).                                                | 238  |
| ARTICLE IV.—Column in route (No. 1608). To form column<br>by battalion (No. 1617).....                      | 240  |
| ARTICLE V.—To change direction in column at full distance<br>(No. 1624).....                                | 242  |
| ARTICLE VI.—To halt the column (No. 1628).....                                                              | 242  |
| ARTICLE VII.—Column at full distance to the right or left into<br>line (No. 1631).....                      | 242  |
| ARTICLE VIII.—Column at full distance front into line (No.<br>1637).....                                    | 243  |
| ARTICLE IX.—Column at full distance front into line on the<br>head of an interior battalion (No. 1645)..... | 245  |
| ARTICLE X.—Column at full distance into line of battle by two<br>movements (No. 1652).....                  | 246  |

## PART FOURTH.

|                                                                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—To ploy the line into column of masses (No.<br>1656).....                                                | 246 |
| ARTICLE II.—Column of fours to or on the right or left into<br>column of masses (No. 1679).....                     | 250 |
| ARTICLE III.—To march in column in mass (No. 1689)....                                                              | 251 |
| ARTICLE IV.—Change of direction in column in mass (No.<br>1691).....                                                | 251 |
| ARTICLE V.—To deploy the column of masses (No. 1701).<br>Same on the head of an interior battalion (No. 1714) ..... | 252 |

## PART FIFTH.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ARTICLE I.—Formation of line of masses (No. 1721). Column<br>of fours front into line of masses (No. 1731).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 255 |
| ARTICLE II.— <i>Movements executed by a line of masses.</i> To ad-<br>vance in line (No. 1747). To march in retreat in line of<br>masses (No. 1752). To halt the line of masses (No. 1758).<br>To change direction marching in line of masses (No.<br>1764). To march the line of masses by the flank (No.<br>1775). Marching in line of masses by the flank to change<br>direction (No. 1781). Marching by the flank in line of mas-<br>ses to form line to the right or left (No. 1785). In line of<br>masses to take deploying intervals (No. 1791). To deploy<br>masses (No. 1802). To close intervals (No. 1806)..... | 258 |
| ARTICLE III.—From line of masses, to the right or left into<br>column of masses (No. 1811). From line of masses into<br>column of masses to the front or rear (No. 1816).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 265 |
| ARTICLE IV.—From column of masses to the right or left into<br>line of masses (No. 1827). From column of masses to the<br>front into line of masses (No. 1832).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 267 |

## PART SIXTH.

|                                                                                                                                                  | Page |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| ARTICLE I.—To close column to half distance or in mass (No. 1856).....                                                                           | 271  |
| ARTICLE II.—To take distances (No. 1878).....                                                                                                    | 273  |
| ARTICLE III.—To march in column at half distance (No. 1900).....                                                                                 | 276  |
| ARTICLE IV.—Column at half distance into line (No. 1901)...                                                                                      | 276  |
| ARTICLE V.—In column by company to form divisions (No. 1903).....                                                                                | 276  |
| ARTICLE VI.—Change of direction marching in line of battle (No. 1912).....                                                                       | 277  |
| ARTICLE VII.—Change of front (No. 1924). Central change of front (No. 1937).....                                                                 | 279  |
| ARTICLE VIII.—To advance by the flank of subdivisions (No. 1945). To re-form the line (No. 1953).....                                            | 282  |
| ARTICLE IX.—Order in echelon (No. 1961).....                                                                                                     | 283  |
| ARTICLE X.—Pass defile in front (No. 1982).....                                                                                                  | 286  |
| ARTICLE XI.—Pass defile in retreat (No. 1990).....                                                                                               | 287  |
| ARTICLE XII.—Passage of lines (No. 2001).....                                                                                                    | 288  |
| ARTICLE XIII.—Squares (No. 2006). Oblique square from line (No. 2007). Square from column (No. 2019). Square from line of masses (No. 2032)..... | 289  |
| ARTICLE XIV.—Movements by battalion (No. 2050).....                                                                                              | 294  |

## PART SEVENTH.

|                                                                                                                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Evolutions of a brigade in single rank.....                                                                                                               | 294 |
| ARTICLE I.—To pass from double into single rank (No. 2053). The brigade in column of fours in double ranks front into line in single rank (No. 2070)..... | 294 |
| ARTICLE II.—Movements in single rank (No. 2076).....                                                                                                      | 297 |
| ARTICLE III.—To pass from single rank into double ranks (No. 2082).....                                                                                   | 298 |

## TITLE SEVENTH.

## EVOLUTIONS OF A DIVISION.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| General principles (No. 2095).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 300 |
| Designation of brigades (No. 2102).....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 301 |
| ARTICLE I.—Column of fours front into line (No. 2104). To deploy two brigades in the front and the third brigade in the second line (No. 2116). To deploy the three brigades in two lines each (No. 2119). To deploy two brigades in two lines each, holding the third in reserve in line of masses (No. 2122). Column of fours to the right or left into line (No. 2125)..... | 301 |
| ARTICLE II.—To advance or retreat in line of battle (No. 2128)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 305 |

|                                                                                         | Page |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| ARTICLE III.—Change of front (No. 2138). Change of direction by echelon (No. 2154)..... | 306  |

## TITLE EIGHTH.

## EVOLUTIONS OF A CORPS.

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Paragraph (No. 2162).....             | 311 |
| Manual of the sword for officers..... | 312 |
| Color salute.....                     | 313 |
| Reverse arms.....                     | 314 |
| Rest on arms.....                     | 314 |
| Instruction for the drum-major.....   | 315 |
| Beats of the drum.....                | 317 |
| Calls on the bugle.....               | 329 |

---

 APPENDIX NO. I.

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Dress parade of a battalion..... | 346 |
| Review of a battalion.....       | 348 |
| Inspection of a battalion.....   | 351 |
| Muster of a battalion.....       | 354 |
| Guard-mounting.....              | 355 |
| Escorts of honor.....            | 359 |
| Funeral honors.....              | 359 |

---

 APPENDIX NO. II.

|                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Form of dress parade for a brigade of infantry..... | 363 |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|

## ARTICLE I.

|                                                                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| FORM 1.—Form for a review of a brigade of infantry in line..                         | 365 |
| FORM 2.—Form for a review of a brigade of infantry in line of battalion columns..... | 369 |

## ARTICLE II.

|                                                                         |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| FORM 1.—Form for a review of a division of infantry in line.            | 371 |
| FORM 2.—Form for a review of a division of infantry in three lines..... | 373 |

|                                                                                          | Page |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| FORM 3.—Form for a review of a division of infantry in line<br>of battalion columns..... | 374  |

## ARTICLE III.

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| FORM 1.—Form for a review of a corps of infantry..... | 375 |
| FORM 2.—Form for a review of a corps of infantry..... | 377 |
| FORM 3.—Form for a review of a corps of infantry..... | 378 |
| General rules for reviews.....                        | 379 |

THE END.

NOW READY.

# THE MILITARY HISTORY OF ULYSSES S. GRANT,

From April, 1861, to April, 1865.

BY ADAM BADEAU,

Colonel, and Aide-Camp to the General-in-Chief, Brevet Brigadier General  
United States Army.

*Volume I. With Portrait and numerous Maps. 580  
pages. Price, \$4.00.*

## Extracts from Preface.

"The fact that I became a member of General Grant's personal staff, before he assumed command of the armies of the United States, and that I have since remained with him, is the voucher that I offer for the correctness of this history. I have not meant to state one fact, unless it came under my own personal observation, or has been told me by the General of the Army, or one of his important officers, or unless I know it from official papers. When I deviate from this rule, I make the deviation known.

"The correspondence, telegraphic and written, of the headquarters of the armies, is accessible to me. I have also been allowed to examine all papers under the control of the War Department; and, as many of the rebel archives are now in the possession of the Government, I have seen the original reports made by the rebel generals, of every battle but two, which I have attempted to describe. Those two are Corinth and Iuka, at neither of which General Grant was present in person. The original rebel field returns have also been closely examined by me. No statement of rebel movements or strength is made in this volume, unless taken from these sources; or, if otherwise, the source is named. \* \* \* \* \*

"The present volume brings my narrative down to the period when General Grant was made Lieutenant-General, and assumed command of all the national armies. It refers to scenes and events, many of which I did not personally witness, as I first reported to him, in person, in February, 1864. His private as well as official correspondence, and daily conversation for years with himself and the officers who accompanied him in his earlier campaigns, are my principal authority. I have his permission now to make known whatever I have learned from these various sources."

D. APPLETON & CO., 443 & 445 Broadway, N. Y.

# THE HISTORY OF THE NAVY

During the Rebellion.

By THE REV. CHARLES B. BOYNTON, D. D.,

Professor at the U. S. Naval Academy, and Chaplain of the House of  
Representatives.

---

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS.

---

To be complete in two elegant octavo volumes of about five hundred pages each, embellished and illustrated with some ten full-page Engravings in chromo tints, and with the same number of full-page Woodcuts, Portraits on steel of Distinguished Officers, and numerous Vignettes from Sketches made by Commander M. B. WOOLSEY, U. S. Navy, and with numerous Maps and Charts from government surveys and official plans, furnished for this work exclusively.

No purely *fancy* sketches will find a place in the work, but all the engravings will represent *actual* scenes and objects of interest, and will thus have an *historical* bearing and importance, while they will be executed in the highest style of the engraver's art, and will prove in every way an invaluable acquisition to the work, and not mere embellishments.

---

**SOLD BY SUBSCRIPTION ONLY.**

---

PRICE OF THE WORK :

In Extra Cloth, per vol. \$5. In Library Leather, per vol. \$6  
In Half Turkey Morocco, per vol. \$7.50.

---

AGENTS WANTED in all parts of the country, to whom exclusive territory will be given.

**D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,**

443 & 445 BROADWAY, N. Y.

THE MILITARY AND NAVAL  
**HISTORY OF THE REBELLION**  
 IN THE UNITED STATES,  
 WITH  
**BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES OF DECEASED OFFICERS.**

BY W. J. TENNEY,  
 EDITOR OF THE "AMERICAN ANNUAL CYCLOPÆDIA."

*Illustrated with Steel plate Portraits, Chromo-Lithographs of  
 Battle Scenes, and over one hundred Maps and Plans.*

This is designed to be a standard work, more complete than any that has been or may be published. It relates all the principal battles and important skirmishes from the beginning to the end of the war. The plans of the various campaigns are clearly stated, and the progress of the armies step by step in their execution is described, and illustrated with full topographical maps, obtained from official sources.

The work also embraces a statement of the civil and political proceedings incidental to the war, such as the secession of the Southern States and the organization of their Confederacy; the issues of the war and the triumph of emancipation, with the treatment of colored men, whether soldiers or freedmen, and all other subjects properly a portion of its direct history. It concludes with a biographical tribute to all the principal military and naval officers who have fallen in the contest, and is complete in one royal octavo volume of about 850 double-column pages, illustrated with fine steel engravings and nearly one hundred well-executed maps and charts, indispensable requisites to such a work. It also contains an elaborate index of contents, by means of which any important event of the rebellion can at once be referred to, or the career of any particular officer, or the operations of any particular command, traced out in detail.

It is handsomely printed, and elegantly and substantially bound in six different styles, and furnished to subscribers at the following rates:

|                                           |        |
|-------------------------------------------|--------|
| In Extra Cloth.....                       | \$5.00 |
| In Library Leather.....                   | 6.00   |
| In Half Turkey Morocco, dark.....         | 6.50   |
| In Half-Russia, extra gilt.....           | 7.50   |
| In Full Morocco, antique, gilt edges..... | 9.00   |
| In Full Russia.....                       | 9.00   |

*Sent free of carriage on receipt of price.*

**D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,**  
 443 and 445 Broadway, New York.

THE  
NEW AMERICAN CYCLOPÆDIA.

D. APPLETON & CO.,

443 and 445 Broadway,

HAVE NOW READY,

THE NEW AMERICAN CYCLOPÆDIA,  
A POPULAR DICTIONARY OF GENERAL KNOWLEDGE.

EDITED BY

GEORGE RIPLEY and CHARLES A. DANA.

AIDED BY

A Numerous Select Corps of Writers in all Branches of  
Science, Art, and Literature.

In Sixteen Large Volumes, 8vo.

Seven hundred and fifty double-column pages in each volume.

*From the New York Times.*

"It is a work written by Americans for Americans. It proffers them the knowledge they most require, selected and arranged by those who are competent to the task, because they themselves had experienced the want they now endeavor to supply. It is minute on points of general interest, and condensed in those of more partial application. Its information is the latest extant, and in advance of any other book of reference in the world. The best talent in the country has been engaged in its production."

*From the North American Review.*

"There can be no doubt that, at least for the use of American readers, and in some respects wherever the English language is spoken, the Cyclopædia will GREATLY SURPASS, in its value as a reference book, any similar compilation that has yet been issued on either side of the Atlantic."

PRICE OF THE WORK, PER VOLUME:

|                                           |        |
|-------------------------------------------|--------|
| In Extra Cloth .....                      | \$5 00 |
| In Library Leather .....                  | 6 00   |
| In Half Turkey Morocco, black.....        | 6 50   |
| In Half Russia, extra gilt.....           | 7 50   |
| In Full Morocco, antique, gilt edges..... | 9 00   |
| In Full Russia .....                      | 9 00   |

THE AMERICAN  
ANNUAL CYCLOPÆDIA;

AND

Register of Important Events for the Year.

EMBRACING

Political, Civil, Military, and Social Affairs;  
Public Documents; Biography; Statistics;  
Commerce; Finance; Literature; Science;  
Agriculture, and Mechanical Industry.

This work was commenced in the year 1861, and is published one volume annually, in the same style as the "New American Cyclopædia." Each volume is intended to be a Cyclopædia of the material and intellectual development of the year, and embraces the political, civil, military, and social affairs of all countries; important Public Documents; Biography; Statistics; Commerce; Finance; Literature; Science; Agriculture; Mechanical Industry, etc. In a word, it covers the same field as the "New American Cyclopædia," but each volume is confined to the results of its year. The contents are accompanied by a most extensive and complete Index.

"It is an enterprise of immense value to the public, and ought to be in every library, public and private, as an invaluable book of reference."—*Atlas and Argus, Albany, N. Y.*

"We can confidently and conscientiously recommend the 'Annual Cyclopædia' to all who would have an accurate and readable history of contemporary events close at hand, and as a safe work of reference."—*Evening Traveller.*

PRICE AND STYLE OF BINDING,

For Years 1861, 1862, 1863, '64, '65 and '66.

|                                            |                    |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| In Extra Cloth .....                       | per volume, \$5 00 |
| In Library Leather .....                   | " 6 00             |
| In Half Turkey Morocco .....               | " 6 50             |
| In Half Russia, extra gilt .....           | " 7 50             |
| In Full Morocco, antique, gilt edges ..... | " 9 00             |
| In Full Russia .....                       | " 9 00             |

SOLD BY SUBSCRIPTION ONLY.

All inquiries and orders should be addressed to

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,

443 and 445 Broadway, New York.

THE NEW ROLLIN.

---

AN ANCIENT HISTORY,  
FROM THE EARLIEST RECORDS  
TO  
THE FALL OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE,  
FORMING THE FIRST PERIOD  
OF THE  
HISTORY OF THE WORLD.

BY PHILIP SMITH, B. A.

Complete in 3 vols., 8vo, with Maps, Plans, and Engravings.

For the first time in English literature, the reader has before him, in the moderate compass of three volumes, a complete ANCIENT HISTORY, from the *Creation of the World* to the *Fall of the Western Empire of Rome*, treated as a *continuous narrative*, and with *unity of purpose*. Besides its place in the whole scheme of the History of the World, this division may be regarded as forming a *complete and independent work*, which may occupy the place once filled by the *Ancient History of Rollin*.

"The style of the volumes is sustained with the equal tone of a single, able, unimpassioned, and dignified historian throughout."—*Athenæum*.

All that our respected old Rollin tried to do, and did not do, this clear and most wonderfully compassed summary must be admitted to have done, and a great deal more besides. It is always careful, always well written, often warms into the steady heat of a real living interest, and is pervaded with a profound belief in the Providential guidance of all the events of history."—*Literary Churchman*.

"The three volumes of the present work now published, may be considered as forming a complete and independent text-book of Ancient History, well fitted to occupy the place once filled by the Ancient History of Rollin."—*Educational Times*.

PRICE, PER VOL.—In cloth, \$3.50 ; library leather, \$4.50 ; in half morocco, \$5.

**PUBLISHED BY SUBSCRIPTION.**

SENT FREE OF CARRIAGE ON RECEIPT OF PRICE.

**D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,**  
443 and 445 Broadway, New York.

# POPULAR AND STANDARD BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

## D. APPLETON & CO.,

*443 & 445 Broadway, New York.*

Any of the following Works sent free by Mail on Receipt of the Price.

**A Cyclopædia of Drawing**, designed as a Text-Book for the Mechanic, Architect, Engineer, and Surveyor; comprising Geometrical Projection, Mechanical, Architectural, and Topographical Drawing, Perspective and Isometry. Edited by W. E. WORTHEN. 1 handsome vol., royal 8vo, profusely Illustrated. Cloth, \$10; half morocco, \$12.50.

**Appletons' Dictionary of Machines, Mechanics' Engine Work and Engineering**. Designed for Men of Science, Practical Workingmen, and those intended for the Engineering Profession; containing over 4,000 Engravings on Wood. Complete in two large vols., strongly bound. Half morocco, \$20.

**Principles of Geology**; or, the Modern Changes of the Earth and its Inhabitants, considered as Illustrative of Geology. By Sir CHARLES LYELL. New and entirely revised edition. Illustrated with Maps, Plates, and Woodcuts. 1 large vol., 8vo. Cloth, \$5.

**Elements of Geology**; or, the Ancient Changes of the Earth and its Inhabitants, as Illustrated by Geological Monuments. By Sir CHARLES LYELL. From the sixth London edition, greatly enlarged. Illustrated with 770 Woodcuts. 1 vol., 8vo. Cloth, \$5.

**A Treatise on the Steam-Engine** in its Various Applications to Mines, Mills, Steam Navigation, Railways, and Agriculture; with Theoretical Investigations respecting the Motive Power of Heat and the Proper Proportions of Steam-Engines, Elaborate Tables of the Right Dimensions of every part, and Practical Instructions for the Manufacture and Management of every species of Engine in Actual Use. By JOHN BOURNE. Being the seventh edition of "A Treatise on the Steam-Engine," by the "Artisan Club." Illustrated by 37 Plates and 546 Woodcuts. 1 vol., 4to. Cloth, \$16.

**The History of the United States of America**, from the Discovery of the Continent to the close of the Thirty-sixth Congress, March 4, 1861. By J. H. PATTON, A. M. One handsome vol., 8vo, 828 pp.; with 13 Portraits (from Washington to Henry Clay), engraved on steel. Library leather, \$6.

**The Works of William Shakespeare.** Edited, with a scrupulous revision of the Text, by CHARLES and MARY COWDEN CLARKE, authors of "Shakespeare's Characters," "Concordance to Shakespeare," etc. 4 vols. large 8vo, beautifully printed on tinted paper. Price, cloth, \$12; half calf, extra, \$20; full calf, extra, \$25.

**The World Before the Deluge.** By LOUIS FIGUIER. A new edition. The Geological portion carefully revised, and much original matter added, by HENRY W. BRISTOW, F. R. S., of the Geological Survey of Great Britain. Containing thirty-four full-page Illustrations of Extinct Animals and Ideal Landscapes of the Ancient World, designed by Riou; and two hundred and two Figures of Animals, Plants, and other Fossil Remains and Restorations. 1 vol., 8vo. 437 pages. Beautifully printed. Cloth, \$6.

**The Conversion of the Roman Empire.** The Boyle Lectures for the Year 1864, delivered at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall, by CHARLES MERIVALE, B. D., Rector of Lawford, Chaplain to the Speaker of the House of Commons, author of "A History of the Romans under the Empire." Large 12mo. Price, cloth, \$2.

**Principles of Political Economy**, with some of their Applications to Social Philosophy. By JOHN STUART MILL. From the fifth London edition. 2 vols., small 8vo, handsomely printed. Cloth, \$7; half calf, extra, \$12.

**The Vegetable World**; being a History of Plants, with their Botanical Descriptions and peculiar Properties. By LOUIS FIGUIER, author of the "World Before the Deluge." Illustrated with 446 Engravings interspersed through the text, and 24 full-page Illustrations, chiefly drawn from Nature, by M. FAGUET, Illustrator to the Botanical Course of the Faculty of Sciences of Paris. 1 vol., 8vo, beautifully printed. 584 pages. Cloth, \$6; half calf, \$8.50; full calf, \$10.50.

**Thirty Years' View**; or, a History of the Working of the American Government for Thirty Years, from 1820 to 1850; chiefly taken from the Congress Debates, the private papers of General Jackson, and the Speeches of ex-Senator Benton, with his actual view of men and affairs. With Historical Notes and Illustrations, and some notices of eminent deceased contemporaries. By THOMAS H. BENTON. 2 vols., 8vo. Cloth, \$8; half calf, extra, \$13.

**The Harvest of the Sea**; a Contribution to the Natural and Economic History of the British Food Fishes. By JAMES G. BERTRAM. With fifty Illustrations. 1 large vol 8vo, 520 pages. Cloth, \$7.50; half calf, \$10.

**The Harmonies of Nature**; or, the Unity of Creation. By Dr. G. HARTWIG, author of the "Sea and its Living Wonders," and "The Tropical World." With eight full-page Drawings, and nearly two hundred Woodcuts. 1 vol., 8vo, 406 pages. Cloth, \$7.50; half calf, extra, \$10; full calf, extra, \$12.

**History of the Romans under the Empire**. By CHARLES MERIVALE, B. D., late Fellow of St. John's College. 7 vols., small 8vo, handsomely printed on tinted paper. Price, cloth, \$21; half calf, extra, \$35.

**Haydn's Dictionary of Dates**, relating to all Ages and Nations, for Universal Reference. Twelfth edition. Revised, Enlarged, and Corrected to February, 1866. By BENJAMIN VINCENT. 1 vol., large 8vo, 833 pages. Cloth, \$7.50.

**Metallurgy.** Embracing the Elements of Mining Operations, and Analysis of Ores; a full description of all Smelting and other Operations for the production of Metals from the Ores. By T. OVERMAN. With numerous Wood Engravings of Machinery, Furnaces, and Apparatus. 1 vol., 8vo, of over 600 pages. Cloth, \$8.

**The Works of Lord Macaulay.** Complete. Edited by his Sister, Lady TREVELYAN. With Portrait, engraved on steel, by W. Holl. 8 vols., large 8vo. Cloth, \$40; half calf, extra, \$56.

**Correlation and Conservation of Forces;** a Series of Expositions by Prof. Grove, Prof. Helmholtz, Dr. Mayer, Dr. Faraday, Prof. Liebig, and Dr. Carpenter; with an Introduction and brief Biographical Notices of the chief Promoters of the New Views, by EDWARD L. YOUMANS, M. D. Cloth, \$2.50.

**Appletons' Cyclopædia of Biography**, Foreign and American, embracing a series of Original Memoirs of the most Distinguished Persons of all Times. Edited by FRANCIS L. HAWKS, D. D., LL. D. With over 600 Engravings. 1 very large vol., 8vo. Cloth, \$7; sheep, \$8; half calf, extra, \$10.

**Cyclopædia of American Eloquence:** a Collection of Speeches and Addresses by the most eminent Orators of America; with Biographical Sketches and Illustrative Notes. By FRANK MOORE. Two handsome volumes, large 8vo, embellished with the finest steel-plate Portraits. Cloth, \$8; half calf, extra, \$13.

**History of Civilization in England.** By HENRY THOMAS BUCKLE. With copious Index (not in the English edition). Two large volumes, 8vo, beautifully printed. Cloth, \$8; half calf, extra, \$13.

# EDUCATIONAL WORKS IN VARIOUS LANGUAGES,

PUBLISHED BY

**D. APPLETON & COMPANY, NEW YORK.**

---

## FRENCH.

- Ahn's French Method.** 12mo. \$1.00.  
**Havet's French Manual.** A new method of acquiring a conversational knowledge of the French Language. 1 vol., 12mo. \$1.75.  
**Jewett's Spiers' French Dictionary.** 12mo. \$3.00. 8vo. \$5.00.  
**Ollendorff's New Method of Learning French.** Edited by J. L. Jewett. 12mo. \$1.75.  
— **Method of Learning French.** By V. Value. 12mo. \$1.75.  
— **Key to Each Volume.** \$1.25.  
— **First Lessons in French.** By G. W. Greene. 18mo. \$1.00.  
**Spiers and Surenne's Complete French-and-English, and English-and-French Dictionary.** With Pronunciation, &c., &c. 1 vol., large 8vo. Half Morocco. \$7.50.  
— **The Same, Abridged.** 12mo. \$3.00.  
**Surenne's French-and-English Pronouncing Dictionary.** 16mo. \$1.50.

## GERMAN.

- **German-and-English and English-and-German Dictionary.** Compiled from the best authorities. Large 8vo. Half Morocco. \$7.50.  
— **The Same, Abridged.** 12mo. \$3.00.  
**Ahn's German Grammar.** 1 vol., 12mo. \$1.25.  
**Ollendorff's New Method of Learning German.** Edited by G. J. Adler. 12mo. \$1.75.  
— **Key to do.** \$1.25.

## SPANISH.

**Ahn's New, Practical, and Easy Method of Learning the Spanish Language.** 1 vol., 12mo. \$1.25.  
— Key. \$0.38.

**Butler's Spanish Teacher and Colloquial Phrase Book.** By Francis Butler. 1 vol., 12mo. \$1.00.

**De Belem. The Spanish Phrase Book.** 1 vol., 18mo. \$0.50.

**De Tornos. The Combined Spanish Method.** With a Pronouncing Vocabulary. 1 vol., 12mo. \$1.75.

**Mercantile Dictionary; A Complete Vocabulary of the Technicalities of Commercial Correspondence.** 1 vol., 12mo. Half Morocco. \$2.50.

**Ollendorff. A New Method of Learning to Read, Write, and Speak the Spanish Language** after the System of Ollendorff. By M. Velazquez and T. Simonné. 1 vol., 12mo. \$2.00.

— Key to the Exercises. \$1.25.

**Seoane's Neuman and Barretti's Spanish-and-English and English-and-Spanish Dictionary.** By Velazquez. With Pronunciation, &c., &c. 1 vol., large 8vo. Half Morocco. \$8.00.

— Abridged Edition of do. 12mo. Half bound. \$3.00.

## ITALIAN

**Fontana's Elementary Grammar of the Italian Language.** 12mo. \$1.75.

**Meadow's Italian-English Dictionary.** 16mo. Bound. \$2.50.

**Millhouse's New English-and-Italian Pronouncing and Explanatory Dictionary.** 2 vols., small 8vo. Half bound. \$8.00.

**Ollendorff's New Method of Learning Italian.** Edited by F. Foresti. 12mo. \$2.00.

— Key to do. \$1.25.

## PORTUGUESE.

**A New Method of Learning the Portuguese Language.** By E. J. Grauert. \$2.00.

---

A Descriptive Catalogue of our Educational Works gratis on application.



MARINE CORPS HISTORICAL LIBRARY

A New System of Infantry Tactics. 4904

#18129385

Library of the Marine Corps



3000183399

